

Beginning
Biblical
Hebrew

Mark D. Futato

Beginning Biblical Hebrew

Beginning Biblical Hebrew

Mark D. Futato

Winona Lake, Indiana
Eisenbrauns
2003

© Copyright 2003 by Mark D. Futato.
All rights reserved.
Printed in the United States of America.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Futato, Mark David
Beginning Biblical Hebrew / Mark D. Futato.
p. cm.
ISBN 1-57506-022-1 (cloth : alk. paper)
1. Hebrew language—Grammar. I. Title.
PJ4567.3.F88 2003
492.4'82421—dc21

2003054970

The paper used in this publication meets the minimum requirements of the American National Standard for Information Sciences—Permanence of Paper for Printed Library Materials, ANSI Z39.48-1984. ©™

20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 09 08 07 06 05 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

To my wife, Adele

Many women do noble things,
but you surpass them all.

(Proverbs 31:30 [29])

לֹא לָנוּ יִהְיֶה לֹא לָנוּ
כִּי־לְשֹׁמֵר תֵּן כְּבוֹד
עַל־חֲסִדֶּךָ עַל־אַמְתֶּךָ

(Psalm 115:1)

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	ix
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS	xi
1. THE ALPHABET	1
2. THE VOWELS	7
3. SYLLABLES, SHEVA, AND STRONG DAGESH	13
4. THE NOUN: BASIC FORMS	18
5. PRONOUNS AND THE DEFINITE ARTICLE	24
6. THE VERB: QAL PERFECT	29
7. SENTENCES WITH VERBS	36
8. THE NOUN: VOWEL CHANGES	42
9. PREPOSITIONS AND VAV CONJUNCTION	49
10. THE ADJECTIVE	56
11. THE VERB: QAL IMPERFECT	63
12. CONSTRUCT RELATIONSHIP: SINGULAR	68
13. CONSTRUCT RELATIONSHIP: PLURAL	75
14. QAL PERFECT AND IMPERFECT: WEAK ROOTS	81
15. QAL PERFECT AND IMPERFECT: I NUN AND III HEY	88
16. POSSESSIVE SUFFIXES ON SINGULAR NOUNS	95
17. DEMONSTRATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS	102
18. QAL IMPERFECT: I YOD AND I ALEF	108
19. POSSESSIVE SUFFIXES ON PLURAL NOUNS	114
20. THE VERB: QAL INFINITIVES	120
21. THE VERB: QAL ACTIVE PARTICIPLE	128
22. PRONOUN SUFFIXES ON PREPOSITIONS	135
23. THERE IS (NOT) AND HAVE (NOT)	142
24. THE VERB: QAL VOLITIVES	148
25. QAL: HOLLOW VERBS	156
26. THE VERB: VAV-RELATIVE	162
27. CLAUSES: TEMPORAL AND INTERROGATIVE	169
28. THE PIEL: STRONG ROOTS	175

29. THE PIEL: WEAK ROOTS	182
30. NUMBERS AND “SURPRISE”	188
31. THE HIPHIL: STRONG ROOTS	194
32. THE HIPHIL: I GUTTURAL AND I NUN	201
33. THE HIPHIL: I YOD	207
34. THE HIPHIL: III HEY AND HOLLOW	214
35. MORE ON PRONOUN SUFFIXES	220
36. THE NIPHAL: STRONG ROOTS	225
37. THE NIPHAL: WEAK ROOTS	232
38. MORE PASSIVE VERBS: QAL, PUAL, AND HOPHAL	237
39. THE VERB: THE HITHPAEL	243
40. THE VERB: GEMINATE ROOTS	249
PARADIGMS	253
VOCABULARY	282
ANSWERS TO PRACTICE DRILLS	291
INDEX OF TOPICS	352
INDEX OF HEBREW TERMS	356

INTRODUCTION

Goal

Beginning Biblical Hebrew provides students with a thorough introduction to Biblical Hebrew in an easy-to-learn format.

Familiarity with English and Hebrew grammatical terminology is not presumed. All essential terms are introduced throughout the grammar in clear, nontechnical language.

Students will learn the morphology (forms) and syntax (uses) of Hebrew adjectives, conjunctions, nouns, numbers, prepositions, and verbs.

Students will lay a solid foundation for studying the Hebrew Bible by mastering *Beginning Biblical Hebrew*.

Objectives

Upon successful completion of *Beginning Biblical Hebrew*, students will have:

- ▶ Mastered the pronunciation of Hebrew
- ▶ Mastered the forms and uses of Hebrew words
- ▶ Mastered a vocabulary of 400 Hebrew words
- ▶ Learned how to analyze any Hebrew word
- ▶ Learned how to translate standard Biblical Hebrew
- ▶ Grown in an enjoyment of the Hebrew language
- ▶ Grown in a commitment to use Hebrew in a lifelong study of the Hebrew Bible.

Method

Each lesson comprises three sections: *grammar*, *vocabulary*, and *practice*.

The *grammar* section introduces students to the elements of the Hebrew language in bite-sized chunks. Students will encounter all grammar essential for reading the Hebrew Bible.

The *vocabulary* section introduces students to ten words. The vocabulary is numerically keyed to Raymond B. Dillard, *Hebrew Vocabulary Cards* (Springfield, Ohio: Visual Education Association, 1981), so that beginning students can easily access this aid to mastering their vocabulary.

The *practice* section has four subdivisions:

1. Focusing on New Material isolates the new grammar, so that students can practice working with new elements without the distractions of other material.
2. Reviewing Previous Lessons ensures that students review all learned material on a systematic basis. This subdivision also often prepares students for the next lesson. So, for example, students review the form and uses of the adjective before the lesson on the participle, because of the high level of similarity.
3. Putting It All Together gives students the opportunity to synthesize all that they have learned at any given point.
4. Reading Your Hebrew Bible provides students with experience in the actual text of the Bible in every lesson from Lesson 1 to Lesson 40.

The back of the grammar contains a Hebrew-to-English vocabulary list, an answer key, and morphology charts for the verb.

Everything necessary for mastering the essentials of Biblical Hebrew is found in *Beginning Biblical Hebrew*.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

A number of people have made significant contributions to my passion for and ability in Biblical Hebrew. Their contributions to my life have made the publication of *Beginning Biblical Hebrew* a reality.

First and foremost is my wife, Adele. Adele has supported me from the beginning, when as an undergrad I was learning my first Hebrew words and poring over BDB to find entries for weak roots. The sacrifices she made so that I could succeed in my doctoral studies were expressions of a love at which I marvel more and more as time goes by. Adele's encouragement throughout the writing process has empowered me to bring *Beginning Biblical Hebrew* to completion. To Adele I am forever grateful.

There are three others. Willem VanGemenen was my first Hebrew teacher at Geneva College in the mid-1970s. Willem's love for Hebrew kindled my own, and his rigorous demands ensured that I laid a solid foundation. The late Raymond Dillard, one of my professors at Westminster Theological Seminary in the late 1970s, not only encouraged me in my quest to learn Hebrew and other Semitic languages as a seminarian but also played a key role in my fortuitous decision to go to The Catholic University of America to pursue doctoral studies. At CUA I had the great and unexpected privilege of being mentored by Brother Aloysius Fitzgerald. I have had many wonderful teachers along the way. Br. Aloysius surpasses them all. My mastery of Hebrew philology was facilitated to no small extent by Br. Aloysius, one of the truly great masters of Biblical Hebrew.

Finally, I would like to acknowledge all of the Hebrew students I have taught over the years. *Beginning Biblical Hebrew* was shaped in dialogue with a host of wonderful students. I also wish to express my appreciation for James Eisenbraun and his staff. Jim's commitment to excellence in publishing brings years of work on *Beginning Biblical Hebrew* to their culmination.

On the day that I first saw the design for the cover of *Beginning Biblical Hebrew*, I also learned of the passing of Br. Aloysius Fitzgerald from this life to the next. As he honored me with his time and attention as my mentor, I honor his memory with the publication of this grammar. His influence permeates every page. May he rest in peace.

1

THE ALPHABET

Keys to Success

- 1.1 **Memorize the letters** of the alphabet so well that you can write them out as fast as you can write your ABCs!
- 1.2 **Memorize the names** of the letters so well that you can say them as fast as you can say your ABCs!
- 1.3 The letters of the alphabet are the basic building blocks of the Hebrew language.
- 1.4 Mastery of the alphabet is the first step to mastery of Hebrew.
- 1.5 Do not underestimate the importance of knowing the alphabet as well as you know your own name.
- 1.6 Success begins here!

Alphabet Chart

- 1.7 English is written from left to right. Hebrew is written from right to left.
- 1.8 The English alphabet has consonants and vowels. The Hebrew alphabet has consonants only.
- 1.9 The alphabet chart on the next two pages reads from right to left, so that from the beginning you enter the fascinating world of Hebrew.
 - Column 1 contains the **sound** you will make for the Hebrew letter.
 - Column 2 contains the **book print** you will read in this grammar.
 - Column 3 contains the **final form** (to be explained) for five special letters.
 - Column 4 contains the **hand print** you will learn to write.
 - Columns 5–7 contain the order of the **strokes** you will make to form the letters.
 - Column 8 contains the **name** you will use to identify the letter.

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Name	Stroke #3	Stroke #2	Stroke #1	Hand Print	Final Form	Book Print	Sound
Alef							Silent
Bet							B as in Boy
							V as in Van
Gimel							G as in Gas
Dalet							D as in Dog
Hey							H as in Hat
Vav							V as in Van
Zayin							Z as in Zoo
Chet							CH as in BaCH
Tet							T as in Top
Yod							Y as in You
Kaf							K as in Key
							CH as in BaCH
Lamed							L as in Lot

8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Name	Stroke #3	Stroke #2	Stroke #1	Hand Print	Final Form	Book Print	Sound
Mem							M as in Mat
Nun							N as in Nut
Samech							S as in See
Ayin							Silent
Pey							P as in Pie
							F as in Fan
Tsade							TS as in CaTS
Qof							K as in Key
Resh							R as in Rug
Sin							S as in See
Shin							SH as in SHe
Tav							T as in Top

- ▶ **Memorize the letters** of the alphabet so well that you can write them out as fast as you can write your ABCs!
- ▶ **Memorize the names** of the letters so well that you can say them as fast as you can say your ABCs!

Five Final Letters

- 1.10** There are five letters that have a different form when they are the last letter of a word.
- 1.11** Four final letters have the last stroke going straight down and extending below the line rather than going across the line to the left.

Final Form	Basic Form
ך	כ
ן	נ
ף	פ
ץ	צ

- 1.12** One final letter is more square than round.

Final Form	Basic Form
ם	מ

Letters with Two Pronunciations

- 1.13** English has letters with two pronunciations, for example, the letter “c” in city and cat, or the “th” in this and thing. There are six letters that had two pronunciations when Biblical Hebrew was spoken. These letters are referred to by the mnemonic *begadkefat*.

ת פ כ ד ג ב ←

- 1.14** You are learning the pronunciation of Modern Hebrew. Only three letters have two pronunciations. The difference in pronunciation is marked by a dot in the letter, called *weak dagesh*. With the *dagesh*, the sound is hard; without, it is soft.

	Soft
V as in V an	ב
CH as in Ba CH	כ
F as in F an	פ

	Hard
B as in B oy	בּ
K as in K ey	כּ
P as in P ie	פּ

- 1.15** The weak *dagesh* is also found in the letters ג (*gimel*), ד (*dalet*), and ת (*tav*), but the pronunciation in modern Hebrew is not affected.

Letters That Look Alike

- 1.16** There are several letters that look alike. You may confuse them at first. Soon they will look as different as O and Q, or U and V, or G and C.

ך	ד	כ	ב
ז	ו	ת	ח
צ	ע	ס	ם

Letters That Sound Alike

- 1.17** English has pairs of letters that sound alike, for example, kite and car, or find and phone.
- 1.18** There are five pairs of letters that sound alike in Hebrew.

V as in V an	ו	ב
CH as in Ba CH	כ	ח
T as in T op	ת	ט
K as in K ey	ק	כ
S as in S ee	ש	ס

Guttural Letters + Resh

- 1.19** There are four sounds originally made in the throat, called *gutturals* (from the Latin *guttur* = throat): א (*alef*), ה (*hey*), ח (*chet*), and ע (*ayin*). The letter ר (*resh*) shares characteristics in common with the gutturals. Special characteristics of the gutturals and *resh* will be pointed out in following chapters.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

- A. Memorize the names and letters** of the alphabet so well that you can write them out as fast as you can say and write your ABCs!
- B.** Make the sound and say the name of the following letters, reading from right to left.

ד ח ל פ ע א ף צ מ ג ם י כ ת נ ←

ב ו ס ה ק ר פ ך ט ש ן ב ז ץ ש ←

- C.** Read the two previous lines again and circle the letters in a special final form.
- D.** Read the two previous lines again and underline the gutturals + *resh*.
- E.** Read the two previous lines again and draw a box around the *begad-kefats*.
- F.** Match the letters that sound alike.

ו	כ
ט	ש
ח	ת
ק	פ
ס	ב

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

- G.** The following is Gen 1:1–3. Make the sounds and say the names of each letter.

בראשית ברא אלהים את השמים ואת הארץ ←

והארץ היתה תהו ובהו וחשך על פני תהום ←

ורוח אלהים מרחפת על פני המים ←

ויאמר אלהים יהי אור ויהי אור ←

2

THE VOWELS

A Brief History of Hebrew Vowels

- 2.1** During the original phase, Hebrew was written without any vowels indicated in the script. The letters קִצְּ could have meant “righteousness,” “his righteousness,” “they are righteous,” etc.
- ▶ This phase was before King David, ca. 1,400 B.C. to 1,000 B.C.
- 2.2** During the middle phase, several letters of the alphabet came to be used to indicate certain vowels. The letters קִצְּ could have meant “his righteousness,” or “they are righteous,” but not “righteousness.” We will refer to these letters used to indicate vowels as *vowel letters*.
- ▶ This phase was after King David, ca. 1,000 B.C. to 300 B.C.
- 2.3** During the final phase, “points” were added to the text to eliminate all ambiguity. The word קִצְּ could only have meant “they are righteous.” We will refer to these points as *vowel signs*.
- ▶ This phase was ca. A.D. 700 to A.D. 1000
 - ▶ The scholars responsible for adding the vowel signs to the text are called “Masoretes.”
 - ▶ The text of the Bible produced by the Masoretes is called the “Masoretic Text,” abbreviated MT.
 - ▶ You are learning to read the Hebrew text from this final phase.

Vowel Names, Signs, Sounds, and Positions

Name	Sign	Sound	Position
1. qamets	ֿ	a as in father	ֿ
2. patach	-	a as in father	ֿ
3. chatef-patach	ֿֿ	a as in father	ֿֿ
4. tsere	ֿֿ	ey as in hey	ֿֿ
5. segol	ֿֿֿ	e as in yet	ֿֿֿ

Notes:

- The vowels וְ (cholem-vav) and וּ (cholem) are different lengths and classes.
- Furthermore, וְ (qamets) and וּ (qamets-chatuf) are two different vowels that look identical; qamets-chatuf is rare.

Putting Consonants and Vowels Together

- 2.7** First pronounce the consonant, then the vowel.
- 2.8** Most vowels are placed under the consonant: רַ pronounced like *rah*.
- 2.9** The vowel וּ is placed above the consonant: תּוּ pronounced like *tow*.
- 2.10** The vowel וְ is placed to the left of the consonant: תּוּ pronounced like *tow*.
- 2.11** The vowel וּ is placed to the left of the consonant: זוּ pronounced like *zoo*.
- 2.12** Read the following from right to left:

בְּרָא בְּתַח דְּבָר יְבֹשׁ זְקֵן סִפֵּר	←
אִם עִיר אֲנִי נֹפֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים בִּקְרָ	←
כֹּהֵן סוּס עֲמוּד מְקוֹם אֲנָשִׁים	←

Vocabulary

daughter	בַּת	414	father, ancestor	אָב	369
he ate	אָכַל	1	mother	אִם	451
he remembered	זָכַר	32	brother	אָח	372
he is heavy	כָּבֵד	85	sister	אָחוֹת	372
he sent	שָׁלַח	25	son, descendant	בֵּן	380

Notes:

- The number following the Hebrew word refers to the card number in R. Dillard, *Hebrew Vocabulary Cards* (Springfield, Ohio: Visual Education Association, 1981).
- The general order of the vocabulary list is nouns followed by verbs.

- Tips for memorizing vocabulary [from M. Brown-Azarowicz et al., *Yes! You Can Learn a Foreign Language* (Lincolnwood, Ill.: Passport Books, 1986) chap. 3.]
- Memorize words grouped according to related meaning.
 - Review 10 minutes after initial learning.
 - Review 60 minutes after that.
 - Review again 24 hours later.
 - Review every 2 days until automatic recall is attained.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

- A. Focus on the sounds of the vowels.** The following are not Hebrew words, but they sound like English words. Pronounce the Hebrew word, then write the English word that sounds the same.

פֶּל .5	פֵּל .4	פִּל .3	פַּל .2	פּל .1
פּוֹם .10	פֹּם .9	פִּיל .8	פֵּל .7	פֶּל .6
פֶּל .15	פֶּט .14	פֶּט .13	פּוֹד .12	פֶּד .11
פֶּד .20	פֶּל .19	פֶּל .18	פֶּל .17	פֶּל .16
בֶּט .25	בּוֹט .24	בֶּט .23	בִּיד .22	בֶּד .21
בֵּית .30	בֵּת .29	בֶּט .28	בֶּט .27	בּוֹט .26

- B. Focus on the class of the vowels.** Memorize the vertical columns on the chart on p. 8 before doing this exercise.

1. Circle the “a” vowels: וְ יְ וְ
2. Circle the “i” vowels: יְ וְ
3. Circle the “u” vowels: וְ

- C. Focus on the length of the vowels.** Memorize the horizontal rows on the chart on p. 8 before doing this exercise.

1. Circle the long vowels: וְ יְ וְ
2. Circle the medium vowels: וְ
3. Circle the short vowels: וְ
4. Circle the very short vowels:

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on letters with two pronunciations. The following are not Hebrew words, but they sound like English words. Pronounce the Hebrew word, then write the English word that sounds the same.

בֶּכּ	.5	פּוּל	.4	פּוֹל	.3	בֶּט	.2	בֶּט	.1
פֵּס	.10	פֵּס	.9	בֵּס	.8	בֵּס	.7	בֶּךְ	.6

E. Focus on letters that look alike. The following are not Hebrew words, but they sound like English words. Pronounce the Hebrew word, then write the English word that sounds the same.

רֶד	.5	רִיד	.4	רִיד	.3	בֵּס	.2	בֵּס	.1
כַּר	.10	זִיל	.9	וִיל	.8	תָּל	.7	הָל	.6
זוּם	.15	פָּצ	.14	פָּע	.13	לוּם	.12	לוּם	.11

F. Focus on letters that sound alike. The following are not Hebrew words, but they sound like English words. Pronounce the Hebrew word, then write the English word that sounds the same.

טָל	.5	בֶּךְ	.4	בַּח	.3	וּם	.2	בֵּס	.1
שֵׁם	.10	סֵם	.9	קָר	.8	כַּר	.7	תָּל	.6

Putting It All Together

G. The following are not Hebrew words, but they sound like English words. Pronounce the Hebrew word, then write the English word that sounds the same.

קִי	.5	שִׁף	.4	בֵּל	.3	רֶן	.2	גֵּם	.1
שִׁי	.10	אָג	.9	הֶן	.8	שִׁן	.7	נַת	.6
נָד	.15	יֵ	.14	זוּ	.13	וּוט	.12	ר	.11
עוֹץ	.20	שִׁי	.19	ס	.18	כֶּק	.17	כֶּק	.16
שׁוּל	.25	עֵם	.24	אָם	.23	לִין	.22	וֹת	.21
קָץ	.30	גֵּט	.29	רוּף	.28	גִּיר	.27	גִּיר	.26

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

H. The following are from Genesis 1 (slightly modified). Read aloud in Hebrew until you can read as quickly as in English.

- | | |
|------------|------------------------------------|
| (Gen 1:1) | בְּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם .1 |
| (Gen 1:4) | אֱלֹהִים אֶת הָאוֹר כִּי טוֹב .2 |
| (Gen 1:5) | בְּקֶרֶת יוֹם אֶחָד .3 |
| (Gen 1:11) | הָאָרֶץ דָּשָׂא עֲשׂוּב .4 |

► **One basic rule: “short and silent.”**

If a *short* vowel comes before the consonant under which there is a *sheva*, the *sheva* is *silent*.

בַּר	מִדְּבַר	מִדְּבָר	←
טִיל	יְקַטֵּל	יְקַטִּיל	←

► Various applications:

If a *sheva* is under the first consonant of a word, the *sheva* is vocal. (This *sheva* is not preceded by a short vowel.)

רִים	בְּ	דְּ	דְּבָרִים	←
------	-----	-----	-----------	---

If there are two *shevas* in a row, the first is silent and the second is vocal. (The first is preceded by a short vowel and is silent, the second is not and is vocal.)

לוֹ	טְ	יְקַטֵּל	יְקַטִּילֹ	←
-----	----	----------	------------	---

Identify the *shevas* in the following examples: (answers in footnote¹)

מִלְחָמָה	←
מִזְבְּחוֹת	←
יְדָבָר	←

More about Dagesh

- 3.6** You have learned “weak *dagesh*,” which indicates the hard pronunciation of the *begadkefats* בּ, כּ, and פּ.
- 3.7** There is also “strong *dagesh*,” which looks like weak *dagesh*, but has a different job.
- **Strong *dagesh* doubles a consonant**, meaning that there are two consonants present even though only one is written. The word קִטֵּל could be represented in English as *qittail* (*qit tail*), since the strong *dagesh* means that there are two *tets* (ט). A consonant with strong *dagesh* should be pronounced twice as long, as in the English word meanness.

1. Silent, preceded by a short vowel. First is silent, preceded by a short vowel, but second is vocal, not preceded by a short vowel. Vocal, not preceded by a short vowel, since under first consonant of the word.

Telling the Difference between Weak *Dagesh* and Strong *Dagesh*

3.8 If a *dagesh* is in a consonant other than a *begadkefat*, it is strong *dagesh*.

3.9 If a *dagesh* is in a *begadkefat*, it may be weak *dagesh* or strong *dagesh*.

- If the sound before the *begadkefat* is a consonant, the *dagesh* is weak.

מְדַבֵּר מְדַבֵּר ←

Since the sheva is preceded by a short vowel, it is silent and closes the syllable. So the *dagesh* is preceded by a consonant.

- If the sound before the *begadkefat* is a vowel the *dagesh* is strong.

קָדַשׁ קָדַשׁ ←

- Identify the *dageshes* in the following examples: (answers in footnote²)

מִשְׁפָּט

יְדַבֵּר

מְלִכְנוּ

*Guttural Characteristic #1: gutturals (א ה ח ע) and resh (ר) will not have either weak *dagesh* or strong *dagesh*.*

Vocabulary

day, time, lifetime	יוֹם	387	God, god	אֵל	450
battle, war	מִלְחָמָה	427	God, gods	אֱלֹהִים	376
king	מֶלֶךְ (מְלִיךָ)	393	land, earth	אֶרֶץ (אֲרֶץ)	378
kingdom, reign	מְלָכוּת	646	word, matter	דָּבָר	381
city, town	עִיר	397	hand, power	יָד	386

2. Weak, follows a consonant. Strong, follows a vowel. Weak, follows a consonant.

Notes:

- The word אֱלֹהִים is a plural noun. When referring to the one true God, it will be treated as a singular noun; when referring to false gods, it will be treated as a plural.
- If the accent is on a syllable other than the last, the accented syllable will be indicated by colored type in the vocabulary list only, for example, אֶרֶץ (אֶרֶץ). Learn the vocabulary with the proper accent.
- When a word ends in הַ, for example, מְלַחֵמָה, the הַ is a vowel letter and is silent.
- Final ך usually has a silent *sheva* in it, for example, מְלֶךְ.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on *sheva*. Identify each *sheva* as vocal or silent and give the reason.

- | | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| מְנַחֵה .5 | מְקַטֵּל .4 | נִגְדוּ .3 | יִקְטִיל .2 | מְדַבֵּר .1 |
| דְּרָכִים .10 | מְזַבְּחוֹת .9 | דְּבָרִים .8 | בִּרְכָה .7 | כוֹתְבִים .6 |
| יְדַבְּרוּ .15 | יְדַבֵּר .14 | סִפְרוּ .13 | מְלָכוֹ .12 | קָטְלוּ .11 |

B. Focus on *dagesh*. Identify each *dagesh* as weak or strong and give the reason.

- | | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| מְשַׁתֵּה .5 | נִזְבַּח .4 | אִשָּׁה .3 | קָדַשׁ .2 | מְדַבֵּר .1 |
| חֲצִצִים .10 | מְזַבְּחוֹת .9 | יִכְתֹּב .8 | עָמִים .7 | מְדַבֵּר .6 |
| יְדַבְּרוּ .15 | יְדַבֵּר .14 | נִגְדוּ .13 | מְלָכוֹ .12 | קָטְלוּ .11 |

C. Focus on syllables. Divide the following into syllables, pronouncing each word as you go. If there is a strong *dagesh* in a letter, draw a line through that letter.

- | | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| מְנַחֵה .5 | מְקַטֵּל .4 | נִגְדוּ .3 | יִקְטִיל .2 | מְדַבֵּר .1 |
| דְּרָכִים .10 | מְזַבְּחוֹת .9 | דְּבָרִים .8 | בִּרְכָה .7 | כוֹתְבִים .6 |
| יְדַבְּרוּ .15 | יְדַבֵּר .14 | סִפְרוּ .13 | עוֹלָמִים .12 | קָטְלוּ .11 |

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on the class of the vowels.

1. Circle the “a” vowels: אַ אָ וַ וֹ יֵ אִ וִ אֵ
2. Circle the “i” vowels: יֵ אִ אֵ וִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ
3. Circle the “u” vowels: וֹ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ

E. Focus on the length of the vowels.

1. Circle the long vowels: אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ
2. Circle the medium vowels: אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ
3. Circle the short vowels: אַ אָ וַ וֹ יֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ
4. Circle the very short vowels: אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ אִ אֵ

Putting It All Together

- F.** The following are not Hebrew words, but they sound like English words. Pronounce the Hebrew word, then write the English word that sounds the same.

- | | | | | |
|---------|------------|------------|----------------|----------|
| קַן .5 | לֵץ .4 | דֵל .3 | גַת .2 | שֵן .1 |
| שֵי .10 | וּשְתָה .9 | טַרְגַת .8 | קוֹץ .7 | רוּת .6 |
| גַד .15 | לְתָר .14 | זִירוּ .13 | הַשְתוּרִי .12 | סִיל .11 |

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

- G.** The following is the vocalized text of Gen 1:1-3. Read and reread the text out loud, until you can read it as fast as in English.

1. בְּרֵאשִׁית בְּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת הָאָרֶץ .1
2. וְהָאָרֶץ הָיְתָה תְהוֹ וְבָהוּ וְחֹשֶׁךְ עַל פְּנֵי תְהוֹם .2
3. וְרוּחַ אֱלֹהִים מְרַחֶפֶת עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם .3
3. וַיֹּאמֶר אֱלֹהִים יְהִי אוֹר וַיְהִי אוֹר .3

3. The *patach* (אַ) under the *chet* (ח) in רוּחַ is not a full vowel but is a slight “a” (as in *father*) sound that makes it easier to pronounce a final *chet* (ח) or *ayin* (ע) and is called “furtive *patach*.” Furtive *patach* is pronounced before the final *chet* (ח) or *ayin* (ע), is not accented, and is printed slightly to the right to distinguish it from *patach*.

4

THE NOUN: BASIC FORMS

Gender of Nouns

- 4.1** A few English nouns show a difference between the masculine and the feminine, e.g., *host/hostess* and *waiter/waitress*.
- 4.2** All Hebrew nouns are either masculine or feminine.
- 4.3** Sometimes the thing referred to by the noun is masculine, sometimes feminine:
- סוס is a masculine noun meaning “horse.”
 - סוּסָה is a feminine noun meaning “mare.”
- 4.4** Sometimes the thing referred to has nothing to do with male or female:
- דְּבָר is a masculine noun meaning “word.”
 - מִלְחָמָה is a feminine noun meaning “battle.”

Masculine Singular Nouns

- 4.5** Masculine singular nouns are usually “unmarked,” i.e. there is no special ending to mark the noun as masculine.
- סוס (‘horse’) is masculine singular, having no special ending.
 - דְּבָר (‘word’) is masculine singular, having no special ending.

Masculine is abbreviated m, and singular is abbreviated s; סוס is a ms noun.

Feminine Singular Nouns

- 4.6** Feminine singular nouns are usually “marked,” i.e. there is a special ending to mark the noun as feminine.
- 4.7** The most common feminine ending is the הַ ending (the ה is a vowel letter):
- סוּסָה (mare) is feminine singular, marked by the הַ ending.
 - מִלְחָמָה (battle) is feminine singular, marked by the הַ ending.

4.8 Another feminine ending is ת, preceded by various vowels:

- ▶ בַּת (daughter) is feminine singular, marked by the ת ending.
- ▶ מְלָכּוֹת (kingdom) is feminine singular, marked by the ת ending.

Feminine is abbreviated f; סוּסָה is a fs noun.

Irregular Singular Nouns

4.9 Some unmarked nouns are actually feminine.

- ▶ אֶרֶץ (earth) is feminine singular but unmarked.
- ▶ עִיר (city) is feminine singular but unmarked.

4.10 The true gender of such nouns will often be indicated by context and will be identified in the vocabulary lists.

4.11 Parts of the body that occur in pairs look masculine but are feminine.

hand	יָד
------	-----

4.12 Here are the nouns learned to this point that look masculine but are feminine:

mother	אִם
land, earth	אֶרֶץ
hand	יָד
city, town	עִיר

Number of Nouns

4.13 English has a singular and a plural, usually marked by adding -s or -es, e.g., *boy/boys* and *flash/ashes*.

4.14 Hebrew has a singular, a plural, and also a dual.

Masculine Plural Nouns

4.15 Masculine plural nouns are usually marked by the ים ending.

סוּסִים	סוּס
horses	horse
אֱלִים	אֵל
gods	god

Plural is abbreviated p; סוּסִים is a mp noun.

Feminine Plural Nouns

4.16 Feminine plural nouns are usually marked by the ׁת ending.

סוסות	סוסה
mares	mare
מלחמות	מלחמה
battles	battle

Irregular Plural Nouns

4.17 Some masculine plural nouns look feminine.

אבות	אב
fathers	father

4.18 Some feminine plural nouns look masculine.

ערים	עיר
cities	city

- Note that the vowel in the plural of עיר is different from the vowel in the singular. Vowel changes will be discussed in Lesson 8.

4.19 The true gender of such nouns will often be indicated by context and will be indicated in the vocabulary.

4.20 Here are the nouns learned thus far that appear to be one gender in the plural but are the other gender.

<i>mp</i>	אבות	אב
<i>fp</i>	ערים	עיר

Dual Nouns

4.21 The dual is used to refer to two things, not one or three.

4.22 Nouns in the dual are marked by the ׁם ending.

4.23 The use of the dual is mostly limited

- To nouns that come in natural pairs:

ידיים	יד
two hands	hand

- To certain expressions of time:

יומים	יום
two days	day

Dual is abbreviated *d*; יומים is a *md* noun.

Summary of Basic Noun Forms

	Plural	Singular
Masculine	סוּסִים	סוּס
Feminine	סוּסוֹת	סוּסָה

Vocabulary

they <i>m</i>	הֵם / הֵמָּה (הֵמָּה)	865	he, it	הוּא	860
they <i>f</i>	הֵנָּה (הֵנָּה)	866	she, it	הִיא	861
you <i>mp</i>	אַתֶּם	863	you <i>ms</i>	אַתָּה	858
you <i>fp</i>	אַתְּנָה / אַתְּנָה (אַתְּנָה)	864	you <i>fs</i>	אַתְּ	859
we	אַנְחֵנוּ (אַנְחֵנוּ)	862	I	אַנִּי / אֲנִכִּי	857

Notes:

- A *sheva* (◌ְ) under a final ת is silent, as in אַתְּ.
- The *fp* forms אַתְּנָה / אַתְּנָה occur only 4 times and 1 time, respectively.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on gender. Read the following Hebrew words; circle the masculine words and underline the feminine words.

1. אֵלִים מְלֶךְ דָּבָר יוֹם מְלָכוּת אָב בַּת בֵּן מְלַחְמוֹת

2. מְדַבֵּר מְנַחֵה סֵפֶר דְּלִים טוֹבוֹת שְׁלוֹם אֲמַת עֲמִים

B. Focus on number. Read the Following Hebrew words; circle the singular words, underline the plural words, and draw a box around the dual words.

1. אֵלִים יָדִים דָּבָר אֱלֹהִים מְלָכוּת אָבוֹת בַּת בֵּן מְלַחְמוֹת

2. מְזַבְּחוֹת עוֹלָמִים עֵינִים מְשַׁפְּחַת אֲרָצוֹת אֲמַת טוֹבִים

C. Focus on number and gender. Read the following Hebrew words and circle the word that is out of place in terms of number or gender.

- | | | | | | |
|-----------|--------|-----------|-----------|---------|---------|
| 1. יום | מְלֶךְ | מְלָכּוֹת | 2. אֱלִים | סוּסוֹת | טוֹבִים |
| 3. סוּס | דָּבָר | אֱלִים | 4. בֵּית | אָב | אֵם |
| 5. יָדַים | מַיִם | יָמִים | 6. אֶרֶץ | מְלֶךְ | דְּרֹךְ |

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on sheva. Identify each *sheva* as vocal or silent, and give the reason.

1. מְדַבֵּר 2. מְלַחֵמָה 3. אֶכְתָּבָה 4. תִּשְׁמַע 5. מְלָכּוֹת

E. Focus on dagesh. Identify each *dagesh* as weak or strong, and give the reason.

1. מְדַבֵּר 2. אִשָּׁה 3. אֶכְתָּבָה 4. קָטַל 5. מִשְׁפָּט

F. Focus on pronunciation. Read the following English words, written in Hebrew.

1. מוֹן 2. גִּרְדָּן 3. סוּיֵר 4. אֶלְשׁוּ 5. בְּתָר

Putting It All Together

G. Focus on meaning. Circle the word that does not belong in terms of meaning.

- | | | | | | |
|---------|--------|-----------|----------|--------|-----------|
| 1. יום | מְלֶךְ | מְלָכּוֹת | 2. אֵל | אֵם | אֱלֹהִים |
| 3. יָד | אָח | אָחוֹת | 4. בֵּית | אָב | עִיר |
| 5. בֵּן | אֶרֶץ | בֵּית | 6. אָכַל | מְלֶךְ | מְלַחֵמָה |

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

H. The following is Gen 1:1-3.

1. בְּרֵאשִׁית בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת הָאָרֶץ
2. וְהָאָרֶץ הִיְתָה תְהוֹ וְבָהוּ וְחֹשֶׁךְ עַל פְּנֵי תְהוֹם
וְרוּחַ אֱלֹהִים מְרַחֶפֶת עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם
3. וַיֹּאמֶר אֱלֹהִים יְהִי אוֹר וַיְהִי אוֹר

1. Read the text out loud and circle all nouns marked as plural or dual.
2. Read the text out loud and underline all words that have a *begad-kefat* letter.
3. Read the text and draw a box around all words *without* a guttural or *resh*.

5

PRONOUNS AND THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

Personal Pronouns

- 5.1** In the vocabulary of Lesson 4 you learned the Hebrew personal pronouns: הוא, היא, אתה, etc.

Forms of the Personal Pronouns

they <i>m</i>	הֵם / הֵמָּה	he, it	הוא
they <i>f</i>	הֵנָּה	she, it	היא
you <i>mp</i>	אַתֶּם	you <i>ms</i>	אַתָּה
you <i>fp</i>	אַתְּנָה / אַתְּן	you <i>fs</i>	אַתְּ
we	אַנְחֵנוּ	I	אֲנִי / אֲנֹכִי

Use of the Personal Pronouns

- 5.2** These personal pronouns are used only as the subject of a sentence, as in the English sentence, “I am a father.” This type of sentence uses a verb in English, “am,” but not in Hebrew.

“I am a father.” אֲנִי אָב

- 5.3** The subject (the part of the sentence about which something is said) is אֲנִי and the predicate (the part of the sentence telling something about the subject) is אָב.

- 5.4** The word order in Hebrew is variable.

“I am a father.” אָב אֲנִי

“She is a mother.” הִיא אִם

“You are a son.” בֶּן אַתָּה

- 5.5** The subject agrees with the predicate in number and gender; for example, if the predicate is *fs*, the subject is *fs*; or if the predicate is *mp*, the subject is *mp*.

“You are a daughter.”	בַּת אֶתְּ
“They are gods.”	הֵם אֱלֹהִים

Definite Article

Basic Form

- 5.6** Hebrew does not have an indefinite article, as does English: “a car” or “an apple.” So אָח can be translated “brother” or “a brother,” depending on the context.
- 5.7** The Hebrew definite article is not a separate word, as is the English definite article, “the.”
- 5.8** The Hebrew definite article is always attached to the beginning of a word, and is made up of three parts: (1) ה, (2) a *patach* (◻) under the ה, and (3) a strong *dagesh* in the first letter of the word.

“the horse”	הַסּוּס
“the word”	הַדָּבָר
“the king”	הַמֶּלֶךְ

Definite Article and Gutturals + Resh

- 5.9** When the gutturals + *resh* were introduced, you learned that these letters have several special characteristics. Guttural characteristic #1 (see p. 15) is that gutturals never have *dagesh*. So the form of the definite article will be slightly different on words beginning with a guttural or *resh*.

- On nouns beginning with ה and ח, the article is הַ with no strong *dagesh*—that is, no doubling of the first consonant. These words are treated “as if” the first letter is doubled; this is called “virtual doubling.”

“the splendor”	הַהוֹד
“the arrow”	הַחֵץ

- On nouns beginning with א, ע, and ר, the article is הֶ. To “make up for” the lack of doubling in the first letter, the short vowel ◻ is lengthened to the medium vowel ◻; this is called “compensatory lengthening.”

“the father”	הָאָב
“the city”	הָעִיר
“the chariot”	הָרֶכֶב

- On nouns beginning with הָ, הַ, and עַ the article is usually הָ.

“the wrong”	הַחָמָס
“the mountains”	הַהָרִים
“the clouds”	הָעָבִים

Vocabulary

priest	כֹּהֵן	388	man, Adam	אָדָם	371
he walked, went	הִלְךְ	6	man, husband	אִישׁ	375
he took, seized	לָקַח	11	woman, wife	אִשָּׁה	412
he gave, presented	נָתַן	14	house, temple	בַּיִת (בַּיִת)	379
he heard	שָׁמַע	26	way, road	דֶּרֶךְ (דֶּרֶךְ)	382

Notes:

- The plural of אִישׁ is אַנְשִׁים.
- The plural of אִשָּׁה is נְשִׁים.
- שָׁמַע also means “obey.”

Practice

Focusing on New Material

- A. Focus on the personal pronoun.** Translate the following Hebrew sentences.

- | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. הוא אָב | 2. אַתָּה אָב | 3. אָב אָנִי |
| 4. אָם הִיא | 5. אַתָּ אָם | 6. אָם אָנֹכִי |
| 7. הוא סוֹס | 8. הֵם סוֹסִים | 9. סוֹסוֹת הֵנָּה |
| 10. אַתָּה אֵל | 11. אֵלִים אַתָּם | 12. אֲנַחְנוּ אֵלִים |

B. Focus on the definite article. Translate the following Hebrew words, paying attention to the presence or absence of the definite article.

1. יום .2 היום .3 אֱלֹהִים .4 הָאֱלֹהִים .5 הַבַּת
 6. בַּת .7 הַמֶּלֶךְ .8 מֶלֶךְ .9 יָד .10 הַיָּד
 11. אַחֹת .12 עֵיר .13 הָעֵיר .14 הַדָּבָר .15 דָּבָר

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on letters that sound alike. Circle the letters that sound alike.

1. ב כ ו .2 ס ש ש .3 ט ת ה .4 כ כ ק .5 צ ח כ

D. Focus on gutturals and *resh*. Circle the gutturals or *resh*.

1. ד ר ך .2 ע צ ט .3 ה ת ב .4 מ א ג .5 ל ח ו

E. Focus on gender and number. Identify the gender and number of the following.

1. אַח .2 בַּת .3 סוּסוֹת .4 אֱלִים .5 אָרֶץ

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

1. אֲנֹכִי אָב .2 הָאָב אֲנֹכִי .3 אַתָּה הַמֶּלֶךְ
 4. הַמֶּלֶךְ חָמָה הִיא .5 הִנֵּה סוּסוֹת .6 זָכָר
 7. הִיא הָאָרֶץ .8 הַבַּת אַתָּה .9 שְׁלַח
 10. אֱלִים אַתֶּם .11 גָּתָן .12 כָּבֵד

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. The following is 2 Samuel 7:1-2.

1. וַיְהִי כִּי יָשָׁב הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּבֵיתוֹ
 וַיִּהְיֶה¹ הַגִּיחַ לּוֹ מִסָּבִיב מִכָּל אִבְיּוֹ

1. The letters יהוה are the Lord's covenantal name, often translated LORD, in contrast to Lord, and are referred to as the Tetragrammaton, "four letters." According to Jewish tradition, which wishes to revere the divine name, the Tetragrammaton should not be pronounced. The edition of the Hebrew Bible you are

2. וַיֹּאמֶר הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶל נָתָן הַנְּבִיאַ

רְאֵה נָא אֲנֹכִי יוֹשֵׁב בְּבַיִת אֲרָזִים

וְנֶאֱרוֹן הָאֱלֹהִים יֹשֵׁב בְּתוֹךְ הַיְרִיעָה²

1. Read the text out loud and focus on pronunciation.
2. Read the text out loud and circle all words you know.
3. Read the text out loud and underline all words with the definite article.
4. Can you find the name “Nathan”? Draw a box around it.

reading places one or more of the vowels from אֲדוֹנָי, “my lord,” on the Tetragrammaton. So when you come to the Tetragrammaton, you are to say “Adonai.”

2. When the definite article is added to a word beginning with א the strong *dagesh* is not added.

6

THE VERB: QAL PERFECT

Overview of the Hebrew Verb

- 6.1** The material in this section provides you with an overview of the Hebrew verb. You need to be able to understand and to use properly the following terms: *root*, *pattern*, *conjugation*, *paradigm*, and *parse*.

Root

- 6.2** The basic building block of a Hebrew word is the “root.” A *root* is the core consonants of a word, usually three consonants, minus the vowels and consonantal prefixes or suffixes. Common consonantal prefixes for nouns are **מ** and **ת**. Roots are indicated by writing the consonants without vowels, prefixes, and suffixes; for example, the root of **מֶלֶךְ** (“king”) and **מַלְכוּת** (“kingdom”) is **מלך**.
- 6.3** As is the case in the previous example, words from the same root usually have related meanings. Adding elements to the root—various vowels or consonantal prefixes or suffixes, for example, **וּת** in **מַלְכוּת**—alters the meaning. Endings for gender and number, being suffixes, are never part of the root.

Example #1	Root	זרע	
	Verb	זָרַע	“he sowed”
	Noun	זֶרַע	“seed”
	Noun	מִזְרָע	“sown land”

Example #2	Root	ספר	
	Verb	סָפַר	“he counted”
	Noun	סֵפֶר	“document”
	Noun	מִסְפָּר	“number”

Pattern

- 6.4** There are seven basic verb “patterns” in Hebrew.¹ A pattern is the root plus the characteristic added elements. The pattern you will learn in this lesson is the *qal* (from the Hebrew word קָל meaning “light” or “simple”), and the *qal* is the simple active pattern.² Another pattern, for example, is the *niphal*, which is formed by prefixing a נ to the root and is used for the passive of the *qal*, among other uses.
- 6.5** Changing from one pattern to another **changes the meaning** of the verb.

Example #1	Root	זרע	
	Qal	זָרַע	“he sowed”
	Niphal	נִזְרַע	“it was sown”

Example #2	Root	ספר	
	Qal	סָפַר	“he counted”
	Niphal	נִסְפַּר	“he was counted”

Conjugations

- 6.6** There are two types of conjugations for Hebrew verbs: “finite” and “non-finite.”
- Finite conjugations are conjugated for person, gender, and number; for example, זָרַע is 3rd person, masculine, and singular. There are three basic finite conjugations in Hebrew: *perfect*, *imperfect*, and *imperative*. You are learning one of the finite conjugations in this lesson: the *perfect*.
 - Non-finite conjugations are not conjugated for person but are conjugated either for gender and number only or not at all. There are three non-finite conjugations in Hebrew: *participle*, *infinitive absolute*, and *infinitive construct*.
- 6.7** Changing from one conjugation to another **changes the use, that is, the time of or the kind of situation** expressed by the verb; for example, in the *perfect*, סָפַר could be translated “he counted,” but translated “he will count” in the *imperfect*.

1. The four primary patterns make up 97% of all verbs in the Hebrew Bible; B. W. Waltke and M. O'Connor, *An Introduction to Biblical Hebrew Syntax* (Winona Lake, Ind.: Eisenbrauns, 1990; hereafter: *IBHS*) §21.2.3e.

2. The *qal* makes up 69% of the verbs in the Hebrew Bible; *IBHS* §21.2.3e.

Paradigm

6.8 A verb “paradigm” is a chart showing verb forms for person, gender, and number. A paradigm of the English verb “to be” would include “I am,” “you are,” “he/she is,” and so on. English paradigms move from the 1st person (“I am”) through the 3rd person (“he/she is”). Hebrew paradigms move from the 3rd person through the 1st person. This is because the 3ms (3rd person masculine singular) is the base form from which the others are derived. In the vocabulary and in Hebrew dictionaries, most verbs are listed according to the 3ms form. In this grammar, the root used for the paradigms of the regular verb in Hebrew is קטל.

Parsing

6.9 “Parsing” is identifying the elements of a verb. The order for parsing Hebrew verbs is: (1) pattern, (2) conjugation, (3) person, (4) gender, (5) number, and (6) root; for example:

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הִלָּךְ	qal	perfect	3	m	s	הלך

Qal Perfect

Form of the Qal Perfect

6.10 Memorize the following verb paradigm well enough to write it out in Hebrew.

	Verb	Pronoun	
קָטַל	קָטַל		3ms
קָטְלָהּ	קָטְלָהּ		3fs
קָטַלְתָּ	קָטַלְתָּ	אַתָּה	2ms
קָטַלְתְּ	קָטַלְתְּ	אַתְּ	2fs
קָטַלְתִּי	קָטַלְתִּי	אֲנִי / אָנֹכִי	1cs
קָטַלוּ	קָטַלוּ		3cp
קָטַלְתֶּם	קָטַלְתֶּם	אַתֶּם	2mp
קָטַלְתֶּן	קָטַלְתֶּן	אַתֶּן / אַתְּנָה	2fp
קָטַלְנוּ	קָטַלְנוּ	אֲנַחְנוּ	1cp

The abbreviation *c* stands for “common,” that is, a form used in common for both masculine and feminine. The perfect conjugation is abbreviated *pf*.

- 6.11** The base form of the qal pf is the 3ms form: קָטַל. The other forms are made by adding suffixes to the 3ms form. To highlight the suffixes, they are printed in color. The suffixes are related to the personal pronouns, except in the 3rd person forms.
- 6.12** In the 2mp and 2fp forms, the vowel under the first consonant is reduced from the medium vowel *qamets* (ֶ) to *sheva* (ְ), because medium vowels are not allowed in open syllables that are two or more syllables before the accent.
- 6.13** In the 3fs and 3cp forms, the theme vowel (see 6.15) reduces to *sheva* (ְ).
- 6.14** The accent is on the next to the last syllable in the following forms: קָטַלְתָּ, קָטַלְתְּ, קָטַלְתִּי, and קָטַלְנוּ. Memorize these forms with the accent.
- 6.15** There are two types of perfect verbs in the Qal: “action” and “stative.” Whether a given verb is action or stative will often be indicated by the vowel under the second consonant, called the “theme vowel.” The theme vowel of action verbs is *patach* (ַ). The theme vowel of stative verbs is most often *tsere* (ִ), but sometimes *cholem* (ֹ). *Tsere* (ִ) as a theme vowel will usually occur only in the 3ms form; in the other forms *patach* (ַ) will occur; for example: כָּבַדְתָּ, but כָּבַדְנוּ.

Use of the Qal Perfect

- 6.16** The perfect conjugation is used in a variety of ways. Only two uses are introduced at this point: “definite perfect” and “stative perfect.”
- ▶ The **definite perfect**,³ a use of action verbs, expresses **complete action in the past** and is best translated into English with a simple past tense.

“he ate”	אָכַל
“he walked”	הֵלֵךְ
“he sent”	שָׁלַח

3. *IBHS*, §30.5.1b.

- The **stative perfect**, a use of stative verbs, expresses a “**state of being**”; for example, “he is old,” and “she is young,” and is best translated into English with a present tense.⁴

“he is heavy” כָּבֵד

- The use of the perfect will be the same in all the patterns, with the exception of the stative perfect, which is a use found only in the *qal*.

6.17 Remember: changing from one **pattern** to another changes the **meaning** of the verb, but changing from one **conjugation** to another changes the **use** of the verb, that is, the **time of or kind of situation** expressed by the verb.

Vocabulary

forever, antiquity	עוֹלָם	432	garment, clothing	בָּגֵד (בְּגָד)	455
trust	בָּטַח	67	clan, family	מִשְׁפָּחָה	474
write	כָּתַב	45	prophet	נָבִיא	430
guard, observe, watch	שָׁמַר	61	boy	נֶעֶר (נֶעָר)	477
judge, decide, punish	שָׁפַט	62	soul, self <i>f</i>	נַפְשׁ (נִפְשׁ)	394

Notes:

- The plural of נַפְשׁ is נַפְשׁוֹת.
- The English equivalent of Hebrew verbs from this lesson on will not be a literal rendering of the 3ms form, as has been the case in lessons 1–5, but will be a neutral rendering without reference to person, gender, or number.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on roots. Write the Hebrew root of the following.

1. אָדָם 2. אָכַל 3. אָרַץ 4. דָּבַר 5. דִּרְדַּךְ
6. מָלַךְ 7. מַלְכוּת 8. מִשְׁפָּחָה 9. מִלְחָמָה 10. שָׁלַח

4. The stative pf is best translated with a present tense in discourse and a past tense in narrative.

B. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. שָׁלַח						
2. לָקַחָהּ						
3. הִלְכָתָּ						
4. זָכַרְתֶּם						
5. שָׁמַעְנוּ						
6. כָּתַבְתִּי						
7. בָּטַחְתָּן						
8. אָכְלוּ						
9. קָטַלְתָּ						
10. קָטַל						

C. Focus on meaning. Cover the left column with a card and translate the Hebrew in the right column; then slide the card down one line to verify that your translation is correct.

	1.	לָקַח
1. He took.	2.	לָקַחָהּ
2. They took.	3.	לָקַחְתִּי
3. I took.	4.	לָקַחְנוּ
4. We took	5.	לָקַחְתֶּם
5. You (<i>mp</i>) took.	6.	לָקַחְתָּ
6. You (<i>ms</i>) took.	7.	לָקַחָהּ
7. She took.	8.	שָׁמַעָהּ
8. She heard.	9.	זָכַרָהּ
9. She remembered.	10.	הִלְכָתָּ
10. You (<i>fs</i>) walked.	11.	הִלְכְתִּי
11. I walked.	12.	כָּבְדוּ
12. They are heavy.	13.	שָׁלַחָהּ
13. She sent.	14.	שָׁמַעְנוּ
14. We heard.	15.	אָכְלְתָּ
15. You (<i>ms</i>) ate.	16.	זָכַרְתֶּם

16. You (<i>mp</i>) remembered.	17. זָכַרְתָּן
17. You (<i>fp</i>) remembered.	18. זָכַרְתִּי
18. I remembered.	19. נָתַן
19. He gave.	20. כָּבְדוּנוּ
20. We are heavy.	

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on the personal pronoun. Translate the following Hebrew sentences.

	1. כֹּהֵן אָנִי
1. I am a priest.	2. כֹּהֵן הוּא
2. He is a priest	3. כֹּהֵן אַתָּה
3. You (<i>ms</i>) are a priest.	4. אִם הִיא
4. She is a mother.	5. אִם אֵת
5. You (<i>fs</i>) are a mother.	6. אֲנָשִׁים הֵם
6. They (<i>mp</i>) are men.	7. אֲנָשִׁים אֲנַחְנוּ
7. We are men.	8. אֲנָשִׁים אַתֶּם
8. You (<i>mp</i>) are men.	9. נָשִׁים אַתָּן
9. You (<i>fp</i>) are women.	10. נָשִׁים הֵנָּה
10. They (<i>fp</i>) are women.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

E. The following is Psalm 1:1.

אֲשֶׁר־יֵאֱמַר אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר
 לֹא הָלַךְ בְּעֵצַת רְשָׁעִים
 וּבְדֶרֶךְ חַטָּאִים לֹא עָמַד
 וּבְמוֹשָׁב לֵצִים לֹא יָשָׁב

1. Read the text out loud, focusing on pronunciation.
2. Read the text out loud and circle all *qal* pf verbs.
3. Read the text out loud and underline all *mp* nouns.
4. Read the text out loud and draw a box around all nouns with the definite article.

7

SENTENCES WITH VERBS

Subject

- 7.1** The subject may be **specified by the form of the verb alone**. In Hebrew, שִׁלַּחְתִּי is a complete sentence, “I sent.” The subject, “I,” is indicated by the suffix, תִּי.
- 7.2** The subject may be **specified by the addition of a personal pronoun**. When a pronoun is added, emphasis is being placed on the subject. The sentence אֲנִי שִׁלַּחְתִּי means “I (not you or anybody else) sent.”
- 7.3** The subject may be **specified by a noun**, when the verb is 3rd person.
- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| “A father sent.” | אָב שִׁלַּח |
| “A mother sent.” | אִם שִׁלַּחָה |
| “Men sent.” | אֲנָשִׁים שִׁלַּחוּ |
- 7.4** As the previous examples show, the subject—whether a pronoun or a noun—must agree in person, gender, and number with the verb.

Direct Object

- 7.5** The direct object is the **object** (person or thing) affected **directly** by the action of the verb. In “he threw a ball,” the direct object is “a ball.”
- | | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| “He sent a horse.” | שִׁלַּח סוּס |
| “He sent a garment.” | שִׁלַּח בְּגָד |
- 7.6** There are two kinds of direct objects in Hebrew: “indefinite” and “definite.”
- The two previous examples are of the **indefinite direct object**, an object that is not definite.
 - When there is a **definite direct object**, the word אֵת is placed before the object. The word אֵת is not translated but simply indicates the presence of a definite direct object. The direct object marker אֵת will

occur in two forms. About 10% of the time, the form is אֶת. About 90% of the time, the form is אֶת־. The bar at the top left of the word is called *maqef* and functions somewhat like a hyphen in English.

“He sent the horse.” שִׁלַּח אֶת הַסּוּס

“He sent the garment.” שִׁלַּח אֶת־הַבְּגָד

Word Order

- 7.7** Typical word order in Hebrew is: (1) verb, (2) subject, and (3) direct object.

שִׁלַּח הָאָב אֶת־הַסּוּס

“The father sent the horse.”

שִׁלַּחַה הָאִמָּה אֶת־הַבְּגָד

“The mother sent the garment.”

- 7.8** When the subject or direct object is placed before the verb, emphasis is being placed on that subject or direct object.

הָאָב שִׁלַּח אֶת־הַסּוּס

“The father (not the mother) sent the horse.”

אֶת־הַסּוּס שִׁלַּח הָאָב

“The father sent the horse (not the garment).”

Negative Sentences

- 7.9** Sentences such as the examples in this chapter are made negative by the word לֹא. Any element of the sentence may be negated, and לֹא will be placed immediately before the negated element.

לֹא שִׁלַּח הָאָב אֶת־הַסּוּס

“The father did not **send** the horse (he **kept** the horse).”

לֹא הָאָב שִׁלַּח אֶת־הַסּוּס

“The **father** did not send the horse (the **mother** did).”

לֹא אֶת־הַסּוּס שִׁלַּח הָאָב

“The father did not send the **horse** (he sent the **garment**).”

- 7.10** Though the English translation is the same in each case, the Hebrew sentences are logically different, as can be seen from the element of contrast within the parentheses.

Vocabulary

name, reputation	שֵׁם	404	sacrifice	זָבַח (זֹבַח)	496
seek, inquire	דָּרַשׁ	74	heart, mind	לֵב / לִבָּב	390
sacrifice, slaughter	זָבַח	77	altar	מִזְבֵּחַ	426
know, care about	יָדַע	7	judgment, decision	מִשְׁפָּט	429
sit, dwell, inhabit	יָשַׁב	10	people	עַם	398

Notes:

- The plurals of לֵב and לִבָּב are לְבוֹת and לְבָבוֹת respectively.
- For *patach* (◡) under the *chet* (ח) in מִזְבֵּחַ, see p. 17 n. 3.
- The plural of מִזְבֵּחַ (*ms*) is מִזְבְּחוֹת.

Practice

Focusing On New Material

A. Focus on the subject. Translate the following Hebrew sentences.

	1.	זָכַר
1. He remembered.	2.	זָכַר הָאִישׁ
2. The man remembered.	3.	אָנִי זָכַרְתִּי
3. I remembered.	4.	זָכְרָהּ
4. She remembered.	5.	זָכְרָה הָאִשָּׁה
5. The woman remembered.	6.	זָכְרָתָם
6. You (<i>mp</i>) remembered.	7.	זָכְרוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים
7. The men remembered.	8.	זָכְרוּ הַנְּשִׁים
8. The women remembered.	9.	בָּטַח הַבֵּן
9. The son trusted.	10.	בָּטְחָה הַבֵּת
10. The daughter trusted.	11.	אָתָּה בָּטַחְתָּ
11. You (<i>ms</i>) trusted.	12.	אֶתְּךָ בָּטַחְתָּן
12. You (<i>fp</i>) trusted.	13.	בָּטַחְנוּ
13. We trusted.	14.	הֵלֵךְ הַנְּבִיא

14. The prophet walked.	15. הם הִלְכוּ
15. They walked.	

B. Focus on the direct object. Translate the following Hebrew sentences, paying attention to the indefinite direct object and the definite direct object.

	1. לָקַח סוּס
1. He took a horse.	2. לָקַח אֶת הַסּוּס
2. He took the horse.	3. לָקַח אֶת־הַסּוּס
3. He took the horse.	4. שָׁלַח אֶת־הַנֶּעֶר
4. He sent the boy.	5. שָׁלַח אֶת־הַכֹּהֵן
5. He sent the priest.	6. שָׁמַע דְּבָר
6. He heard a word.	7. שָׁמַע אֶת הַדְּבָר
7. He heard the word.	8. שָׁמַע אֶת־הַמֶּלֶךְ
8. He heard the king.	

C. Focus on word order. Translate the following Hebrew sentences, paying attention to the element in the sentence being emphasized.

	1. שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־הַנְּבִיא
1. The king sent the prophet.	2. הַמֶּלֶךְ שָׁלַח אֶת־הַנְּבִיא
2. The king (not the priest) sent the prophet.	3. אֶת־הַנְּבִיא שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ
3. The king sent the prophet (not the priest).	4. אֲנִי שָׁמַרְתִּי אֶת־הָאָרֶץ
4. I (not anyone else) guarded the land.	5. אֶת־הָאָרֶץ שָׁמַרְנוּ
5. We guarded the land (not the city).	6. שָׁמַרְתֶּם אֶת הָעִיר
6. You (<i>mp</i>) guarded the city.	7. הִכְהֵן שֹׁפֵט אֶת־הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה
7. The priest (not the king) judged the family.	8. אֶת־הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה שֹׁפֵט הִכְהֵן
8. The priest judged the family (not the nation).	

D. Focus on the negative. Translate the following Hebrew sentences, paying attention to the element that is negated.

	1.	נתן הנער את־הבגד
1. The boy gave the garment.	2.	לא נתן הנער את־הבגד
2. The boy did not give the garment (he kept it).	3.	לא הנער נתן את־הבגד
3. The boy did not give the garment (the girl did).	4.	לא את־הבגד נתן הנער
4. The boy did not give the garment (he gave the shoes).		

Reviewing Previous Lessons

E. Focus on parsing. Parse the following Hebrew verbs.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. נתנה						
2. כתבו						
3. שמרתם						
4. שפטנו						
5. אכלת						
6. זכרתי						
7. כבד						

F. Focus on the class of the vowels. Review the vertical columns on the chart on p. 8 before doing this exercise.

- Circle the “a” vowels: אַ אָ וַ אֲ אִ אֵ יֵ אֹ אֻ וֹ אִּ אֵּ
- Circle the “i” vowels: יֵ יִ אִּ אֵּ אִ אֵ וִ אֲ אִּ אֵּ
- Circle the “u” vowels: אִּ אֵּ וִ אֲ אִּ אֵּ אִ אֵ וֹ אִּ אֵּ

G. Focus on the length of the vowels. Review the horizontal rows on the chart on p. 8 before doing this exercise.

- Circle the long vowels: אִּ אֵּ וִ אֲ אִּ אֵּ יֵ אֹ אֻ וֹ אִּ אֵּ
- Circle the medium vowels: אִ אֵ וִ אֲ אִּ אֵּ וִ אֲ אִּ אֵּ

3. Circle the short vowels: ו
4. Circle the very short vowels:

Putting It All Together

H. Translate the following Hebrew sentences.

	1.	זָכַר הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־הַמְּלָכוּת
1. The king remembered the kingdom.	2.	לָקַחְתִּי נֶעֱר
2. I took a boy.	3.	הִלְכָה הָאֵם
3. The mother walked.	4.	שָׁלַחַו הָאֱלִים אֶת הַנְּבִיא
4. The gods sent the prophet.	5.	שָׁמַע כֹּהֵן דְּבַר
5. A priest heard a word.	6.	לָקַחְתָּם אֶת־הַסּוּסוֹת
6. You (mp) took the mares.		

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

I. The following are from Genesis 1:1, 4, 27.

1. בְּרֵאשִׁית בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת הָאָרֶץ

4. וַיֵּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הָאוֹר כִּי־טוֹב

27. וַיְבָרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הָאָדָם בְּצַלְמוֹ

1. Read the texts out loud, focusing on pronunciation.
2. Read the texts out loud and underline all definite direct objects.
3. Read the text out loud and circle all of the vocabulary learned to date.

THE NOUN: VOWEL CHANGES

More about Syllables

- 8.1** In Lesson 3, you learned four characteristics of Hebrew syllables:
- ▶ A syllable may not begin with a vowel.
 - ▶ There are open syllables, for example, ψ , made up of a consonant + a vowel.
 - ▶ There are closed syllables, for example, $\psi\lambda$, made up of a consonant + a vowel + a consonant.
 - ▶ The last syllable is usually the accented syllable.
- 8.2** Syllables can also be defined in relation to the accent:
- ▶ A “tonic” syllable is accented.
 - ▶ A “pretonic” syllable is one syllable before the accent.
 - ▶ A “propretonic” syllable is two syllables before the accent.

Tonic	Pretonic	Propretonic	
רִים	בִּ	דִּ	דְּבָרִים

More about Vowels

Syllables in Which Various Vowels Occur

- 8.3 Long vowels** occur in
- ▶ an open syllable, for example, *cholem-vav* (וֹ) in עוֹלָם
 - ▶ a closed accented syllable, for example, *cholem-vav* (וֹ) in אָחוּת
- 8.4 Medium vowels** occur in
- ▶ a pretonic open syllable, for example, the first *qamets* (ֶ) in דְּבָר
 - ▶ a closed accented syllable, for example, the second (ֶ) in דְּבָר

8.5 Short vowels occur in

- ▶ open accented syllables, for example, the first *patach* (◌) in נַעַר (נַעֲרָה)
- ▶ closed syllables, for example, the second *patach* (◌) in נַעַר

A closed unaccented syllable usually has a short vowel.

8.6 Very short vowels occur in

- ▶ open propretonic syllables in nouns and verbs, for example, דְּבָרִים and קְטִלָּהֶם
- ▶ open pretonic syllables in verbs, for example, קְטַלָּה

Vowels That Do Not Reduce to Sheva**8.7** There are two kinds of vowels that will not reduce to *sheva*:

- ▶ long vowels
- ▶ vowels in closed syllables

Vowels That Reduce to Sheva**8.8** In nouns

- ▶ The vowels *qamets* (◌) and *tsere* (◌) in open propretonic syllables:

דְּבָרִים	דְּבַר
לְבָבוֹת	לְבַב

- ▶ The vowel *tsere* (◌) in an open pretonic syllable, if no reduction occurs in the propretonic syllable:

זוֹכְרִים	זוֹכֵר
-----------	--------

Cholem-vav (◌), being long, cannot reduce.

מְזַבְּחוֹת	מְזַבֵּחַ
-------------	-----------

Chireq (◌), being in a closed syllable, cannot reduce.

8.9 In verbs

- ▶ Short and medium vowels in the syllable before a vocalic suffix, that is, one that begins with a vowel:

קְטַלָּה	קְטַל
כָּבְדוּ	כָּבַד

- ▶ Medium vowels in an open propretonic syllable:

קְטִלָּהֶם	קְטַל
------------	-------

Putting the Rules to Work for Nouns

8.10 Various suffixes can be added to nouns. You have learned the suffixes for *mp* (םיַ), *fs* (הַ), and *fp* (וַ).

8.11 Because the various vowels can occur only in particular kinds of syllables and because the accent is usually on the last syllable, when a suffix is added to a noun, the preceding syllables may change in character—for example, from an open pretonic to an open propretonic syllable. As a result, adding a suffix may produce changes in the vowels.

8.12 You will be better equipped to read the Hebrew Bible if you understand some of the dynamics of vowel changes in nouns.

8.13 When a suffix is added to a noun, **first** there is an attempt to **reduce the vowel in the propretonic syllable to sheva**.

- Sometimes the vowel in the propretonic syllable will not reduce because it is a long vowel.

עוֹלָמִים עוֹלָם

- Sometimes the vowel in the propretonic syllable will not reduce because it is in a closed syllable.

מִשְׁפָּטִים מִשְׁפָּט

- If the vowel is *qamets* (ׁ) or *tsere* (׃), it will reduce to *sheva* (ׁ).

דְּבָרִים דְּבַר
לְבָבוֹת לְבַב

8.14 If no vowel reduction can take place in the propretonic syllable, there is an attempt to **reduce the vowel in the pretonic syllable**.

- Only if this vowel is *tsere* (׃) will it reduce in this situation.

מִשְׁפָּטִים מִשְׁפָּט
מִזְבְּחוֹת מִזְבֵּחַ

Segolate Nouns

8.15 There is a special group of nouns in Hebrew called “segolate nouns.” These nouns have several characteristics in common.

- The accent is on the next to the last syllable.
- The typical vowels are *segol* + *segol* (ׁׁ) in the singular form; this is why they are called segolate nouns.

אַרְץ (אֶרֶץ)
 בְּגָד (בִּגְדָה)
 דֶּרֶךְ (דִּרְוֹךְ)
 מְלֶכֶךְ (מִלְכָּה)
 נֶפֶשׁ (נִפְשָׁה)

- The expected *segol* (◌ֶ) may be a *patach* (◌ַ) if the following consonant is a guttural.

זֶבַח (זִבְחָה)
 נֶעַר (נִיעָר)

Guttural Characteristic #2: gutturals prefer “a” class vowels. Because the guttural sounds were originally made in the throat and the “a” class vowels are made in the back of the mouth, it was easier to make a guttural sound if the preceding vowel was an “a” class vowel.

- 8.16** The plural form of all “segolate nouns has the same vowel pattern: *sheva* (◌ְ) under the first consonant and *qamets* (◌ֻ)

בְּגָדִים בְּגָד
 דְּרָכִים דְּרָךְ
 זְבָחִים זְבַח

- 8.17** If the first consonant is a guttural, the *sheva* (◌ְ) will become *chatef-patach* (◌ֲ).

אַרְצוֹת אֶרֶץ

Guttural Characteristic #3: gutturals rarely have vocal sheva under them, but prefer chatef-patach (◌ֲ) or, less frequently, chatef-segol (◌ֿ) or chatef-qamets (◌ֻ).

Unpredictable Vowel Changes

- 8.18** In some nouns the vowel pattern of the plural is unpredictably different from the vowel pattern of the singular. These are best memorized as encountered. Such nouns learned thus far are:

נָשִׁים	אִשָּׁה	אֲנָשִׁים	אִישׁ
בָּנוֹת	בַּת	בָּנִים	בֵּן
עָרִים	עִיר	בָּתִּים	בַּיִת
		יָמִים	יוֹם

Vocabulary

before	לְפָנַי	923	to, for the sake of	אֵל	883
from	מִן	931	in, at, with	בְּ	890
on, on account of	עַל	941	within	בְּתוֹךְ	899
with	עִם	943	like, as, according to	כְּ	908
under, beneath	תַּחַת (תַּחַת)	951	to, for	לְ	915

Note:

- The final vowel in לְפָנַי is pronounced the same as *tsere* (ֵ), *ey* as in *hey*, is long, and is called *tsere-yod*.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the accent. Circle the accented syllable.

1. אָדָם 2. יָשָׁב 3. מֶלֶךְ 4. מְלָכִים 5. הֶבֶן
6. כְּתָבוֹ 7. נִפְשׁ 8. זָבַח 9. עוֹלָם 10. נֶעַר

B. Focus on the syllable. Circle the closed syllables and underline the open syllables.

1. אָדָם 2. מְלָכוֹת 3. מֶלֶךְ 4. מְלָכִים 5. עוֹלָם
6. מִשְׁפָּט 7. נִפְשׁ 8. מְלַחֵמָה 9. יוֹם 10. נֶעַר

C. Focus on vowel changes in the plural. Match the plural form of the right column with the corresponding singular form in the left column.

- | | | | | |
|---------|---|-------|--------------|----|
| דָּבָר | a | _____ | נְעָרִים | 1. |
| לֵבָב | b | _____ | מְלָכִים | 2. |
| נְבִיא | c | _____ | מִשְׁפָּטִים | 3. |
| עוֹלָם | d | _____ | דְּבָרִים | 4. |
| דְּרֹךְ | e | _____ | זְבָחִים | 5. |

מִלֶּךְ .f	_____	לְכָבוֹת .6
נֶפֶשׁ .g	_____	דְּרָכִים .7
נֶעַר .h	_____	נְבִיאִים .8
מִשְׁפָּט .i	_____	אֲרָצוֹת .9
זָבַח .j	_____	עוֹלָמִים .10
מִזְבֵּחַ .k	_____	נִפְשׁוֹת .11
אֲרָץ .l	_____	מִזְבְּחוֹת .12

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כָּבַד						
2. הִלְכֹתִי						
3. יִשְׁבֶּתָּ						
4. לִקְחֹתֶם						
5. שָׁמְעוּ						
6. שָׁמְעָה						
7. אָכַלְנוּ						

Putting It All Together

E. Translate the following.

	1.	יֹשֵׁב הַכֹּהֵן
1. The priest sat.	2.	כָּבַד הַכֹּהֵן
2. The priest is heavy (stative-present)	3.	יָדַע אֶת־הַמִּשְׁפָּט
3. He knew the judgment.	4.	יָדְעוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶת־הַמִּשְׁפָּטִים
4. The men knew the judgments.	5.	שָׁלַחְתִּי אֶת־הַנְּעָר
5. I sent the boy.	6.	שָׁלְחוּ הַנְּבִיאִים אֶת־הַנְּעָרִים
6. The prophets sent the boys.	7.	זָבַחוּ אֶת הַזְּבָחִים

7. They sacrificed the sacrifices.	8. שָׁמַע הָאִישׁ דְּבָר
8. The man heard a word.	9. שָׁמַעְנוּ אֶת־הַדְּבָרִים
9. We heard the words.	10. זָכַרְתָּ אֶת הַיּוֹם
10. You remembered the day.	11. זָכְרָה הָאִשָּׁה אֶת־הָעִיר
11. The woman remembered the city.	12. לָקְחוּ הַמְּלָכִים עִיר
12. The kings seized a city.	13. שָׁמְעָה הָאֵם אֶת־הַשֵּׁם
13. The mother heard the name.	14. אֶת־הַמְּלַחְמוֹת שָׁמְעוּ הַמְּשֻׁפָּחוֹת
14. The families heard the battles (not the animals).	15. אֶת הַמְּלָכוֹת יָדַעְתָּם
15. You knew the kingdom.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

F. The following is 1 Kings 1:11.

וַיֹּאמֶר נָתָן אֶל בַּת שֶׁבַע אִם שָׁלְמָה לְאֹמֶר
הֲלוֹא שָׁמְעָתָּ כִּי מֶלֶךְ אֲדֹנָיְהוּ בֶן חַגִּית
וְאֲדֹנָיְנִי דָוִד לֹא יָדַע

1. Read the text out loud and circle all vocabulary and verb forms learned to date.
2. Read the text out loud and underline the following names: Nathan, Bathsheba, and David.
3. If מֶלֶךְ means “king,” what would מְלֶכֶךְ mean (in the middle of line two)?
4. Can you translate the last three words?

9

PREPOSITIONS AND VAV CONJUNCTION

Prepositions

9.1 A preposition is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show the relation of the noun or pronoun to another part of the sentence, for example, “He walked *to* the city,” or “He walked *on* the land.”

9.2 Hebrew prepositions are used like English prepositions.

“He walked *to* the city.” הָלַךְ אֶל הָעִיר

“He walked *on* the land.” הָלַךְ עַל הָאָרֶץ

9.3 Hebrew has two kinds of prepositions: *independent* and *inseparable*.

Independent Prepositions

9.4 Independent prepositions are independent words, like English prepositions. The following are examples of independent prepositions.

“He sat *within* the house.” יָשַׁב בְּתוֹךְ הַבַּיִת

“He sat *before* the altar.” יָשַׁב לְפָנֵי הַמִּזְבֵּחַ

“He walked *from* the city.” הָלַךְ מִן הָעִיר

“He walked *with* the woman.” הָלַךְ עִם הָאִשָּׁה

9.5 The prepositions אֶל and עַל are almost always written with *maqqef*.

“He walked *to* the city.” הָלַךְ אֶל-הָעִיר

“He walked *on* the land.” הָלַךְ עַל-הָאָרֶץ

Inseparable Prepositions

9.6 Inseparable prepositions are not independent words but are joined to the word they govern. There are three inseparable prepositions in Hebrew: כִּי (“in,” “at,” “with”), כְּ (“like,” “as,” “according to”), and לְ (“to,” “for”).

- 9.7** The regular vowel of the inseparable preposition is *sheva* (◌◌).
- | | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| “in a battle” | בְּמִלְחָמָה |
| “like a battle” | כְּמִלְחָמָה |
| “to a battle” | לְמִלְחָמָה |
- 9.8** If a word begins with a *sheva* (◌◌), the vowel will be *chireq* (◌◌◌).
- | | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| “with prophets” | בְּנְבִיאִים |
| “like prophets” | כְּנְבִיאִים |
| “to prophets” | לְנְבִיאִים |
- 9.9** If a word begins with *chatef-patach* (◌◌◌), *chatef-segol* (◌◌◌◌), or *chatef-qamets* (◌◌◌◌◌), the vowel will be the corresponding short vowel.
- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| “in lands” | בְּאַרְצוֹת |
| “in truth” | בְּאֵמֶת |
| “in sickness” | בְּחֵלִי |
- 9.10** Sometimes, if a word begins with *chatef-segol* (◌◌◌◌) under an א, the vowel under the א will drop out and the vowel under the preposition will be *tsere* (◌◌◌).
- | | |
|----------|------------|
| “to God” | לְאֱלֹהִים |
|----------|------------|
- 9.11** When an inseparable preposition is added to a definite noun, the ה of the definite article is replaced by the consonantal element of the preposition.
- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------|----------|
| “in the day” | בְּיוֹם | הַיּוֹם |
| “like the mother” | כְּאִמָּה | הָאִמָּה |
| “to the hills” | לְהָרִים | הַהָרִים |

The Preposition מִן

- 9.12** The preposition מִן is treated sometimes as independent and sometimes as inseparable.
- ▶ Before definite nouns, מִן is usually independent and joined with *maqfef*.

“from the city”	מִן־הָעִיר
-----------------	------------
 - ▶ Before indefinite nouns, מִן is usually inseparable. The ך is *assimilated* to the following consonant, that is, the ך begins to sound like the following consonant, as in *irregular* from **inregular*, then the ך is written like the following consonant and is indicated with a strong *dagesh*.

“from a sacrifice”	מִזְבֵּחַ	<	מִזְבֹּחַ	<	מִזְבָּחַ
“from a hand”	מִיָּד	<	מִיַּד	<	מִיָּדָה
“from a name”	מִשֵּׁם	<	מִשְׁשֵׁם	<	מִשְׁשָׁם

The assimilation of ך occurs frequently in Hebrew. Occurrences in other contexts will be pointed out as they are encountered.

- Before indefinite nouns beginning with a guttural or *resh*, the ך is dropped and not indicated by strong *dagesh*, since gutturals do not take *dagesh* (see Guttural Characteristic #1, p. 15). The expected *chireq* (◌ֿ) is lengthened to *tsere* (◌ִ) to compensate for not doubling the following consonant (see “compensatory lengthening,” p. 25).

“from a father”	מִאָּב	<	מִאֲבָב	<	מִאָּבָה
“from a mother”	מִאָּם	<	מִאֲמָם	<	מִאָּמָה
“from a people”	מִעַם	<	מִעֵעַם	<	מִעַםָה

Vav Conjunction

- 9.13** A “conjunction” is a word that joins two parts of a sentence. Hebrew, like English, has two kinds of conjunctions: *coordinating* and *subordinating*. Subordinating conjunctions will be learned in future lessons. The coordinating conjunction in Hebrew is *vav* (ו).

Form of Vav Conjunction

- 9.14** The *vav* conjunction is inseparable and usually written with a *sheva* (◌ֿ).

“and a heart”	וְלֵב
“and a soul”	וְנֶפֶשׁ
“and a people”	וְעַם

- 9.15** Before a word beginning with ב, מ, or פ, the form is וּ. (A *mnemonic* is *bump*.)

“and a house”	וּבַיִת
“and a judgment”	וּמִשְׁפָּט
“and an entrance”	וּפֶתַח

- 9.16** Before a word beginning with *chatef-patach* (◌ֿ), *chatef-segol* (◌ֿֿ), or *chatef-qamets* (◌ֿֿֿ), the vowel is the corresponding short vowel.

“and lands”	וְאֶרְצוֹת
“and truth”	וְאֵמֶת
“and sickness”	וְחָלִי

Use of Vav Conjunction

- 9.17** *Vav* is used to join various parts of a sentence. Here are a few examples.

- *Vav* can be used to join two subjects.

הָלְכוּ הָאִישׁ וְהָאִשָּׁה

“The man and the woman walked.”

שָׁפְטוּ הַמֶּלֶךְ וְהַכֹּהֵן

“The king and the priest judged.”

- *Vav* can be used to join two direct objects.

שָׁלַח אֶת־הַנְּבִיא וְאֶת־הַכֹּהֵן

“He sent the prophet and the priest.”

שָׁמַר אֶת־הַנְּבִיא וְאֶת־הַכֹּהֵן

“He guarded the prophet and the priest.”

- *Vav* can be used to join verbs, but this will be dealt with in a future lesson.

Vocabulary

unclean, impure	טָמֵא	627	large, great	גָּדוֹל	415
straight, right	יָשָׁר	512	alive, living	חַי ¹	384
holy, sacred	קָדוֹשׁ	549	wise, skillful	חָכָם	500
much, great, many	רַב	439	clean, pure	טָהוֹר	626
guilty, wicked	רָשָׁע	483	good, pleasing	טוֹב	385

1. For the pronunciation of the sequence יֿ◌, see the boxed note at the bottom of p. 70.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on prepositions. Translate the following prepositional phrases.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. אֶל-מִזְבֵּחַ | 2. בְּתוֹךְ מִזְבֵּחַ | 3. עַל-מִזְבֵּחַ | 4. לִפְנֵי מִזְבֵּחַ |
| 5. תַּחַת מִזְבֵּחַ | 6. עִם מִזְבֵּחַ | 7. בְּמִזְבֵּחַ | 8. בְּמִזְבֵּחַ |
| 9. לְמִזְבֵּחַ | 10. לְמִזְבֵּחַ | 11. בְּמִזְבֵּחַ | 12. בְּמִזְבֵּחַ |
| 13. מִן-הַמִּזְבֵּחַ | 14. מִמִּזְבֵּחַ | 15. מֵעִיר | 16. בְּעִיר |
| 17. לְעִיר | 18. לְעִיר | 19. בְּאֶרֶץ | 20. בְּאֶרֶץ |

B. Focus on vav conjunction. Translate the following.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. אַתָּה וְהוּא | 2. מִזְבֵּחַ וְזִבְחַ | 3. כֹּהֵן וְנָבִיא | 4. לֵב וְנֶפֶשׁ |
| 5. עִיר וּבֵית | 6. כֹּהֵן וּמֶלֶךְ | 7. בֵּן וּבַת | 8. הֵם וְאַנְחָנִי |

C. Focus on prepositions and vav conjunction. Translate the following.

	1.	עַל-הַדֶּרֶךְ וְאֶל-הָעִיר
1. On the road and to the city.	2.	עִם הַנָּבִיא וְלִפְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ
2. With the prophet and before the king.	3.	בְּתוֹךְ הַמְּלָכוֹת וְלִמְלֶכֶךְ
3. Within the kingdom and to/for the king.	4.	מֵעִיר וּבֵית
4. From a city and a house.	5.	בְּבֵן וּבְבַת
5. With a son and with a daughter.	6.	בְּבֵן וּבְבַת
6. With the son and with the daughter.	7.	לְאָדָם וְלְאֵל
7. To the man and to the god.	8.	כְּאִישׁ וְכַאֲשֶׁה
8. Like a man and like the woman.		

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on gender. Read the following Hebrew words; circle the masculine words and underline the feminine words.

1. סוּס סוּסָה סוּסִים סוּסוֹת בְּגָד אַחוֹת מְלַחְמָה מְשַׁפְּחָה מְשַׁפֵּט

2. אִם אַרְצוֹת אֶרֶץ זָבַח נָעַר נְפֹשׁוֹת נָפֶשׁ אִשָּׁה נָשִׁים בֵּית

E. Focus on number. Read the following Hebrew words; circle the singular words and underline the plural words.

1. סוּס סוּסָה סוּסִים סוּסוֹת בְּגָדִים אַחוֹת מְלַחְמוֹת אָבוֹת עוֹלָם

2. אַתֶּם אֵתָּה אֵת הֵם הִנֵּה מְלָכוֹת מְשַׁפְּטִים כֹּהֵן יוֹם אַרְצוֹת שָׁם

F. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. זָבַחוּ						
2. שִׁפְטָנוּ						
3. הִלְכָתְךָ						
4. כָּבַדְתִּי						
5. זָכְרָה						
6. כָּתַבְתֶּם						

Putting It All Together

G. Translate the following.

	1. הִלְכְתִי עִם הַכֹּהֵן אֶל־הַמִּזְבֵּחַ
1. I walked with the priest to the altar.	2. נִתְּנָה הָאֵם אֶת־הַבְּגָד לַבַּת
2. The mother gave the garment to the daughter.	3. שָׁמְעוּ אֶת־הַמֶּלֶךְ וְאֶת־הַנָּבִיא
3. They heard the king and the prophet.	4. שָׁמְעוּ הַמֶּלֶךְ וְהַנָּבִיא אֶת־הַדְּבָרִים
4. The king and the prophet heard the words.	5. שָׁלַחְתֶּם אֶת־הַכֹּהֵן וְאֶת־הַזָּבַח לְמִלְחָמָה

5. You (<i>mp</i>) sent the priest and the sacrifice to the battle.	6. יִשְׁבְּנוּ עִם הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה בְּאַרְץ וּבְעִיר
6. We dwelled with the family in the land and in the city.	7. שָׁמְרוּ הָאָב וְהָאֵם אֶת־הַבֵּן וְאֶת־הַבִּת עַל־הַדֶּרֶךְ
7. The father and the mother guarded the son and the daughter on the journey.	8. לֹא לָקַח הָעָם אֶת־הַמַּלְכוּת לְאֱלֹהִים
8. The people did not seize the kingdom for God.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

H. Translate the following verses from the Hebrew Bible.

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| Joshua 2:5 | 1. לֹא יָדַעְתִּי אֲנִי (where) הֵלְכוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים |
| Judges 21:22 | 2. לֹא לָקַחְנוּ אִישׁ |
| 1 Samuel 4:18 | 3. וְהוּא שָׁפַט אֶת־יִשְׂרָאֵל (Israel) |
| Jeremiah 34:17 | 4. אַתֶּם לֹא־שָׁמַעְתֶּם |

10

THE ADJECTIVE

Adjectives in Hebrew

10.1 An adjective is a word that describes a noun, for example, the *good* boy and the *nice* girl. Hebrew has relatively few adjectives.

Form of Adjectives

10.2 Adjectives are marked for gender and number, just like nouns. The following chart should be memorized.

	Plural	Singular
Masculine	טוֹבִים	טוֹב
Feminine	טוֹבוֹת	טוֹבָה

10.3 As with nouns, when gender and number endings are added to adjectives, the nature of the syllables may change, resulting in changes in the vowels. The same rules learned in Lesson 8 for vowel changes in the noun apply to adjectives. Here are some examples.

- Sometimes there will be no change.

טוֹבִים טוֹב

Cholem-vav (וּ), being long, cannot reduce.

- The vowel *qamets* (ֻ) will reduce to *sheva* (ֿ) in an open propretonic syllable.

גְּדוּלִים גְּדוּל
טְמָאָה טְמָא
יְשָׁרוֹת יְשָׁר
חֲכָמִים חֲכָם

Chet (ח), being a guttural, takes chatef-patach (ֿ) instead of sheva (ֿ) (see Guttural Characteristic #3, p. 45).

Geminate Roots

10.4 Geminate roots are those in which the second and third consonants are identical, for example, לִבֵּב or רִכֵּב. The duplicate consonants will be dealt with in one of two ways in Hebrew: *gemination* or *reduplication*.

- In gemination only one consonant is written when there is no ending, for example, לֵב (“heart”); but when an ending is added, two consonants are written, indicated by a strong *dagesh*, for example, לְבָבוֹת (“hearts”).

The vowel changes from tsere (◡) to chireq (◡), because a closed unaccented syllable usually has a short vowel (see “Short vowels,” p. 43).

- In reduplication, both consonants are written and a vowel is placed in between, for example, לִבֵּבֵב. The vowel changes follow the typical rules, for example, לְבָבוֹתֵבֵב.

The vowel tsere (◡) reduces to sheva in an open propretonic syllable (see “Vowels That Reduce to Sheva,” p. 43).

10.5 The other nouns from geminate roots learned to this point are:

“mother(s)”	אֲמוֹת	אָם
“people(s)”	עַמִּים	עָם

Geminate nouns and adjectives are often recognizable in the ms form by the presence of a patach (◡) under the first of two consonants, for example, עָם, חָי, and רַב.

Adjectives from Geminate Roots

10.6 Adjectives from geminate roots manifest gemination, not reduplication.

רְבוֹת	רְבָה	רְבִים	רַב
חַיּוֹת	חַיָּה	חַיִּים	חַי

Use of Adjectives

10.7 Adjectives have three uses in Hebrew: *attributive*, *predicative*, and *substantive*.

10.8 An attributive adjective describes a noun, for example, the *good* boy.

- An attributive adjective must agree in gender, number, and definiteness, and follow the noun it describes.

“a good horse”	סוס טוֹב
“the good horse”	הַסּוּס הַטוֹב

“a good mare”	סוּסָה טוֹבָה
“the good mare”	הַסּוּסָה הַטּוֹבָה
“good horses”	סוּסִים טוֹבִים
“the good horses”	הַסּוּסִים הַטּוֹבִים
“good mares”	סוּסוֹת טוֹבוֹת
“the good mares”	הַסּוּסוֹת הַטּוֹבוֹת

An adjective will always agree with the true gender—not the apparent gender—of a noun. The noun אֶרֶץ looks ms but is actually fs, so “a good land” is אֶרֶץ טוֹבָה. The mp form of אָב is אָבוֹת, so “good fathers” is אָבוֹת טוֹבִים.

10.9 A predicate adjective serves as the predicate (the part of the sentence telling something about the subject) of a sentence, for example, the boy *is good*. As when an adjective is the predicate, a form of “to be” is supplied in an English translation.

- A predicate adjective must agree in gender and number with the subject but will not have the definite article and will tend to come before the noun it describes.

“The horse is good.”	טוֹב הַסּוּס
“The mare is good.”	טוֹבָה הַסּוּסָה
“The horses are good.”	טוֹבִים הַסּוּסִים
“The mares are good.”	טוֹבוֹת הַסּוּסוֹת

10.10 A substantive adjective is used as a noun. Context will indicate substantive use of this sort.

“a good man”	טוֹב
“a good woman”	טוֹבָה
“the good men”	הַטּוֹבִים
“the good women”	הַטּוֹבוֹת

Adjectives as Comparatives

10.11 To form a comparison in English, we add *-er* to an adjective, for example, *wise/wiser*. Hebrew expresses the comparative by using an adjective + noun/pronoun + מִן + noun/pronoun.

חָכָם הַמֶּלֶךְ מִן־הַכֹּהֵן

“The king is wiser than the priest.”

גְּדוּלָהּ אִם מִבֵּת

“A mother is bigger than a daughter.”

Adjectives and Vav Conjunction

10.12 Adjectives may be joined by *vav* conjunction to describe a single noun. The same rules of agreement apply.

נָבִיא גָדוֹל וְחָכָם

“a great and wise prophet”

הָעִמָּוִים הַטְּמֵאִים וְהָרָשָׁעִים

“the unclean and guilty peoples”

טָהוֹר וְקָדוֹשׁ הַכֹּהֵן

“The priest is clean and holy.”

Vocabulary

water, waters	מֵיִם (מַיִם)	392	other, another	אַחֵר	489
sky, heaven	שָׁמַיִם (שְׁמַיִם)	444	covenant	בְּרִית	457
cut	כָּרַת	44	old, elder	זָקֵן	497
rule, be king	מָלַךְ	47	firm, strong	חֲזָק	615
lie down	שָׁכַב	60	bread, food	לֶחֶם (לֶחֶם)	425

Note:

- The expression כָּרַת בְּרִית means “make a covenant.” At times, a *covenant* was made by *cutting* animals in two and having one of the parties walk between the pieces as a part of an oath (see Gen 15:9-21 and Jer 34:18-20).

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on attributive adjectives. Translate the following phrases.

1. מְלֶךְ גָּדוֹל .2. נְעָרִים רַבִּים .3. מְשֻׁפָּחָה טוֹבָה .4. נִפְשׁוֹת חַיִּוֹת
 5. הַדֶּרֶךְ הַיָּשָׁר .6. הַמְּלָחְמוֹת הַרְבוֹת .7. הָאָרֶץ הַטְּהוֹרָה .8. אֵם חַכְמָה
 9. מְשֻׁפָּט רָשָׁע .10. הַכְּהֻנִּים הַקְּדוּשִׁים .11. לֵב טְהוֹר .12. הָעָרִים הַטּוֹבוֹת

B. Focus on predicative adjectives. Translate the following sentences.

1. טָמֵא הַמְּזֻבָּח .2. חַכְמָה הַבַּת .3. רְבוֹת הַנְּשִׁים .4. קְדוּשִׁים הַזְּבָחִים
 5. הַנְּעָרִים רָשָׁעִים .6. טוֹבִים הַיָּמִים .7. חַי הַדְּבָר .8. גָּדוֹל הַבַּיִת

C. Focus on the difference between attributive and predicate adjectives. Read the following phrases and sentences and fill in the blanks for use of adjective (*a* for attributive and *p* for predicative) and for gender and number.

Use	Gender	Number	
a	f	s	1. הָאִשָּׁה הַטּוֹבָה
			2. יָשָׁר הָאָדָם
			3. הַמְּזֻבָּח הַטְּהוֹר
			4. הַבַּת הַטּוֹבָה
			5. טָמְאִים הָאֱלִים
			6. הָאֱלֹהִים הַחַיִּים
			7. גְּדוּלִים הַבְּגָדִים
			8. רָשָׁעַה הַמְּלָכוֹת
			9. לֵב חָכָם
			10. הָאָרְצוֹת הַרְבוֹת

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on vowel changes in the plural. Match the plural form of the right column with the corresponding singular form in the left column.

אִשָּׁה .a	_____	בָּגָדִים .1
לֵבָב .b	_____	אֱלִים .2
בֵּן .c	_____	עַמִּים .3
בָּגָד .d	_____	לְבוּשׁ .4
מִזְבֵּחַ .e	_____	לְכוּבוֹת .5
נָבִיא .f	_____	אֲנָשִׁים .6
עִיר .g	_____	בָּנִים .7
אֵל .h	_____	נְבִיאִים .8
לֵב .i	_____	מִזְבְּחוֹת .9
אֵם .j	_____	עָרִים .10
עַם .k	_____	אֲמוֹת .11
אִישׁ .l	_____	נָשִׁים .12

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. קָטְלָתֶם						
2. יִשְׁבְּתִי						
3. לְקַחְתָּ						
4. יִדְעָה						
5. הִלְכוּ						
6. זָכְרָנוּ						
7. דָּרַשְׁתָּ						
8. כָּבַד						

Putting It All Together**F.** Translate the following.

	1.	הָלְכוּ הָאִישׁ וְהָאִשָּׁה עַל-הַדֶּרֶךְ
1. The man and the woman walked on the road.	2.	שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ הַגָּדוֹל אֶת-הַנְּבִיא הַקָּדוֹשׁ אֶל-הָעִיר הָרָשָׁעָה
2. The great king sent the holy prophet to the wicked city.	3.	נָתַן הַכֹּהֵן אֶת-הַזְּבָחִים הַטְּהוּרִים לְפָנֵי הַמִּזְבֵּחַ
3. The priest put the clean sacrifices before the altar.	4.	חָכְם וְקָדוֹשׁ אַתָּה כְּאֱלֹהִים
4. You are wise and holy like God.	5.	יָשְׁבָה הַמְּשֻׁפָּחָה בְּעִיר הַגָּדוֹלָה וּבִבְיַת הַגָּדוֹל
5. The family lived in the large city and in the large house.	6.	לָקַחְתָּ אֶת-הַבֵּן וְאֶת-הַבַּת מִן-הַמְּלִחָמָה
6. You took the son and the daughter from the battle.	7.	טוֹב לֵב טְהוּר מִלֵּב טָמֵא
7. A pure heart is better than an impure heart.	8.	שָׁמַעְנוּ דְּבָרִים יְשָׁרִים מֵאָב
8. We heard right words from a father.		

Reading Your Hebrew Bible**G.** Translate the following lines from the Hebrew Bible.

Deuteronomy 2:10	1. עַם גָּדוֹל וְרַב
Joshua 24:19	2. אֱלֹהִים קְדוֹשִׁים הוּא
Exodus 18:17	3. לֹא-טוֹב הַדָּבָר
Jeremiah 10:10	4. הוּא אֱלֹהִים חַיִּים

11

THE VERB: QAL IMPERFECT

Form of the Qal Imperfect

11.1 The base form of the qal imperfect is קָטַל. The particular forms are made by adding prefixes and suffixes to this base. The prefixes and suffixes are printed in color in order to highlight them. The prefixes are related to the personal pronouns, except in the 3rd person forms.

	Verb	Pronoun	
יִקְטַל	יִקְטַל		3ms
תִּקְטַל	תִּקְטַל		3fs
תִּקְטַלְהוּ	תִּקְטַלְהוּ	אֲתָהּ	2ms
תִּקְטַלְיָהּ	תִּקְטַלְיָהּ	אַתְּ	2fs
אֶקְטַלְךָ	אֶקְטַלְךָ	אֲנִי / אַנְכִי	1cs
יִקְטַלוּ	יִקְטַלוּ		3mp
תִּקְטַלְנָהּ	תִּקְטַלְנָהּ		3fp
תִּקְטַלוּ	תִּקְטַלוּ	אַתֶּם	2mp
תִּקְטַלְנָהּ	תִּקְטַלְנָהּ	אַתֶּן	2fp
נִקְטַל	נִקְטַל	אֲנֵהוּ	1cp

11.2 In the 2fs, 3mp, and 2mp forms, the theme vowel, *cholem* (◌) in this case, reduces to *sheva* (◌) before the vocalic suffix (see “In verbs,” p. 43).

11.3 The accent is on the next to the last syllable in the 3fp and 2fp forms: תִּקְטַלְנָהּ. Memorize these forms with the accent.

11.4 The theme vowel of action verbs typically is *cholem* (◌), for example, יִשְׁמַר (“he will guard”). The theme vowel of stative verbs typically is *patach* (◌), for example, יִכָּבֵד (“he will be heavy”). This distinction is not maintained consistently. For example, action verbs with a guttural

as the third root letter will often have *patach* (◡) as the theme vowel, for example, יִשְׁלַח (“he will send”) (see Guttural Characteristic #2, p. 45).

The imperfect conjugation will be abbreviated impf.

Use of the Qal Imperfect

11.5 The imperfect conjugation is used in a variety of ways. Only two will be introduced at this point: “future imperfect” and “present progressive imperfect.”

- The future imperfect is for expressing a **future situation**, best translated into English with a future tense.

“He will seek.” יִדְרֹשׁ

“He will write.” יִכְתֹּב

“He will rule.” יִמְלֹךְ

- The present progressive imperfect is for expressing an **ongoing situation in the present**, best translated into English with a present progressive tense.

“He is seeking.” יִדְרֹשׁ

“He is writing.” יִכְתֹּב

“He is ruling.” יִמְלֹךְ

11.6 Because the stative perfect expresses the present, the stative imperfect typically expresses the future, not the present.

11.7 The context will determine whether the use of an imperfect is future or present progressive. For the exercises, use the future.

Vocabulary

teaching, law	תּוֹרָה	486	tent, dwelling	אֹהֶל (אֹהֶל)	407
say	אָמַר	2	book, document	סֵפֶר (סֵפֶר)	534
go across, transgress	עָבַר	15	holiness	קִדְּשׁ (קִדְּשׁ)	401
stand	עָמַד	17	voice, sound	קוֹל	400
visit, take care of	פָּקַד	57	year	שָׁנָה	405

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of the imperfect. Parse the following imperfect verbs.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יִקְטֹל						
2. יִכְתְּבוּ						
3. אֲשַׁפֵּט						
4. תִּשְׁלַח						
5. תִּשְׁמְרוּ						
6. תִּשְׁמְעֵי						
7. נִבְטַח						
8. תִּקְטְלֶנָּה						

B. Focus on the use of the imperfect. Translate the following imperfect forms as future imperfects.

1. יִזְכֹּר 2. אֲמַלֵּךְ 3. תִּשְׁמְרוּ 4. נִשְׁפֹּט 5. תִּבְטַח
 6. תִּדְרְשֵׁי 7. יִשְׁכְּבוּ 8. תִּשְׁמַעְנָה 9. יִכְרֹת 10. יִכְתְּבוּ
 11. יִזְבַּח 12. נִמְלֹךְ 13. אֲבַטַח 14. יִשְׁמְרוּ 15. תִּשְׁמַע

C. Translate the following.

	1. יִשְׁפֹּט הַנְּבִיא אֶת־הָעִיר
1. The prophet will judge the city.	2. יִשְׁפֹּטוּ הַנְּבִיאִים אֶת־הָעָרִים
2. The prophets will judge the cities.	3. אֲדַרֵּשׁ אֶת־הָאֱלֹהִים
3. I will seek God.	4. תִּשְׁמַע דְּבָרִים
4. She/you (ms) will hear words.	5. נִשְׁמַע אֶת־הַדְּבָרִים

5. We will listen to the elders.	6. יִשְׁלַח הָאִישׁ אֶת־הַנֶּעֶר אֶל־הַכֹּהֵן
6. The man will send the boy to the priest.	7. תִּמְלֹךְ עַל־הַמְּלָכוֹת לְעוֹלָם
7. She/You (ms) will reign over the kingdom forever.	8. יִבְטְחוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים בְּאֱלֹהִים לְעוֹלָם
8. The men will trust in God forever.	

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כָּרְתוּ						
2. שָׁכַבְתִּי						
3. מְלָכָה						
4. זָבַחְנוּ						
5. יִדְעֶתֶם						
6. יִשְׁבֹּת						
7. דָּרְשָׁה						
8. כָּבַד						
9. בְּטַחְתָּן						

E. **Focus on the syllable.** Underline the closed syllables and circle the open proretonic syllables.

1. גְּדוֹל 2. מְלָכוֹת 3. קְדוּשָׁה 4. מְלָכִים 5. עוֹלָם
 6. חֲכָמִים 7. יְשׁוּרוֹת 8. רְשָׁעָה 9. טוֹבִים 10. נֶעֶר

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

	1.	שָׁפֵט אֱלֹהִים אֶת־הָעַמִּים הָרָשָׁעִים
1. God judged the wicked peoples.	2.	יִשְׁפֹּט הָאֱלֹהִים הַחַיִּים אֶת־הָעַמִּים הָרָשָׁעִים
2. The living God will judge the wicked peoples.	3.	תִּשְׁלַח הָאֵם אֶת־הַבֵּת עִם הַבֵּן
3. The mother will send the daughter with the son.	4.	נִזְכֹּר אֶת־הָאָב הַחָכָם לְעוֹלָם
4. We will remember the wise father forever.	5.	הָלְכוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים וְהַנְּעָרִים אֶל־הַמִּלְחָמָה הַגְּדוֹלָה
5. The men and the boys went to the great battle.	6.	יָשְׁבָה הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה בְּבֵית
6. The family lived in the house.	7.	טוֹב הַזֵּבַח הַטהוֹר מִן־הַזֵּבַח הַטָּמֵא
7. The clean sacrifice is better than the unclean sacrifice.	8.	יִשְׁכְּבוּ הַכֹּהֲנִים וְהַנְּבִיאִים לְפָנָי הַמִּזְבֵּחַ
8. The priests and the prophets will lie down in front of the altar.		

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following lines from the Hebrew Bible.

Psalm 146:10	1. יְמִלֵךְ יְהוָה לְעוֹלָם
Ecclesiastes 3:17	2. וְאֶת־הָרָשָׁע יִשְׁפֹּט
Deuteronomy 17:1	3. לֹא תִזְבַּח לַיהוָה

12

CONSTRUCT RELATIONSHIP: SINGULAR

Construct and Absolute States

- 12.1** Hebrew nouns occur in one of two states: *construct* and *absolute*.
- The *absolute* state is the “regular” form of the noun, the form learned in the vocabulary.
 - The *construct* state is the form of the noun when it is in *construction* with another noun.

Use of the Construct State

- 12.2** Hebrew has no word equivalent to English “of.” “Of” is expressed in Hebrew by placing a noun in the construct state in front of a noun in the absolute state. The construct relationship can often be recognized by the presence of a *maqef* between the nouns.

“the horse *of* the king” סוּס־הַמֶּלֶךְ

“the soul *of* the prophet” נַפְשׁ־הַנְּבִיא

- 12.3** A noun in the construct state *never* has the definite article.

- If the last noun is definite, the noun in construct is also definite.

“*the* horse *of the* king” סוּס־הַמֶּלֶךְ

“*the* soul *of the* prophet” נַפְשׁ־הַנְּבִיא

Personal names are definite, so יוֹם־יְהוָה is translated “the day of the LORD.”

- If the last noun is not definite, the noun in construct is not definite.

“a horse of a king” סוּס־מֶלֶךְ

“a soul of a prophet” נַפְשׁ־נְבִיא

The construct relationship cannot be used to say “the horse of a king.” Instead, the preposition ל is used, for example, הַסּוּס לְמֶלֶךְ, “the horse belonging to a king” > “the horse of a king.” “The soul of a prophet” would be הַנְּפֶשׁ לְנָבִיא.

12.4 The English word “of” expresses a variety of relationships: for example, “the book of the student” = “the book *belonging to* the student”; “the throne of gold” = “the throne *made out of* gold”; “the mountain of holiness” = “the holy mountain”; “the love of the teacher” = either “the love the teacher has for students” or “the love students have for the teacher.” **The construct relationship also expresses a variety of relationships.** Two will be learned at this point: *possessive* and *adjectival*.

- Most frequently, **the construct relationship expresses possession.**

סוּס הַמֶּלֶךְ

“the horse of the king” = “the horse *belonging to* the king”

סֵפֶר הַכֹּהֵן

“the book of the priest” = “the book *belonging to* the priest”

- *Possession* is used rather loosely.

“the daughter of the mother” בַּת הָאִם

- Typically, such expressions are translated with apostrophe + s.

בַּת הָאִם

“the daughter of the mother” = “the mother’s daughter”

סֵפֶר הַכֹּהֵן

“the book of the priest” = “the priest’s book”

- Sometimes, **the construct relationship is adjectival.**

בְּגָד הַקֹּדֶשׁ

“the garment of the holiness” = “the holy garment”

שֵׁם-עוֹלָם

“a name of eternity” = “an eternal name”

Form of the Singular Construct State

Masculine Singular

12.5 Sometimes the construct state has the same form as the absolute state.

- In one-syllable nouns with a long vowel.

“the king’s horse” סוּם הַמֶּלֶךְ

“the family’s city” עִיר־הַמְשָׁפָחָה

“the day of the sacrifice” יוֹם הַזֶּבַח

- In one-syllable nouns with a short vowel.

“the mother’s daughter” בַּת־הָאִם

“the man’s life” חַי הָאִישׁ

“the people of God” עַם הָאֱלֹהִים

- In segolate nouns.

“the city’s king” מֶלֶךְ הָעִיר

“the holy way” דֶּרֶךְ־הַקֹּדֶשׁ

“the woman’s garment” בְּגָד הָאִשָּׁה

12.6 Sometimes the vowels change. Two nouns in construct are treated as one word, in terms of accent, with the accent on the second noun. Since there will often be no accent on the noun in construct, the vowels will change according to the rules learned previously.

- A medium vowel will often reduce to a short vowel in a final closed syllable, because the syllable is now closed and unaccented (see “Short vowels,” p. 43).

“the king’s son” בֶּן־הַמֶּלֶךְ בֵּן

“the king’s decision” מִשְׁפָּט הַמֶּלֶךְ מִשְׁפָּט

“the antiquity of the king” עוֹלָם־הַמֶּלֶךְ עוֹלָם

- In addition, a medium vowel will reduce to *sheva* (◌◌) in the first of two syllables, if the syllable is open.

“the king’s word” דְּבַר הַמֶּלֶךְ דְּבָר

“the king’s heart” לִב־הַמֶּלֶךְ לִב

- Nouns vocalized like בַּיִת (בַּיִת) have the construct form בַּיִת.

The sequence י◌ (pronounced “eye”) is neither a vowel + consonant nor a vowel with the yod (י) functioning as a vowel letter, as in י◌ (chireq-yod), but is a “diphthong.” A diphthong may only occur in an accented syllable. Since the construct form has no accent, the diphthong י◌ changes to the vowel י◌ (tsere-yod [see Vocabulary Note, p. 46]).

Feminine Singular

12.7 Feminine singular nouns ending in הָ often form the construct by replacing the הָ with תָ, accompanied by appropriate vowel changes.

“the law of the LORD”	תּוֹרַת יְהוָה	תּוֹרָה
“the year of the battle”	שְׁנַת הַמִּלְחָמָה	שָׁנָה

12.8 Feminine singular nouns beginning with a מַ prefix and ending with הָ often form the construct with segolization.

“the battle of the day”	מִלְחַמַּת הַיּוֹם	מִלְחָמָה
“the father’s family”	מִשְׁפַּחַת הָאָב	מִשְׁפָּחָה

The change to patach (ַ) is because of the guttural (see Guttural Characteristic #2, p. 45).

Vocabulary

slave, servant	עֶבֶד (עֶבְדָּר)	395	lord, master	אֲדוֹן	370
redeem, claim	גָּאַל	70	gold	זָהָב	418
be strong, courageous	חִזַּק	33	all, every, whole	כָּל	389
fall	נָפַל	52	money, silver	כֶּסֶף (כֶּסֶף)	424
serve, work, worship	עָבַד	55	place	מָקוֹם	428

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of the construct. Circle the words that are in a construct form that differs from the absolute form.

1. סוּס עִם נֶפֶשׁ דָּבָר בֶּן סֶפֶר נְבִיא עִיר תּוֹרַת סוּסַת
2. קוֹל לֵבב קִדְשׁ מִשְׁפָּט מִלְחָמַת יָד בֵּית מִלְכוּת שָׁם

B. Focus on the form of the construct. Match the construct form of the right-hand column with the corresponding absolute form of the left-hand column.

מִשְׁפָּחָה .a	_____	דְּבַר .1
לֵב .b	_____	שָׁנָה .2
שָׁנָה .c	_____	לֵבָב .3
יָד .d	_____	נְבִיא .4
מִשְׁפָּט .e	_____	לֵב .5
נְבִיא .f	_____	מִשְׁפַּחַת .6
דְּבַר .g	_____	בֵּן .7
תּוֹרָה .h	_____	מִשְׁפָּט .8
לֵבָב .i	_____	יָד .9
בֵּן .j	_____	תּוֹרַת .10

C. Focus on the use of the construct. Translate the following phrases and indicate whether the use is possession (*p*) or adjectival (*a*).

		1. לֵבָב הַנְּבִיא
the heart of the prophet	p	2. תּוֹרַת הַמֶּלֶךְ
the law of the king	p	3. בְּגָד־קֹדֶשׁ
the holy garment	p	4. דְּבַר הַנְּבִיא
the word of the prophet	p	5. נְבִיא הָאָרֶץ
the prophet of the land	p	6. זְבַח־הַיּוֹם
the daily sacrifice	p	7. יָד הַנֶּעֶר
the hand of the boy	p	8. מִשְׁפַּחַת הָאֵם
the family of the mother	p	9. מִלְחַמַּת־יְהוָה
the battle of the Lord	p	10. אִישׁ הָאֱלֹהִים
the man of God	p	

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on the difference between attributive and predicate adjectives. Read the following phrases and sentences and fill in the blanks for use of adjective (*a* for attributive and *p* for predicative) and for gender and number.

Use	Gender	Number	
			1. הַכְּהֲנִים הַקְּדוּשִׁים
			2. קְדוּשִׁים הַכְּהֲנִים
			3. יֵשֶׁר הַדֶּרֶךְ
			4. הַמְּזִבַּח הַטָּמֵא
			5. זְקֵנוֹת הַתּוֹרוֹת
			6. הָאֵם הַזְּקֵנָה
			7. הָעָרִים הַגְּדוּלוֹת
			8. טוֹבָה הָאָרֶץ
			9. הָאֲבוֹת הַחֲכָמִים
			10. רְשָׁעָה הַמְּשֻׁפָּתָה

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. אָפַקַד						
2. זָכַרְנוּ						
3. נִדְרַשׁ						
4. תִּכְתְּבֶנָה						
5. עֲמְדָה						
6. שָׁמְעוּ						
7. תִּכְרַת						
8. שִׁפְטֻתֶם						
9. מְלַכְתָּ						

Putting It All Together**F.** Translate the following.

	1. שלח המלך את ספר הנביא לפהן
1. The king sent the prophet's book to the priest.	2. יכתב נביא המלך ספרים בבית המלך
2. The king's prophet will write books in the king's palace.	3. ישמעו העמים הרשעים את קול־יהוה ביום־יהוה
3. The wicked peoples will hear the voice of the LORD in the day of the LORD.	4. עמדנו בתוך האנשים החכמים והנשים הטובות
4. We stood in the midst of the wise men and the good women.	5. תזכר אתה את־שם־הבן לעולם
5. You will remember the son's name forever.	6. חכמה האשה הזקנה מן־הנער
6. The old woman is wiser than the boy.	7. אדרש את־יהוה בלב טהור וטוב
7. I will seek the LORD with a pure and good heart.	8. ישבתם תחת השמים על דרך הקדש
8. You (mp) sat under the sky on the holy road.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible**G.** Translate the following lines from the Hebrew Bible.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| Genesis 21:17 | 1. שמע אלהים אל־קול הנער |
| Joshua 7:15 | 2. עבר ברית יהוה |
| Proverbs 21:1 | 3. לב־מלך ביד יהוה |
| 2 Chronicles 30:16 | 4. כתורת משה (Moses) איש־האלהים |

13

CONSTRUCT RELATIONSHIP: PLURAL

Form of the Plural Construct State

Masculine Plural

13.1 The absolute plural ending םִי־ is changed to י־ in the masculine plural construct.

“God of”	אֱלֹהֵי	אֱלֹהִים
“horses of”	סוּסֵי	סוּסִים
“people of”	עַמֵּי	עַמִּים

13.2 Because the accent shifts, appropriate vowel changes take place.

- Medium vowels in open syllables usually reduce to *sheva* (◌◌).

“sons of”	בְּנֵי	בָּנִים
“judgments of”	מִשְׁפָּטֵי	מִשְׁפָּטִים
“prophets of”	נְבִיאֵי	נְבִיאִים

- If the vowel reduction to *sheva* (◌◌) results in two successive vocal *shevas*, the first becomes *chireq* (◌◌◌) or *patach* (◌◌◌).

“words of”	דְּבָרֵי	דְּבָרִים
“elders of”	זְקֵנֵי	זְקֵנִים
“kings of”	מְלָכֵי	מְלָכִים
“men of”	אֲנָשֵׁי	אֲנָשִׁים

Feminine Plural

13.3 The plural construct ending is the same as the plural absolute ending, namely, ֹׁת־.

“mares of”	סוּסוֹת־
“voices of”	קוֹלוֹת־
“laws of”	תּוֹרוֹת־

13.4 Because the accent shifts, appropriate vowel changes take place.

- Medium vowels in open syllables usually reduce to *sheva* (◌◌).

“families of”	מְשִׁפְחוֹת	מִשְׁפָּחוֹת
“battles of”	מִלְחָמוֹת	מִלְחָמוֹת

- If the vowel reduction to *sheva* (◌◌) results in two successive vocal *shevas*, the first usually becomes *patach* (◌◌).

“lands of”	אֲרָצוֹת	אַרְצוֹת	אַרְצוֹת
“souls of”	נַפְשׁוֹת	נַפְשׁוֹת	נַפְשׁוֹת

Construct Chains

13.5 Two words in a construct relationship are called a “construct chain.” It is possible to have more than two words in a construct chain. Only the last word may have the definite article.

	דְּבָרֵי נְבִיאֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ
“the words of the prophets of the king”	
	בְּנֵי מִשְׁפָּחוֹת הָעִיר
“the sons of the families of the city”	

Agreement and the Construct State

Agreement and Verbs

13.6 When a construct chain is the subject of a sentence, the verb agrees with the noun in the construct state, because it is the primary noun, the others being qualifiers.

“The son of the king reigned.”	מֶלֶךְ בֶּן־הַמֶּלֶךְ
“The daughter of the king reigned.”	מְלִכָּה בַת־הַמֶּלֶךְ
“The sons of the king reigned.”	מְלָכֵי בְנֵי־הַמֶּלֶךְ

Agreement and Adjectives

13.7 Any part of a construct chain can be modified by an adjective. The adjective agrees with the part of the chain that it modifies. If the adjective is attributive, it follows the entire chain.

“the words of the good king”	דְּבָרֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ הַטוֹב
“the good words of the king”	דְּבָרֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ הַטוֹבִים
“The words of the king are good.”	טוֹבִים דְּבָרֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ

“All,” “Every,” and “the Whole” (כָּל)

13.8 The construct form of כָּל is כָּל־ (*gamets-chatuf*).

- In construction with a definite plural noun, כָּל־ is best translated “all of.”

“all of the words” כָּל־הַדְּבָרִים

“all of the kings” כָּל־הַמְּלָכִים

- In construction with an indefinite singular noun, כָּל־ is best translated “every.”

“every house” כָּל־בַּיִת

“every city” כָּל־עִיר

- In construction with a definite singular noun, כָּל־ is best translated “the whole.”

“the whole house” כָּל־הַבַּיִת

“the whole city” כָּל־הָעִיר

Vocabulary

create	בָּרָא	132	morning	בֹּקֶר (בֹּקֶר)	456
sin	חָטָא	34	new moon, month	חֹדֶשׁ (חֹדֶשׁ)	419
find	מָצָא	48	night	לַיְלָה (לַיְלָה)	466
lift, carry, forgive	נָשָׂא	13	evening	עָרֵב (עָרֵב)	540
call, read aloud	קָרָא	21	time	עֵת	436

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of the construct. Circle the words that are in construct form that is different from the absolute form.

1. סוּסִים עָמִי נִפְשׁוֹת דְּבָרִים בְּנֵי סִפְרֵי גְבִיאִים מִשְׁפָּחוֹת
2. קוֹלוֹת לְבָבוֹת דְּרָכֵי זְקֵנֵי מְלַחְמוֹת סוּסוֹת בְּגָדִים מְזַבְּחוֹת

B. Focus on the form of the construct. Match the construct form in the right column with the corresponding absolute form in the left column.

מקום .a	_____	דְּבָרִי .1
מִשְׁפָּחָה .b	_____	מְלָכֵי .2
זָבַח .c	_____	יְדוֹת .3
דֶּרֶךְ .d	_____	מְקוֹמוֹת .4
יָד .e	_____	זְבָחֵי .5
דָּבָר .f	_____	מִשְׁפָּחוֹת .6
מִלְחָמָה .g	_____	עַמֵּי .7
מִלְדָּה .h	_____	דְּרָכֵי .8
עַם .i	_____	מִלְחָמוֹת .9

C. Focus on agreement between adjectives and construct chains.

Translate the following phrases, paying attention to the correct noun modified by the adjective.

	1.	שְׁנַת הַמִּלְחָמוֹת הַטּוֹבָה
1. the good year of the battles	2.	שְׁנַת הַמִּלְחָמוֹת הַטּוֹבוֹת
2. the year of the good battles	3.	בְּנֵי־הַמֶּלֶךְ הַגָּדוֹל
3. the sons of the great king	4.	בְּנֵי־הַמֶּלֶךְ הַגָּדוֹלִים
4. the great sons of the king	5.	מִשְׁפַּחַת הַנְּבִיאִים הַחֲכָמָה
5. the wise family of the prophets	6.	מִשְׁפַּחַת הַנְּבִיאִים הַחֲכָמִים
6. the family of the wise prophets	7.	עֶבֶד־הָאֵם הַחֲזָק
7. the strong servant of the mother	8.	סֵפֶר־הַכֹּהֵן הַקָּדוֹשׁ
8. the holy book of the priest or the book of the holy priest (context will clarify)	9.	זָהָב הָעִיר הַטָּהוֹר
9. the pure gold of the city (Remember: עִיר is feminine.)	10.	דְּבָרֵי תוֹרַת יְהוָה הַטּוֹבִים
10. the good words of the law of the LORD		

D. Focus on the use of כָּל. Translate the following phrases, paying attention to the varying uses of כָּל.

	1.	כָּל־הַדְּרָכִים
1. all of the roads	2.	כָּל־הַדֶּרֶךְ
2. the whole road	3.	כָּל־דֶּרֶךְ
3. every road	4.	כָּל־הַמִּזְבֵּחַ
4. the whole altar	5.	כָּל־הָאֱלֹהִים
5. all of the gods	6.	כָּל־בַּיִת
6. every house		

Reviewing Previous Lessons

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. גָּאַלְתִּי						
2. יִפְקְדוּ						
3. אָמְרוּ						
4. נִשְׁכַּב						
5. מְלַכְנוּ						
6. יִדְעֻתֶם						
7. אָזְבַח						
8. תִּבְטְחִי						
9. תִּכְתְּבוּ						
10. שְׁמְרָה						

F. Focus on the inseparable prepositions. Circle the words that have an inseparable preposition with the definite article.

1. כְּסוּסִים כְּסוּסִים בְּדָבָרִים לְבָנִים בְּסִפְרִים לְנָבִיא כְּמִשְׁפָּחָה

2. בְּקוֹל לְלֵב בְּדֶרֶךְ לְזִקְנִים כְּמִלְחָמוֹת כְּסוּסוֹת בְּבָגְדִים לְמִזְבְּחוֹת

Putting It All Together

G. Translate the following.

	1. נתן נביא יהוה את התורה לעם
1. The prophet of the LORD gave the law to the people.	2. ידרשו את ספר הברית בבית יהוה
2. They will seek the book of the Covenant in the house of the LORD.	3. הלכו אנשי העיר החזקים למלחמה גדולה
3. The strong men of the city went to a great battle.	4. נשלח כסף וזהב אל בני האב הטובים
4. We will send silver and gold to the father's good sons.	5. האם והבת ישבו תחת השמים
5. The mother and the daughter sat under the sky.	6. לא תזבחו זבחי יהוה טהורים על-מזבח טמא
6. You (<i>mp</i>) will not offer the LORD's clean sacrifices on an unclean altar.	7. במקום קדש עמדת לפני האלהים
7. You stood before God in a holy place.	8. טוב שם טוב מכלסף רב
8. A good name is better than much money.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

H. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| Numbers 11:16 | 1. הם זקני העם |
| Deuteronomy 13:4 | 2. לא תשמע אל דברי הנביא |
| Psalms 18:22 | 3. שמרתי דרכי יהוה |
| Leviticus 16:4 | 4. בגדי קדש הם |

14

QAL PERFECT AND IMPERFECT: WEAK ROOTS

Weak Roots

14.1 Hebrew has two kinds of roots: “strong” and “weak.”

- ▶ Strong roots are “regular.” They follow the standard paradigm (קטל) exactly.

מְלַכְתֶּם זָכַרְתֶּם קָטַלְתֶּם

- ▶ Weak roots are “irregular.” They vary from the standard paradigm (קטל) in one way or another.

14.2 The “weakness” in weak roots is designated in two ways: the location of the weakness and the nature of the weakness.

- ▶ If the weakness is located in the first, second, or third letter, the Roman numerals I, II, or III are used, respectively, to identify the *location* of the weakness.
- ▶ The weakness is also identified according to the specific nature of the weakness. For example, roots with gutturals are weak, because gutturals have characteristics that cause the verbal forms of these roots to vary from the standard paradigm.

Examples:

עָבַד is a I Guttural verb.

גָּאַל is a II Guttural verb.

בָּטַח is a III Guttural verb.

14.3 In this lesson, I Guttural verbs and III Alef verbs are introduced.

I Guttural Verbs: Qal Perfect and Imperfect

14.4 I Guttural verbs vary from the standard paradigm mainly in one way: where the standard paradigm has a *sheva* (◌◌), I Guttural verbs have a *chatef-patach* (◌◌◌) or a *chatef-segol* (◌◌◌).

Qal Perfect

- 14.5** The qal pf follows the standard paradigm except in the 2mp and 2fp forms, where the *sheva* (◌ְ) is replaced by *chatef-patach* (◌ֿ).

	I Guttural	Strong	
עֲמַדְתֶּם	עֲמַדְתֶּם	קָטַלְתֶּם	2mp
עֲמַדְתָּן	עֲמַדְתָּן	קָטַלְתָּן	2fp

Qal Imperfect

- 14.6** The qal impf varies from the standard paradigm in three ways: (1) *sheva* (◌ְ) under the first root letter is replaced by *chatef-patach* (◌ֿ) or *chatef-segol* (◌ֿֿ), (2) the vowel under the prefix will be the corresponding short vowel (*patach* [◌ַ] or *segol* [◌ֿ]), and (3) in the 2fs, 3mp and 2mp the first *sheva* (◌ְ) becomes *patach* (◌ַ).

	I Guttural	Strong	
יַעֲמֵד	יַעֲמֵד	יִקְטֹל	3ms
תַּעֲמֵד	תַּעֲמֵד	תִּקְטֹל	3fs
תַּעֲמֵד	תַּעֲמֵד	תִּקְטֹל	2ms
תַּעֲמִידִי	תַּעֲמִידִי	תִּקְטֹלִי	2fs
אֶעֱמֵד	אֶעֱמֵד	אֶקְטֹל	1cs
יַעֲמִדוּ	יַעֲמִדוּ	יִקְטֹלוּ	3mp
תַּעֲמִידְנָה	תַּעֲמִידְנָה	תִּקְטֹלְנָה	3fp
תַּעֲמִידוּ	תַּעֲמִידוּ	תִּקְטֹלוּ	2mp
תַּעֲמִידְנָה	תַּעֲמִידְנָה	תִּקְטֹלְנָה	2fp
נַעֲמֵד	נַעֲמֵד	נִקְטֹל	1cp

Verbs with *patach* (◌ַ) as the theme vowel are vocalized like יִחְזֹק.

III Alef (א) Verbs: Qal Perfect and Imperfect

- 14.7** III Alef verbs vary from the standard paradigm because *alef* is silent

when it closes a syllable.

Qal Perfect

- 14.8** In forms where *alef* would close a syllable, the *alef* is silent, so (1) there is no *sheva* (◌ְ) written under the *alef* and (2) compensatory lengthening (see p. 25) takes place: the expected short *patach* (◌ַ) is lengthened to medium *qamets* (◌ֶ). And because the *tav* (ת) of the suffixes is now preceded by a vowel, the *alef* being silent, the weak *dagesh* is lost (see “Letters with Two Pronunciations,” p. 4).

	III Alef	Strong	
מְצָא	מֶצָא	קָטַל	3ms
מְצָאָה	מֶצָאָה	קָטַלָּה	3fs
מְצָאתָ	מֶצָאתָ	קָטַלְתָּ	2ms
מְצָאת	מֶצָאת	קָטַלְתְּ	2fs
מְצָאתִי	מֶצָאתִי	קָטַלְתִּי	1cs
מְצָאוּ	מֶצָאוּ	קָטְלוּ	3cp
מְצָאתֶם	מֶצָאתֶם	קָטַלְתֶּם	2mp
מְצָאתֶן	מֶצָאתֶן	קָטַלְתֶּן	2fp
מְצָאנוּ	מֶצָאנוּ	קָטַלְנוּ	1cp

Qal Imperfect

- 14.9** Because *alef* is a guttural, the theme vowel is an “a” class vowel (as in יִשְׁלַח), not the “u”-class vowel *cholem* (◌ֹ). In forms where *alef* would close a syllable, the *alef* is silent, so compensatory lengthening takes place: the expected short *patach* (◌ַ) is lengthened to medium *qamets* (◌ֶ), except in the *3fp* and *2fp*, which have a *segol* (◌ִ).

	III Alef	III Guttural	
יְמַצֵּא	יֶמַצֵּא	יִשְׁלַח	3ms
תְּמַצֵּא	יֶמַצֵּא	תִּשְׁלַח	3fs
תְּמַצֵּאת	יֶמַצֵּאת	תִּשְׁלַחְתְּ	2ms
תְּמַצֵּאִי	יֶמַצֵּאִי	תִּשְׁלַחְתִּי	2fs
אֲמַצֵּא	אֶמַצֵּא	אִשְׁלַח	1cs

	III Alef	III Guttural	
יִמְצְאוּ	יִמְצְאוּ	יִשְׁלְחוּ	3mp
תִּמְצְאוּנָה	תִּמְצְאוּנָה	תִּשְׁלְחֶנָּה	3fp
תִּמְצְאוּ	תִּמְצְאוּ	תִּשְׁלְחוּ	2mp
תִּמְצְאוּנָה	תִּמְצְאוּנָה	תִּשְׁלְחֶנָּה	2fp
נִמְצָא	נִמְצָא	נִשְׁלַח	1cp

Vocabulary

touch, hurt	נָגַע	92	cry	בָּכָה	69
approach	נָגַשׁ	93	build, fortify	בָּנָה	29
start out	נָסַע	95	reveal, go away	גָּלָה	73
make, do	עָשָׂה	18	see, see a vision	חָזָה	142
see, know	רָאָה	22	cease, finish	כָּלָה	43

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on weak roots. Before doing this exercise, go back and review the paradigms in Lessons 6 and 11. Underline the verbs below that vary from the standard paradigm and circle the point(s) at which the variance occurs.

1. עִבְרֹתֶם חֲזַקְתֶּם עֲבַדְהָ גָּאֵלָה נִשְׁאַה מְצָא עֲמַדְתֶּם מְצָאתִי
2. יַעֲבֹר יִגְאֹלוּ תַעֲמְדוּ תִקְרָא יִבְרָא נִעֲבַד תִּמְצְאוּ
3. נִשְׂאוּ אֶעֱמַד גָּאֵלוּ מְצָאתֶם תַעֲבֹדִי חֲזַקְהָ חֲזַקְתֶּם

B. Focus on weak roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. חָטָא						
2. עִבְרֹתֶם						

3.	נְעַמַּד					
4.	תִּמְצָא					
5.	תִּטְאֲתֵם					
6.	יַעֲבֹדוּ					
7.	גָּאֲלָה					
8.	אֲמַרְתֶּם					

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on the construct state. Translate the following construct forms.

- | | | | | | | | |
|-----|----------|-----|------------|-----|--------------|-----|-----------|
| 1. | נְבִיא | 2. | מְשַׁפֵּט | 3. | מְלִכִי | 4. | שְׁנוֹת |
| 5. | דְּבַר | 6. | תּוֹרַת | 7. | מְשַׁפְּחַת | 8. | בֶּן |
| 9. | דְּרָכֵי | 10. | זְבָחִי | 11. | מְשַׁפְּחוֹת | 12. | זֶהָב |
| 13. | סוּסַת | 14. | מְלַחְמוֹת | 15. | עֲבָרֵי | 16. | נִפְשׁוֹת |

D. Focus on the form of the construct. Match the construct form of the right column with the corresponding absolute singular form of the left column.

- | | | | | |
|----|-------------|-------|-----|--------------|
| a. | סוּסָה | _____ | 1. | תּוֹרַת |
| b. | מְשַׁפְּחָה | _____ | 2. | יְדוֹת |
| c. | יֶשֶׁר | _____ | 3. | כְּסָפִי |
| d. | כֶּסֶף | _____ | 4. | מְשַׁפְּחוֹת |
| e. | תּוֹרָה | _____ | 5. | אֲנָשִׁי |
| f. | מְלַחְמָה | _____ | 6. | יִשְׂרָי |
| g. | אִישׁ | _____ | 7. | עַמִּי |
| h. | זָקֵן | _____ | 8. | מְלַחְמַת |
| i. | עַם | _____ | 9. | סוּסַת |
| j. | יָד | _____ | 10. | זְקֵנִי |

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יִזְבַּח						
2. שָׁלַחוּ						
3. נִשְׂאָנוּ						
4. יַעֲבֹדוּ						
5. הִלְכֹתֶם						
6. מָלְכָה						
7. נִשְׁפֹּט						
8. אָעָמַד						
9. תִּמְצָא						
10. תִּקְטֹלֶנָּה						

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

	1. גָּאֵלוּ אַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר אֶת הָעָם
1. The men of the city redeemed the people.	2. יִקְרָא הַכֹּהֵן אֶת־סֵפֶר־הַבְּרִית לְבְנֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ הַרְשָׁעִים
2. The priest will read the Book of the Covenant to the king's wicked sons.	3. מְצֵאתָ אֶת הַזֹּהָב הַטָּהוֹר בְּבֵית הָאִשָּׁה הַטּוֹבָה
3. You (ms) found the pure gold in the good woman's house.	4. יַעֲמֹדוּ הַנְּבִיאִים לְפָנֵי־יְהוָה בְּבֹקֶר וּבְעָרֵב
4. The prophets will stand before the LORD in the morning and in the evening.	5. יַעֲבֹדוּ עַמֵּי הָאָרֶץ אֶת הָאֱלֹהִים בְּכָל־מָקוֹם
5. The peoples of the earth will serve God in every place.	6. יִדְעָתִי אֶת־עַבְדֵי־הַנְּשִׂים הַחַכְמוֹת
6. I knew the servants of the wise women.	7. זָקֵן הָאִישׁ מִן־הַנָּעַר
7. The man is older than the boy.	8. נִשְׂאָתֶם אִתְּם מִים לְאֵהָל הַגָּדוֹל
8. You (mp) carried water to the big tent.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| Ezekiel 44:24 | הָמָּה יַעֲמָדוּ לְמִשְׁפָּט .1 |
| 1 Samuel 28:20 | לֹא אָכַל . . . כָּל־הַיּוֹם וְכָל־הַלַּיְלָה .2 |
| Genesis 1:1 | בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת הָאָרֶץ .3 |

15

QAL PERFECT AND IMPERFECT: I NUN AND III HEY

I Nun (ן) Verbs: Perfect and Imperfect

15.1 I Nun verbs vary from the standard paradigm, because when the *nun* of the root is followed by a non-guttural consonant, the *nun* assimilates to that consonant (see “assimilated,” p. 50).

Qal Perfect

15.2 Because the *nun* is never followed by a consonant in the *qal pf*, these forms are regular, for example, **נָפַל** and **נָפְלוּ**.

Qal Imperfect

15.3 In all forms, the *nun* is followed by a consonant; as a result, the *nun* is assimilated to that consonant and is indicated by strong *dagesh*, for example: **יִפֹּל** > **יִפְּפַל** > **יִפַּל**.

I Nun	Strong	
יִפַּל	יִקְטֹל	3ms
תִּפַּל	תִּקְטֹל	3fs
תִּפְּלוּ	תִּקְטֹלוּ	2ms
תִּפְּלוּ	תִּקְטֹלוּ	2fs
אֶפַּל	אֶקְטֹל	1cs

יִפְּלוּ	יִקְטֹלוּ	3mp
תִּפְּלוּ	תִּקְטֹלוּ	3fp
תִּפְּלוּ	תִּקְטֹלוּ	2mp
תִּפְּלוּ	תִּקְטֹלוּ	2fp
נָפַל	נָקְטֹל	1cp

Qal Imperfect of לקח

- 15.4** The verb לקח acts as if it were a I Nun verb in the *impf.* Because the final consonant is a guttural, the theme vowel is *patach* (ַ).

לקח	Strong	
יקח	יקטל	3ms
תקח	תקטל	3fs
תקח	תקטל	2ms
תקחי	תקטלי	2fs
אקח	אקטל	1cs

יקחו	יקטלו	3mp
תקחנה	תקטלנה	3fp
תקחו	תקטלו	2mp
תקחנה	תקטלנה	2fp
נקח	נקטל	1cp

III Hey (ה) Verbs: Perfect and Imperfect

- 15.5** III Hey verbs vary from the standard paradigm, because the final *hey* (ה) is not a consonant but a vowel letter. Most of the III Hey roots originally ended with a consonantal *yod* (י), which dropped off at a certain point in time, leaving only a vowel, now indicated by the final *hey* (ה). Vestiges of the original *yod* appear in certain forms of the verb.

Qal Perfect

- 15.6** The 3ms has הַ as the ending; hence the name III Hey. Most forms have יַ after the second root letter; the *yod* is a vestige of a time when most of these verbs ended with consonantal *yod*; since the *tav* (ת) of the suffix is preceded by a vowel, the weak *dagesh* is lost (see “Letters with Two Pronunciations,” p. 4). The 3fs has two feminine endings: (1) תַ and (2) הַ.

III Hey	Strong	
גָּלָה	קָטַל	3ms
גָּלְתָה	קָטַלְתָּ	3fs
גָּלִיתְּ	קָטַלְתְּ	2ms
גָּלִיתְּ	קָטַלְתְּ	2fs
גָּלִיתִי	קָטַלְתִּי	1cs
גָּלוּ	קָטְלוּ	3cp
גָּלִיתֶם	קָטַלְתֶּם	2mp
גָּלִיתֶן	קָטַלְתֶּן	2fp
גָּלִינוּ	קָטְלִינוּ	1cp

Qal Imperfect

- 15.7** The ending הַיְּ is found on half of the forms. The 2fs, 3mp, and 2mp attach the vocalic suffix to the second/final root letter. The 3fp and 2fp have יְיַ after the second/final root letter and before the נָה suffix.

III Hey	Strong	
יְגַלֶּה	יְקַטֵּל	3ms
תְּגַלֶּה	תְּקַטֵּל	3fs
תְּגַלֶּה	תְּקַטֵּל	2ms
תְּגַלֶּי	תְּקַטֵּלִי	2fs
אֲגַלֶּה	אֲקַטֵּל	1cs
יְגַלוּ	יְקַטְלוּ	3mp
תְּגַלְיֶנָּה	תְּקַטְלֶנָּה	3fp
תְּגַלוּ	תְּקַטְלוּ	2mp
תְּגַלְיֶנָּה	תְּקַטְלֶנָּה	2fp
נְגַלֶּה	נְקַטֵּל	1cp

Doubly Weak Verbs

- 15.8** Numerous roots have two weaknesses. The forms show the characteristics of each weak paradigm. An example is עשה, which is I Guttural and III Hey.
- 15.9** The *pf* displays the characteristics of the III Hey verbs in all forms and the characteristics of the I Guttural verbs in the 2mp, which is the only doubly weak form in this case.

III Hey		Doubly Weak		I Guttural
גָּלְתָם	→	עָשִׂיתָם	←	עָמַדְתָּם 2mp

- 15.10** The *impf* displays the characteristics of both the III Hey and the I Guttural verbs in all forms.

III Hey		Doubly Weak		I Guttural
יְגַלֶּה	→	יַעֲשֶׂה	←	יַעֲמֹד 3ms

Vocabulary

mouth	פֶּה	437	ear <i>f</i>	אָזֶן (אָזֶן)	490
face	פָּנִים	399	nose, anger	אַף	453
head	רֹאשׁ	402	arm <i>f</i>	זְרוּעַ	611
beginning	רֵאשִׁית	695	shoulder <i>f</i>	כֶּתֶף	636
foot <i>f</i>	רֶגֶל (רְגֵל)	481	eye <i>m</i> and <i>f</i>	עֵין (עֵינִי)	396

Notes:

- Most body parts that occur in pairs are feminine, in spite of their masculine appearance (see “Irregular Singular Nouns,” p. 19).
- The noun פָּנִים is plural in form but singular or plural in sense, “(one) face” or “faces.” The preposition לְפָנַי (“before”) is made up of the preposition לְ and the *mp* construct of פָּנִים, “to the face of” > “before.”
- The *alef* (א) in רֹאשׁ and רֵאשִׁית is silent. Silent *alef* can always be identified, because there is neither a vowel nor a *sheva* (◌) written with it.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on weak roots. Before doing this exercise, go back and review the paradigms in Lessons 6 and 11. Underline the verbs that vary from the standard paradigm and circle the point(s) at which the variation occurs.

1. בָּכָה גָּלִיתָ נָפְלָנוּ עָשׂוּ שָׁלַחְתִּי חֲזִיתֶם נִגַע
2. יָפַל יִשְׁפָּטוּ יִבְנֶה תִּגְשׁוּ נָסַע תִּמְלִכִי תִכְלִי
3. בָּכְתָה תִּפְלְנָה יִבְנוּ עֲשִׂיתֶם נִסְעָה תִכְלָה

B. Focus on weak roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יָפַל						
2. כָּלְתָה						
3. תַּעֲשֶׂה						
4. נִגַּשׁ						
5. חֲזִיתֶם						
6. בָּנִינוּ						
7. תִּגְעִי						
8. רָאִיתָ						

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on the construct state. Translate the following construct forms.

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|------------------|--------------|
| 1. מְקוֹם | 2. סוּסֹת | 3. זְבָחִי | 4. נִפְשׁוֹת |
| 5. כֶּסֶפִּי | 6. מְלַחֶמֶת | 7. דְּבַר | 8. תּוֹרַת |
| 9. זֶהָב | 10. מְשַׁפַּחַת | 11. מְשַׁפְּחוֹת | 12. סִפְרֵי |
| 13. יַד | 14. דְּרָכֵי | 15. מְשַׁפְּטֵי | 16. אֲנָשֵׁי |

D. Focus on the form of the construct. Match the construct form of the right column with the corresponding absolute singular form of the left column.

זָהָב .a	_____	נָבִיא .1
מְשֹׁפֵט .b	_____	דְּבָרִי .2
סוּסָה .c	_____	תּוֹרַת .3
דְּבָר .d	_____	נִפְשׁוֹת .4
נֶפֶשׁ .e	_____	אֲנָשִׁי .5
רַב .f	_____	מְשֹׁפֵט .6
שָׁנָה .g	_____	רַבִּי .7
נָבִיא .h	_____	סוּסָה .8
אִישׁ .i	_____	זָהָב .9
תּוֹרָה .j	_____	שָׁנָה .10

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יִשְׁלַחוּ						
2. עָבְרָנוּ						
3. גָּאֲלָהּ						
4. אָקַח						
5. כָּלִיתִי						
6. תִּמְצָא						
7. נִמְלֵךְ						
8. כָּבַד						
9. יִפְלוּ						
10. מִצָּאתָ						

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

	1.	לֹא גָדוֹל אֲדוֹן הָעִיר הַרְשָׁעָה
1. The lord of the wicked city is not great.	2.	יִשְׁבְּנוּ בְּאֶהֱל תַּחַת הַשָּׁמַיִם
2. We lived in the tent under the sky.	3.	יִבְנוּ הָאִישׁ וְהָאִשָּׁה בֵּית לְבָנִים וְלְבָנוֹת
3. The man and the woman will build a house for the sons and the daughters.	4.	לֹא יִגַּשׁ הַנְּבִיא אֶל־מִזְבַּח־יְהוָה
4. The prophet will not approach the altar of the LORD.	5.	בְּכִיתֶם כָּל־הַיּוֹם וְכָל־הַלַּיְלָה
5. You wept the whole day and the whole night.	6.	תַּעֲשֶׂה לְחֶם־קֹדֶשׁ לְכַהֲנַיִם הַטְּהוֹרִים
6. She/you (ms) will make holy food for the clean priests.	7.	מִצְאָתִי אֶת־סֹפֵר־הַבְּרִית בְּבַיִת הַמֶּלֶךְ
7. I found the Book of the Covenant in the king's house.	8.	יִסַּע עִם־הָאָרֶץ הַחֲזָק עַל־הַדֶּרֶךְ לְמַלְחָמָה
8. The strong people of the land will set out on the way for the battle.		

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- | | |
|-----------------|---|
| Exodus 20:23 | 1. אֱלֹהֵי כֶסֶף . . . לֹא תַעֲשׂוּ |
| Numbers 4:15 | 2. וְלֹא יִגְעוּ אֶל־הַקֹּדֶשׁ |
| Leviticus 10:17 | 3. לֹא אֲכַלְתֶּם . . . בְּמִקוֹם הַקֹּדֶשׁ |
| Psalms 78:10 | 4. לֹא שָׁמְרוּ בְרִית אֱלֹהִים |

16

POSSESSIVE SUFFIXES ON SINGULAR NOUNS

Possessive Suffixes

- 16.1** English expresses possession by adding possessive pronouns before nouns, for example, *my* horse, *your* horse, *his* horse.
- 16.2** Hebrew expresses possession by adding possessive suffixes to the end of nouns. There is a set of suffixes for singular nouns and a related set for plural nouns. In this lesson you are learning the possessive suffixes for singular nouns.

Form of the Suffixes

“his horse”	3ms	סוּסוֹ	=	וְ	+	סוּס
“her horse”	3fs	סוּסֶיהָ	=	הָ	+	סוּס
“your horse”	2ms	סוּסְךָ	=	ךָ	+	סוּס
“your horse”	2fs	סוּסֶיךָ	=	יְךָ	+	סוּס
“my horse”	1cs	סוּסִי	=	יְ	+	סוּס

“their horse”	3mp	סוּסָם	=	ם	+	סוּס
“their horse”	3fp	סוּסָן	=	ן	+	סוּס
“your horse”	2mp	סוּסְכֶם	=	כֶּם	+	סוּס
“your horse”	2fp	סוּסְכֶן	=	כֶּן	+	סוּס
“our horse”	1cp	סוּסֵנוּ	=	נוּ	+	סוּס

► Vocabulary Cards ##954–959

The dot in the hey (ה) of the 3fs suffix is called “mappiq” and indicates that the hey is a consonant, not a vowel letter, distinguishing, for example, סוּסָהּ = “a mare” from סוּסֶהָּ = “her horse.” Mappiq occurs mainly in this suffix.

Form of Feminine Nouns before the Suffixes

- 16.3** The same set of possessive suffixes is added to a form of the feminine singular noun, which is related to the construct form = סוּסַת. Because the short *patach* (◌ַ) of the construct form is in an open pretonic syllable in most suffixed forms, it is lengthened to medium *qamets* (◌ָ), resulting in סוּסָת, except in the 2mp and 2fp, where the closed syllable preserves the *patach* (◌ַ).

“his mare”	3ms	סוּסָתוּ	=	וּ	+	סוּסַת
“her mare”	3fs	סוּסָתֶיהָּ	=	הָּ	+	סוּסַת
“your mare”	2ms	סוּסָתְךָּ	=	ךָּ	+	סוּסַת
“your mare”	2fs	סוּסָתְךָּ	=	ךָּ	+	סוּסַת
“my mare”	1cs	סוּסָתִי	=	יִ	+	סוּסַת

“their mare”	3mp	סוּסָתָם	=	ם	+	סוּסַת
“their mare”	3fp	סוּסָתָן	=	ן	+	סוּסַת
“your mare”	2mp	סוּסָתְכֶם	=	כֶּם	+	סוּסַת
“your mare”	2fp	סוּסָתְכֶן	=	כֶּן	+	סוּסַת
“our mare”	1cp	סוּסָתֵנוּ	=	נוּ	+	סוּסַת

► Vocabulary Cards ##967–972

Words with a possessive suffix are definite. If such words are (1) modified by an attributive adjective, the adjective has the definite article; (2) the direct object of a verb, the form is preceded by the direct object marker אֶת/אֵת; or (3) the last word in a construct phrase, the whole phrase is definite.

Form of Various Nouns before the Suffixes

- 16.4** Because adding a possessive suffix to a noun results in the accent moving to the suffix, the nature of the preceding syllables will change, and as a result vowels will change in keeping with previously learned rules.

Forms Such as דְּבַר

- 16.5** Because the addition of the possessive suffix is similar to the addition of the plural suffix, the form of the noun with the possessive suffixes will be similar to the form of the noun in the plural, that is, דְּבָרִים > דְּבַר, so דְּבַר > דְּבָרוֹ = “his word.” Other examples are לֵבָב > לְבָבוֹ = “his heart,” מְקוֹם > מְקוֹמוֹ = “his place,” and נְבִיא > נְבִיאֹ = “his prophet.”
- 16.6** The main change is that medium vowels in open proretonic syllables reduce to *sheva* (◌◌).

Forms Such as נֶפֶשׁ, סֵפֶר, and בֹּקֶר

- 16.7** The vowels in segolate nouns (see Lesson 8) with suffixes *cannot* be explained by the rules of vowel reduction; for example, נֶפֶשׁ > נֶפְשׁוֹ. Originally, segolate nouns were one-syllable nouns with either a short “a,” “i,” or “u” after the first consonant. The original short vowel is preserved in forms with the possessive suffix.

“a” class	“his soul”	נֶפֶשׁ	נֶפְשׁוֹ
“i” class	“his book”	סֵפֶר	סֵפְרוֹ
“u” class	“his morning”	בֹּקֶר	בֹּקְרוֹ

- 16.8** Nouns with *tseré* (◌ֵ) in the first syllable will always be “i” class segolates. Nouns with *cholem* (◌ֹ) in the first syllable will always be “u” class segolates; the ◌ֹ in בֹּקְרוֹ is the short “u” class vowel *qamets-chatuf*.

Forms Such as עַם

- 16.9** Nouns from geminate roots (see Lesson 10) will show gemination when possessive suffixes are added, just as they do when the plural suffix is added, for example, עַם > עַמִּים, so עַם > עַמּוֹ = “his people.” Other examples are אִם > אִמּוֹ = “his mother” and לֵב > לִבּוֹ = “his heart.”

Forms Such as בַּיִת

16.10 Because diphthongs contract in unaccented syllables, as in the construct state (see p. 70), the diphthong will contract when a possessive suffix is added, for example, בַּיִת > בֵּיתוֹ = “his house” and עֵינַן > עֵינוֹ = “his eye.”

Nouns with Odd Forms in the Construct and with Possessive Suffixes

	With Suffix	Construct	
“your father”	אָבִיךָ	אָבִי	אָב
“your wife”	אִשְׁתְּךָ	אִשְׁת	אִשָּׁה
“your daughter”	בִּתְּךָ	בֵּת	בַּת

- בַּת (“daughter”) is actually the noun בֶּן (“son”) with the feminine ת added, resulting in בַּנְת > בַּת, with the assimilation of the *nun* (נ), indicated by strong *dagesh* when a suffix is added. The original *chireq* (ֿ) shifted to *patach* (ַ), and the original “i” class vowel is preserved in the form with the possessive suffix, בִּתְּךָ. Also note the original *nun* (נ) in the plural בָּנוֹת (“daughters”).

Vocabulary

this <i>m</i>	זֶה	867	behind, after, west	אַחֵר	374
be able	יָכַל	36	enemy	אֵיב	408
go out	יָצָא	9	these	אֵלֶּה (אֵלֶּה)	869
go down	יָרַד	39	man	אָנוּשׁ	377
go up	עָלָה	16	this <i>f</i>	זֹאת	868

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on words with possessive suffixes. Match the form with the possessive suffix in the right column with the corresponding absolute singular form in the left column.

אָדוֹן .a	_____	1. קוּלִי
סוּסָה .b	_____	2. תּוֹרְתֶךָ
תּוֹרָה .c	_____	3. אָדוֹיְנִי
סִפֵּר .d	_____	4. כְּסָפְכֶם
בִּקְרָה .e	_____	5. לְבָהּ
קוּל .f	_____	6. סִפְרוֹ
לֵב .g	_____	7. אֲשֵׁתִי
שָׁנָה .h	_____	8. סוּסְתֶךָ
כְּסָף .i	_____	9. בְּקִרְךָ
אִשָּׁה .j	_____	10. שְׁנָתוֹ

B. Focus on words with possessive suffixes. Translate the following words with possessive suffixes.

1. סוּסוֹ	2. סוּסְכֶם	3. סוּסֵינוּ	4. סוּסָם
5. סוּסְךָ	6. סוּסִי	7. סוּסְךָ	8. סוּסָהּ
9. מִלְכָנוּ	10. נִפְשֶׁךָ	11. קִדְשִׁם	12. דְּבָרוֹ
13. זְהַבְכֶם	14. בֵּיתָהּ	15. בְּגִדְךָ	16. עַמִּי

C. Focus on words with possessive suffixes. Translate the following.

	1. בְּנִיתִי אֶת־בַּיִתִּי
1. I built my house.	2. נָתַן אָבִינוּ אֶת הַכֶּסֶף
2. Our father gave the money.	3. דָּרַשׁ לְבָךְ הַטְּהוֹר לְאֱלֹהִים
3. Your pure heart sought for God.	4. לָקַח אֶת־הַזָּהָב אֶל־אָרְצוֹ

4. He took the gold to his land.	5. הִלַּכְתֶּם לְדִרְכֵיכֶם הָרָשָׁע
5. You (<i>mp</i>) went on your wicked way. (הִלַּךְ + לְ = “go on”)	6. יָדַעְנוּ אֵת בַּת אִמָּה
6. We knew the daughter of her mother.	

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on the personal pronouns. Translate the personal pronouns, then identify the person, gender, and number.

3fp	they	1. הֵנָּה
		2. אַתָּה
		3. אֲנִי
		4. הִיא
		5. אֲנַחְנוּ
		6. אַתֶּם
		7. הוּא
		8. אַתְּ
		9. הֵם
		10. אֲנֹכִי

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הִלַּכְתֶּם						
2. אָגַלָּה						
3. נִמְצָא						
4. עָשִׂיתִי						
5. יַעֲבֹדוּ						
6. יָגֵשׁ						
7. חָטְאָתְךָ						

8.	גְּאֵלָה					
9.	עֵבֶרְתָּן					
10.	תִּשָּׂא					

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

	1.	מִצָּאתִי אֲנִי אֶת־סֵפֶרְךָ הַטּוֹב
1. I myself found your (<i>fs</i>) good book.	2.	תִּשָּׂא בַת־מֶלְכֵנוּ אֶת־בְּנֵהּ לְכוֹהֵן
2. The daughter of our king will carry her son to the priest.	3.	לֹא שָׁמַעְתֶּם אֶת דְּבַר הַנָּבִיא
3. You (<i>mp</i>) did not hear the prophet's word.	4.	יִשְׁמְרוּ עִם־הָאָרֶץ אֶת־תּוֹרַת יְהוָה הַקְּדוּשָׁה
4. The people of the land will keep the holy law of the LORD.	5.	חֹזֶק הַזִּקֵּן מִן־הַנְּעָר
5. The old man (adj. as substantive) is stronger than the boy.	6.	לֹא תִדְרֹשׁ אֱלִים אֲחֵרִים בְּכָל־נַפְשְׁךָ
6. You (<i>ms</i>) will not seek other gods with all your soul.	7.	בָּכוּ הַבָּנִים וְהַבָּנוֹת בְּאֶהָלָם
7. The sons and the daughters wept in their tent.	8.	כָּלְתָה מְלַחְמַת הָעַמִּים הַגְּדוֹלָה
8. The great battle of the peoples ended.		

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

2 Samuel 7:20

1. וְאַתָּה יְדַעְתָּ אֶת־עֲבֹדְךָ

Isaiah 42:24

2. וְלֹא שָׁמְעוּ בְּתוֹרָתוֹ

Joshua 24:15

3. וְאֲנֹכִי וּבֵיתִי נֹעֲבָד אֶת־יְהוָה

17

DEMONSTRATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS

Forms of the Demonstrative Pronouns

17.1 Demonstrative pronouns point out the specific person or object referred to, as in English, “*this* boy” and “*these* roads.”

17.2 This and These

these <i>cp</i>	אֵלֶּה	this <i>ms</i>	זֶה
		this <i>fs</i>	זֵאת

17.3 That and Those

those <i>mp</i>	הֵם	that <i>ms</i>	הוא
those <i>fp</i>	הֵנָּה	that <i>fs</i>	היא

- *The Hebrew for “that” and “those” are the same forms as the personal pronouns (see Lesson 5).*

Use of the Demonstrative Pronouns

17.4 The demonstrative pronouns are used like adjectives: attributive and predicate.

- An *attributive* demonstrative pronoun must agree in gender, number, and definiteness, and follow the noun it describes. Since a specific/definite person or object is being referred to, the attributive demonstrative usually has the definite article.

“this horse”	הַסּוּס הַזֶּה
“this mare”	הַסּוּסָה הַזֹּאת
“these horses”	הַסּוּסִים הָאֵלֶּה
“these mares”	הַסּוּסוֹת הָאֵלֶּה

“that horse”	הַסּוּס הַהוּא
“that mare”	הַסּוּסָה הַהִיא
“those horses”	הַסּוּסִים הָהֵם
“those mares”	הַסּוּסוֹת הַהֵנָּה

- When a noun is described by an adjective and a demonstrative pronoun, the demonstrative pronoun follows the adjective.

“this good horse”	הַסּוּס הַטוֹב הַזֶּה
“this good mare”	הַסּוּסָה הַטוֹבָה הַזֹּאת
“these good horses”	הַסּוּסִים הַטוֹבִים הָאֵלֶּה

- A *predicate* demonstrative pronoun must agree in gender and number but will not have the definite article and will tend to come before the noun it describes.

“This is the horse.”	זֶה הַסּוּס
“This is the mare.”	זֹאת הַסּוּסָה
“These are the horses.”	אֵלֶּה הַסּוּסִים
“These are the mares.”	אֵלֶּה הַסּוּסוֹת
“That is the horse.”	הוּא הַסּוּס
“That is the mare.”	הִיא הַסּוּסָה
“Those are the horses.”	הֵם הַסּוּסִים
“Those are the mares.”	הֵנָּה הַסּוּסוֹת

Relative Pronoun (אֲשֶׁר)

- 17.5** A relative pronoun relates various parts of a sentence to each other, as in English, “the boy *who* sent the gift” or “the gift *that* was sent.”
- 17.6** Hebrew has one primary relative pronoun אֲשֶׁר, translated *who, whom, which, what, where, that*, etc.
- 17.7** The relative pronoun אֲשֶׁר remains unchanged regardless of the gender or number or definiteness of the word it follows.

הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יָשַׁב בְּבַיִת
 “the man (*ms* and definite) who lived in the house”

הָאִשָּׁה אֲשֶׁר יָשְׁבָה בְּבַיִת
 “the woman (*fs* and definite) who lived in the house”

הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר יָשְׁבוּ בְּבַיִת

“the men (*mp* and definite) who lived in the house”

אֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר יָשְׁבוּ בְּבַיִת

“men (*mp* and indefinite) who lived in the house”

- 17.8** The relative pronoun אֲשֶׁר follows various parts of a sentence.

נָפַל הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח אֶת-הַנֶּעֶר

“The man who sent the boy fell.” (subject)

שָׁלַח אֶת-הַנֶּעֶר אֲשֶׁר יָשַׁב בְּבַיִת

“He sent the boy who lived in the house.” (direct object)

שָׁלַח אֶת-הַנֶּעֶר לְאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יָשַׁב בְּבַיִת

“He sent the boy to the man who lived in the house.”
(object of preposition)

- 17.9** A *pf* in a relative clause may be translated as a past perfect.

נָפַל הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח אֶת-הַנֶּעֶר

“The man who *had sent* the boy fell.”

שָׁלַח אֶת-הַנֶּעֶר אֲשֶׁר יָשַׁב בְּבַיִת

“He sent the boy who *had lived* in the house.”

Directive Hey (הַ)

- 17.10** Directive *hey* (הַ) is an ending added to certain words, expressing “direction toward.” Directive *hey* is not accented and is thus distinguished from הַ = the feminine ending.

“to the land” אֶרֶץ (אֶרֶץ) אֶרֶץ

“to the house” הַבַּיִת (הַבַּיִת) הַבַּיִת

“to the city” הָעִיר (הָעִיר) הָעִיר

Vocabulary

be good	יָטַב	83	animal, cattle	בְּהֵמָה	413
give birth	יָלַד	8	herd	בָּקָר	493
form, create	יָצַר	156	bull	פָּר	542
fear, be afraid	יָרָא	38	flock	צֹאן	479
inherit	יָרַשׁ	40	be dry, wither	יָבֵשׁ	152

Note:

- Hebrew **בָּקָר** is used for large animals such as cows or oxen, and **צֹאן** is used for small animals such as sheep and goats. If **בְּהֵמָה** is used in contrast to **בָּקָר**, then **בְּהֵמָה** refers to wild animals, in contrast to domesticated animals.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on attributive demonstrative pronouns. Translate the following phrases.

1. הַפֶּה הַזֶּה .2. הַמְשֻׁפָּחָה הַזֹּאת .3. הָאֵיבִים הָאֵלֶּה
 4. הָרֹאשׁ הַהוּא .5. הַבֵּת הַהִיא .6. הָעֶבְרִים הָהֵם
 7. הַתּוֹרָה הַזֹּאת .8. הַבֵּן הַהוּא .9. הַלֶּחֶם הַזֶּה
 10. הַמְלַחְמוֹת הָאֵלֶּה .11. הָאֲנָשִׁים הַטּוֹבִים הָהֵם .12. הָרֶגֶל הַטְּמֵאָה הַהִיא

B. Focus on predicate demonstrative pronouns. Translate the following sentences.

1. זֶה הַבַּיִת .2. זֹאת הָאִשָּׁה .3. אֵלֶּה הַדְּבָרִים
 4. הוּא הַדְּרֹךְ .5. הִיא הַמְלָכוֹת .6. הֵם הַסְּפָרִים
 7. זֹאת הָאָרֶץ .8. אֵלֶּה הַנָּשִׁים .9. זֶה הַמְּלֶךְ

C. Focus on the difference between the attributive and predicate demonstrative pronouns. Read the following lines, then indicate the use (*a* for attributive or *p* for predicate), gender, and number.

Use	Gender	Number	
a	f	s	1. הָאִשָּׁה הַזֹּאת
			2. זֶה הָאָדָם
			3. הַמְזֻבָּח הַזֶּה
			4. הַבֵּת הַהִיא

			5. אֱלֹהֵי הָאֱלֹהִים
			6. הַבְּגָדִים הָהֵם
			7. הָרֹאשׁ הַזֶּה
			8. זֹאת הַמְּלָכוֹת
			9. הָאֵהָל הַהוּא
			10. הָאֲרָצוֹת הָאֵלֶּה

D. Focus on the relative pronoun. Translate the following.

1. הַמֶּלֶךְ אֲשֶׁר מֶלֶךְ .2. הָאִשָּׁה אֲשֶׁר שְׁלָחָה .3. הַנְּבִיאִים אֲשֶׁר אָמְרוּ
 4. הַכֶּסֶף אֲשֶׁר בַּבַּיִת .5. מְקוֹמוֹת אֲשֶׁר יָשַׁב .6. הַזֶּהָב אֲשֶׁר לְקַח
 7. זְבָחִים אֲשֶׁר עַל־מִזְבֵּחַ .8. הַלֶּחֶם אֲשֶׁר אָכַל .9. בָּנִים אֲשֶׁר יִצְאוּ

Reviewing Previous Lessons

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. שָׁמְרֶתֶם						
2. בְּנִיתִי						
3. יָפַל						
4. תַּעֲלֶה						
5. יִגְעוּ						
6. כָּלִינוּ						
7. חֲטַאתֶם						
8. אָגְלָה						
9. יִשָּׂא						
10. גָּאֲלָה						

F. Focus on weak verbs. Translate the following.

1. כָּבוּ הַנְּעָרִים .2. אָרְאָה אֶת־הָאִיִּב .3. קָרְאתְ אֶת־הַתּוֹרָה
 4. בְּנִיתֶם בַּיִת .5. יָסַע הָעָם .6. נִמְצָא אָב

7. יפל האח .8. ישאו לחם .9. נכלה
10. תעשו מזבח .11. יצאתם .12. הטאתי

Putting It All Together

G. Translate the following.

	1. בנו האב והבן את הבית הזה
1. The father and the son built this house.	2. לא תגע את זבחי אשר על המזבח
2. You (ms) will not touch my sacrifice which is on the altar.	3. מצאתי את הכסף אשר במקום ההוא
3. I found the silver which was in that place.	4. קרא נביא יהוה בקול גדול
4. The prophet of the LORD called out with a loud voice.	5. בעת ההיא תדרש את האלהים החיים בכל לבך ובכל נפשך
5. At that time, you (ms) will seek the living God with all your heart and with all your soul.	6. חזקים עבדי המלך מעבדי הכהן
6. The king's servants are stronger than the priest's servants.	7. לא עבר עמי הקדוש את בריתי
7. My holy people did not break my covenant.	8. זה זהב אמנו אשר נתנה לאדונה
8. This is our mother's gold, which she gave to her lord.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

H. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

1. זה היום אשר נתן יהוה את־סיסרא^a (Sisera) בַּיַדְךָ Judges 4:14
2. ביום ההוא כרת יהוה את־אברם (with Abram) ברית Genesis 15:18
3. זאת בריתי אשר תשמרו Genesis 17:10

^aAt times, ךְ replaces the expected vocalization of the 2ms suffix (ךְּ).

18

QAL IMPERFECT: I YOD AND I ALEF

I Yod Verbs: Imperfect

- 17.1** I Yod verbs in Biblical Hebrew are placed in two groups: I Yod (Yod) and I Yod (Vav). I Yod (Yod) verbs have always had *yod* as the first root letter. I Yod (Vav) verbs at one time began with a *vav*. (This original *vav* will reappear in forms to be learned later.)

I Yod (Yod)

- 17.2** These forms follow the standard paradigm, except that (1) the *sheva* (◌ְ) expected under the first root letter is lost and (2) the theme vowel is *patach*.

I Yod (Yod)	Strong	
יִיטַב	יִקְטֹל	3ms
תִּיטַב	תִּקְטֹל	3fs
תִּיטַב	תִּקְטֹל	2ms
תִּיטַבִּי	תִּקְטֹלִי	2fs
אִיטַב	אִקְטֹל	1cs
יִיטְבוּ	יִקְטֹלוּ	3mp
תִּיטְבֶּנָּה	תִּקְטֹלְנָה	3fp
תִּיטְבוּ	תִּקְטֹלוּ	2mp
תִּיטְבֶּנָּה	תִּקְטֹלְנָה	2fp
נִיטַב	נִקְטֹל	1cp

I Yod (Vav)

- 17.3** These forms will vary from the standard paradigm in three ways: (1) the *yod* of the root is lost, (2) the vowel under the prefix is lengthened from short *chireq* (◌ִ) to medium *tsere* (◌ֵ) because it is now in an open syllable and unaccented (see “Short vowels,” p. 43), and (3) the theme vowel is *tsere* (◌ֵ).

I Yod (Vav)	Strong	
יֵשֵׁב	יֵקַטֵּל	3ms
תֵּשֵׁב	תֵּקַטֵּל	3fs
תֵּשְׁב	תֵּקַטֵּל	2ms
תֵּשְׁבִי	תֵּקַטֵּלִי	2fs
אֵשֵׁב	אֵקַטֵּל	1cs
יֵשְׁבוּ	יֵקַטֵּלוּ	3mp
תֵּשְׁבֶנָּה	תֵּקַטֵּלְנָה	3fp
תֵּשְׁבוּ	תֵּקַטֵּלוּ	2mp
תֵּשְׁבֶנָּה	תֵּקַטֵּלְנָה	2fp
גֵּשֵׁב	גֵּקַטֵּל	1cp

The verb *הֵלֵךְ* follows the I Yod (Vav) paradigm in the imperfect > *יֵלֵךְ*, etc. The verb *נָתַן* also has *tsere* as the theme vowel > *יֵתֵן*, etc. Note also that in the *pf* of *נָתַן* the final nun (ן) assimilates to the tav (ת) of the suffix, so *נָתַתָּה* > *נָתַתָּה*. Similarly, in verbs like *כָּרַת* the tav of the root assimilates to the tav of the suffix, so *כָּרַתָּה* > *כָּרַתָּה*.

I Alef Verbs: Imperfect

- 17.4** There are five I Alef verbs that do not follow the I Guttural paradigm but form a paradigm of their own, with three characteristics: (1) the *alef* is silent and therefore has no *sheva* (◌ֶ) under it, (2) the vowel of the prefix is *cholem* (◌ֹ), and (3) the theme vowel is *patach* (◌ֶ).

I Alef	Strong	
יאמר	יקטל	3ms
תאמר	תקטל	3fs
תאמר	תקטל	2ms
תאמרי	תקטלי	2fs
אמר	אקטל	1cs

יאמרו	יקטלו	3mp
תאמרנה	תקטלנה	3fp
תאמרו	תקטלו	2mp
תאמרנה	תקטלנה	2fp
נאמר	נקטל	1cp

Notes:

- In the *1cs* form, the *alef* of the root is lost.
- The other verbs in this group are אכל “eat” (which you have learned), and אבד “perish,” אבה “be willing,” and אפה “bake” (which you have not learned). (“Once upon a time, an old king *said*, ‘I will certainly *perish* if I am not *willing* to *eat* this cake which my wife has *baked* for me.’”)

Vocabulary

breath, wind, spirit <i>f</i>	רוח	440	nation, Gentile	גוי	416
perish	אבד	64	blood	דם	417
be willing, want	אבה	124	mountain, hill country	הר	383
be, happen	היה	5	sea	ים	422
be alive, live	חיה	35	army	צבא	438

Note:

- The noun גוי is usually used in reference to non-Israelite nations, while Israel is usually referred to with עם.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on weak roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יִרְשׁ						
2. יִלְד						
3. יֵאָכַל						
4. יִבְשׁוּ						
5. אֵלֶּךָ						
6. נָתַתִּי						
7. כָּרְתֶם						
8. נִצָּא						
9. תִּירָא						
10. יִתֵּן						

B. Focus on weak roots. Translate the following.

1. יֹאמְרוּ .2. תִּשָּׁב .3. יִדַּע .4. נָתַתִּי .5. יִירָא
 6. אִירְשׁ .7. יִצָּאוּ .8. תִּירָאוּ .9. תִּיבְשִׁי .10. אֵלֶּךָ
 11. כָּרְתוּ .12. תֵּאָכַל .13. נָתַתֶּם .14. אִמְרוּ .15. תִּתֵּן

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on possessive suffixes. Translate the following and indicate the person, gender, and number of the suffix.

Person	Gender	Number	
1	c	s	1. מְלִכִּי
			2. מְלִכּוֹ
			3. מְלִכָּהּ
			4. מְלִכְנּוֹ

			5.	מְלַכְּם
			6.	מְלַכְּךָ
			7.	מְלַכְּכֶם
			8.	מְלַכְּךָ
			9.	מְלַכְּכֶן
			10.	מְלַכְּן

D. Focus on possessive suffixes. Translate the following.

1. מְשַׁפְּטוּ .2. אֵלַי .3. דְּבַרְהָא .4. תּוֹרַתְךָ .5. סִפְרֵנוּ
 6. מְשַׁפְּחָתֶם .7. לְבוֹ .8. עִמּוֹ .9. זְהַבְנוּ .10. בֵּיתְכֶם
 11. נִפְשָׁה .12. עִתָּם .13. עֵינַי .14. בְּקִרְךָ .15. עִירְנוּ

Putting It All Together

E. Translate the following.

	1.	זֶה הַיּוֹם אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה יְהוָה
1. This is the day that the LORD has made.	2.	נָתַתְּ סִפְרֵי לְאֲדוֹן־הַבַּיִת
2. You (<i>ms</i>) gave my book to the master of the house.	3.	יִירָאוּ עַבְדֵי מְלַכְּכֶם הַחֲכָמִים אֶת־יְהוָה
3. Your (<i>mp</i>) king's wise servants will fear the LORD.	4.	יֵצְאוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֵלֶּה מֵעִיר־הַמֶּלֶךְ הַגָּדוֹל
4. These men will go out from the great king's city.	5.	יִשְׂרִים דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיא הַהוּא מִדְּבָרֵי הָאִישׁ הַרָשָׁע
5. The words of that prophet are more correct than the words of the wicked man.	6.	אֲשׁב בְּבַיִת יְהוָה לְעוֹלָם
6. I will live in the house of the LORD forever.	7.	נִקַּח אֶת־זֶהב הָעַם הַחֲזֹק הַזֶּה אֶל־אֶהְלֵנוּ

7. We will take the gold of this strong people to our tent.	8. תִּלְדֹּ אִשָּׁה בָּנִים וּבָנוֹת
8. A woman will bear sons and daughters.	9. תִּלְךְ בְּדֶרֶךְ־הַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרַתִּי בְּאָבִיךָ
9. You will walk in the way of the covenant which I made with your father.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

F. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- | | |
|-------------------|--|
| Psalms 26:5 | 1. וְעַם רְשָׁעִים לֹא אֲשׁוּב |
| Deuteronomy 22:16 | 2. אֶת־בְּתִילִי נָתַתִּי לְאִישׁ הַזֶּה |
| Psalms 56:5 | 3. בְּאֱלֹהִים בְּטַחַתִּי לֹא אִירָא |
| Isaiah 52:6 | 4. יִדַע עַמִּי שְׂמִי ^a |

^aBecause שְׂמִי is definite, due to the possessive suffix, you would expect אֶת־ to precede, but the direct object marker is often omitted in poetic texts such as this one.

19

POSSESSIVE SUFFIXES ON PLURAL NOUNS

Possessive Suffixes on Plural Nouns

19.1 In Lesson 16, you learned that Hebrew expresses “my horse,” etc., by adding possessive *suffixes to a singular noun*. In this lesson you learn how Hebrew expresses “my horses,” etc., by adding related *suffixes to plural nouns*.

Form of the Suffixes

		Plural	Singular
“his horses”	3ms	סוּסָיו	סוּסוֹ
“her horses”	3fs	סוּסֶיהָ	סוּסֶיהָ
“your horses”	2ms	סוּסֵיךָ	סוּסְךָ
“your horses”	2fs	סוּסֵיךְ	סוּסְךָ
“my horses”	1cs	סוּסַי	סוּסִי
“their horses”	3mp	סוּסֵיהֶם	סוּסָם
“their horses”	3fp	סוּסֵיהֶן	סוּסָן
“your horses”	2mp	סוּסֵיכֶם	סוּסְכֶם
“your horses”	2fp	סוּסֵיכֶן	סוּסְכֶן
“our horses”	1cp	סוּסֵינוּ	סוּסָנוּ

➤ Vocabulary Cards ##960–965

Notes:

- The most significant difference between the suffixes on singular nouns and the suffixes on plural nouns is the consistent presence of the *yod* (ך), which is actually the *yod* of the *mp* construct.

- The *yod* (ך) is silent in the 3ms suffix, so the suffix is pronounced *av*, as in lava.

Form of Feminine Plural Nouns before the Suffixes

19.2 The same set of suffixes is added to the *fp* form of the noun.

“his mares”	3ms	סוסותיו	=	יוַ	+	סוסות
“her mares”	3fs	סוסותיה	=	יהַ	+	סוסות
“your mares”	2ms	סוסותיך	=	ךַ	+	סוסות
“your mares”	2fs	סוסותיך	=	ךַ	+	סוסות
“my mares”	1cs	סוסותי	=	יַ	+	סוסות

“their mares”	3mp	סוסותיהם	=	יהֶם	+	סוסות
“their mares”	3fp	סוסותיהן	=	יהֶן	+	סוסות
“your mares”	2mp	סוסותיכם	=	יכם	+	סוסות
“your mares”	2fp	סוסותיכן	=	יכן	+	סוסות
“our mares”	1cp	סוסותינו	=	ינו	+	סוסות

➤ Vocabulary Cards ##973–978

The Verb “To Be Able” (יכל)

Imperfect	Perfect	
יִכַּל	יָכַל	3ms
תִּכַּל	יָכַלָּה	3fs
תִּכַּל	יָכַלְתָּ	2ms
תִּכַּלִּי	יָכַלְתְּ	2fs
אוּכַל	יָכַלְתִּי	1cs

יִכְלוּ	יָכְלוּ	3c/mp
תִּכְלְנָה		3fp
תִּכְלוּ	יָכְלֶתֶם	2mp
תִּכְלְנָה	יָכְלֶתֶן	2fp
נוּכַל	יָכְלָנוּ	1cp

Notes:

- The *pf* varies from the standard paradigm only in that the theme vowel is *cholem* (ך), which is true of several other stative verbs. The ך in the 2*m/fp* is *qamets chatuf*.
- The *impf* varies from the standard paradigm in that (1) the vowel of the prefix is *shureq* (ך), (2) the *yod* (ך) of the root is lost, and (3) the theme vowel is *patach* (ך), which is characteristic of stative verbs (see Lesson 11).

Vocabulary

because, that	כי	911	then	אז	873
unless, except	כי־אם	912	if	אם	884
therefore	לכן	919	so that not	בלתי	897
in order to	למען (למען)	921	also, even	גם	900
so that not	כִּן	946	thus	כה	910

Practice

Focusing on New Material

- A. Focus on words with possessive suffixes.** Match the form with the possessive suffix of the right hand column with the corresponding absolute singular form of the left hand column.

א. ספר	_____	1. קולותינו
ב. עיר	_____	2. תורותיה
ג. קול	_____	3. אדוני
ד. משפט	_____	4. כספיהם
ה. שנה	_____	5. לבותיהם
ו. תורה	_____	6. ספריה
ז. אדון	_____	7. דבריו
ח. לב	_____	8. משפטיה
ט. כסף	_____	9. עריכה
י. דבר	_____	10. שנותיה

B. Focus on words with possessive suffixes. Translate the following words with possessive suffixes.

1. סוֹטָיו .2. סוֹטֵיכֶם .3. סוֹטֵינוּ .4. סוֹטֵיהֶם
 5. סוֹטֵיךָ .6. סוֹטֵי .7. סוֹטֵיךָ .8. סוֹטֵיהָ
 9. עֲבָדֵיכֶם .10. נִפְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם .11. זָהָבֵינוּ .12. דְּבָרָיו
 13. מִשְׁפָּטֶיךָ .14. אָבוֹתֶיךָ .15. מְקוֹמוֹתַי .16. יָדָיו

C. Focus on words with possessive suffixes. Translate the following.

	1. בְּנִיתִי אֶת־מִזְבְּחוֹתֶיךָ
1. I built your altars.	2. נָתַנוּ אָבוֹתֵינוּ אֶת הַכֶּסֶף
2. Our fathers gave the money.	3. דְּרָשְׁתֶּם לֵאלֹהִים בְּכָל־לְבוֹתֵיכֶם
3. You (<i>mp</i>) sought for God with all your hearts.	4. לָקַחוּ אֶת־הַזָּהָב אֶל־עָרֵיהֶם
4. They took the gold to their cities.	5. הִלַּכְתֶּן לְדַרְכֵיכֶן הַרְשָׁעִים
5. You (<i>fp</i>) went on your wicked ways. (הֵלֵךְ + לְ = “go on”)	6. רָאִינוּ אֶת סִפְרֵיהָ
6. We saw her books.	

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. גָּאֵלוּ						
2. תַּעֲמַד						
3. אָשָׂא						
4. בְּכִיתֶם						
5. יוֹכֵל						
6. נֹאמַר						
7. תַּעֲשׂוּ						
8. כָּבַד						

9.	יְכַלְתָּ					
10.	תִּשְׁבִי					

E. Focus on weak roots. Translate the following.

1. בְּרֵאתִי 2. יִגְעוּ 3. לֹא עֲשִׂיתֶם 4. גִּדַע
5. בְּנִינוּ 6. תֹאכַל 7. לֹא יַעֲלֶה 8. תִּשָּׂא
9. יֹאמְרוּ 10. לֹא אֵלֶּד 11. לֹא נִתְתָּם 12. נוֹכַל
13. יִבְכֶּה 14. לֹא נִירָא 15. בְּרָא

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following:

	1.	יֵצְאוּ צְבָאוֹתֵינוּ לְמִלְחָמָה הַגְּדוֹלָה
1. Our armies will go out to the great battle.	2.	נִעְלֶה בְּהַר־יְהוָה וּבְמִקְוֹם קִדְשׁוֹ נִשְׁב
2. We will go up into the mountain of the LORD, and we will live in his holy place.	3.	בְּרֵאשִׁית בְּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם וְאֶת הָאָרֶץ וְאֶת הַבְּהֵמָה
3. In the beginning God created the heavens, the earth, humanity, and the animals.	4.	לֹא אִירָא אֶת־אִיבִי
4. I will not fear my enemies.	5.	תִּירַשׁ בְּקָר רַב וְצֹאן רַב מֵאֲבִיךָ
5. You will inherit many cattle/herds and sheep/flocks from your father.	6.	אֵלֶּה כְּהֹנִיף הַקְּדוֹשִׁים אֲשֶׁר קָרָאוּ בְּסֵפֶר הַתּוֹרָה
6. These are your holy priests who read in the Book of the Law.	7.	הַגְּאֲנָשִׁים הַרְשָׁעִים הֵם יִרְדּוּ אֶל־הַיָּם
7. Those wicked men will go down to the sea.	8.	רְאִיתֶם בְּעֵינֵיכֶם וּשְׁמַעְתֶּם בְּאָזְנֵיכֶם
8. You saw with your eyes and heard with your ears.		

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| 1 Kings 8:48 | וְהִבִּית אֲשֶׁר בָּנִיתִי לְשִׁמּוֹךְ .1 |
| Psalms 18:39 | יִפְלוּ תַחַת רַגְלִי .2 |
| Genesis 32:31 | רָאִיתִי אֱלֹהִים פָּנִים אֶל-פָּנִים .3 |

20

THE VERB: QAL INFINITIVES

Infinitives

- 20.1** Hebrew has two infinitives: “infinitive construct” and “infinitive absolute.” Infinitives are “infinite” conjugations in that they are not marked for person, gender, or number as are, for example, the *pf* and *impf*, which are finite conjugations (see Conjugations, Lesson 6).
- 20.2** Of the two Hebrew infinitives, the infinitive construct is closer to the English infinitive, as in, “He wanted *to run*.”

Infinitive Construct

The infinitive construct is abbreviated inf const.

Form of the Infinitive Construct

- 20.3** The standard form of the qal *inf const* is קָטַל. This form is related to the *impf*. Remove the prefix, and the *inf const* is what remains.

Inf const	Impf
קָטַל	יְקַטֵּל

- 20.4** If the *impf* has a *patach* (◻) as in יְקַבֵּד, then the *inf const* has a *patach* as in קַבֵּד.
- 20.5** An *inf const* may have a pronoun suffix added.
- The suffixes added are the same as those added to singular nouns.
 - When a suffix is added, the vowels change, because the accent is on the added syllable > קָטַלוּ, קָטַלְהוּ, קָטַלְיָהוּ, etc. The ◻ is *qamets chatuf*.

20.6 Weak roots have altered forms of the *inf const*.

with suffix	Inf const	Root	Weakness
עָמְדוּ	עָמַד	עמד	I Guttural

- Chatef-patach (◌ִ) in place of sheva (◌ְ).

שָׁמְעוּ	שָׁמַע	שמע	III Guttural
----------	--------	-----	--------------

- Furtive patach under the final guttural.

שָׁבְתוּ	שָׁבַת	ישב	I Yod (Vav)
----------	--------	-----	-------------

- As in the *impf*, the yod (י) is lost; a feminine tav (ת) is added to compensate, creating the appearance of three root letters.

נָפְלוּ	נָפַל	נפל	I Nun
---------	-------	-----	-------

- Usually the *inf const* of I Nun verbs is regular.

נָשְׁתוּ	נָשַׁת	נגש	I Nun
----------	--------	-----	-------

- In some I Nun verbs the *inf const* follows the paradigm of the I Yod (Vav) verbs.

גָּלוּתוּ	גָּלוּת	גלה	III Hey
-----------	---------	-----	---------

- The *inf const* of III Hey verbs is characterized by the וֹת ending.

The *inf const* of יִצְאֻ is יִצְאָת, with a silent alef (א); with the suffix, יִצְאוּ. Because הִלְךְ follows the I Yod (Vav) paradigm in the *impf*, the *inf const* of הִלְךְ is לִכְתּוּ; with the suffix, לִכְתּוּ. The *inf const* of נִתַּן follows the I Yod (Vav) paradigm, but the final nun (ן) of the root is assimilated to the added tav (ת), resulting in נִתַּת; with the suffix, נִתַּתוּ. The *inf const* of לָקַח follows the paradigm of the I Nun verbs that lose the nun (ן), resulting in קַחַת; with the suffix, קַחַתוּ.

Use of the Infinitive Construct

20.7 The *inf const* has numerous uses. Several of the the most frequent are introduced in this lesson.

20.8 With the preposition לְ

► In these cases, the suffix is the object of the *inf const*.

- Verbal complement. The *inf const* is often used to “fill in” the specifics of a verb having a general meaning.

“He is able to judge.” יָכַל לְשַׁפֵּט

“He wants to judge.” אָבָה לְשַׁפֵּט

“He is afraid to judge you.” יָרָא לְשַׁפֵּטְךָ

- Purpose. The *inf const* is used to express purpose.

“He sat down to read.” יָשַׁב לְקֵרֵא

“He went up to sacrifice.” עָלָה לְזַבֵּחַ

“He went down to find her.” יָרַד לְמַצְאָהּ

- The *inf const* is negated by בְּלִיתִי. The לְ is usually placed on the front of בְּלִיתִי.

לְבִלְתִּי מִלְךְ עַל־הָעִיר

“so as not to reign over the city”

לְבִלְתִּי שָׁמַעַ אֶת־הַדְּבָרִים

“so as not to hear the words”

לְבִלְתִּי רְאוֹתוֹ

“so as not to see him”

20.9 With the prepositions בְּ and כִּ

► In these cases, the suffix is the subject of the *inf const*.

- Temporal. The *inf const* is used with the prepositions בְּ and כִּ in temporal clauses. The tense required for translation into English is determined by the context.

“when the king reigned” בְּמִלְךְ הַמֶּלֶךְ

“when the woman wrote” כִּכְתַּב הָאִשָּׁה

“when we guarded” בְּשִׁמְרָנוּ

20.10 With time words like יוֹם

- Temporal. The *inf const* is used with time words in temporal clauses.

בְּיוֹם מִלְךְ הַמֶּלֶךְ

“(in the day) when the king reigned”

בְּיוֹם כְּתַב הָאִשָּׁה

“(in the day) when the woman wrote”

בְּיוֹם שְׁמֵרָנוּ

“(in the day) when we guarded”

Infinitive Absolute

The infinitive absolute is abbreviated *inf abs*.

Form of the Infinitive Absolute

20.11 The standard form of the qal *inf abs* is קָטוּל. Note the differences between the *inf abs* and the *inf const*: the *inf abs* has (1) a *qamets* (ֻ) under the first root letter, and (2) a *cholem-vav* (וֹ) as the second vowel.

Inf abs	Inf const
קָטוּל	קָטַל

► In spite of their respective names and vocalizations, the *inf const* is not the construct form of the *inf abs*; the two forms are unrelated historically.

20.12 III Hey verbs (and Hollow verbs; see Lesson 25) vary from the standard paradigm in the qal *inf abs*.

III Hey	Strong
קָטַו / קָטוּה	קָטוּל

Use of the Infinitive Absolute

20.13 The *inf abs* has numerous uses. One of the the most frequent is introduced in this lesson.

► **Emphasis.** An *inf abs* is placed before another form of the verb from the same root to emphasize the kind of action in view.

“You will certainly guard. . . .” שְׁמוֹר תִּשְׁמֹר

“They will certainly give. . . .” נָתַן יִתְּנוּ

“We will certainly dwell. . . .” יָשׁוּב נִשְׁבּוּ

Vocabulary

until, as far as	עַד	939	ground, land	אֲדָמָה	448
love	אָהַב	27	light	אֹר	487
pour out	יָצַק	155	between	בֵּין	893
hate, be an enemy	שָׂנֵא	110	loyalty	חֶסֶד (חֶסֶד)	463
pour out, shed	שָׁפַךְ	122	darkness	חֹשֶׁךְ (חֹשֶׁךְ)	625

Note:

- The preposition בֵּין is used before both nouns that it governs, for example, בֵּין אִישׁ וּבֵין אִשָּׁה (“between a man and a woman”).

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the forms of the *inf const.* Write the root of each *inf const.*

_____	שָׁמַע	.2	_____	קָטַל	.1
_____	שָׁבַת	.4	_____	עָמַד	.3
_____	לָדַת	.6	_____	גָּלוּת	.5
_____	דָּעַת	.8	_____	שָׁלַח	.7
_____	בָּכַת	.10	_____	בָּנוּת	.9
_____	לָכַת	.12	_____	רָדַת	.11
_____	צָאָת	.14	_____	תָּת	.13

B. Focus on the use of the *inf const.* Translate the following phrases.

לְמַלְךְ .4	לְזִבְחַ .3	לְזִכָּר .2	לְכַתֵּב .1
בְּדַעְתּוֹ .8	בְּרִדְתּוֹ .7	לְלִדְתּוֹ .6	לְשִׁבְתּוֹ .5
לְעִשׂוֹתוֹ .12	לְרִאוֹתוֹ .11	כְּגִלוֹתוֹ .10	כְּבִנוֹתוֹ .9
בְּקִחְתּוֹ .16	כְּצִאָתוֹ .15	לְלִכְתּוֹ .14	לְתִתּוֹ .13

C. Focus on the use of the *inf abs.* Translate the following phrases.

- | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| זָכוֹר תִּזְכֹּר .3 | שְׁלוּחַ תִּשְׁלַח .2 | שָׁמוֹר תִּשְׁמֹר .1 |
| יָדוּעַ תִּדְעַע .6 | יָשׁוּב תִּשָּׁב .5 | הִלּוּךְ תִּלְךְ .4 |
| כָּלָה תִּכְלֶה .9 | בָּכָה תִּבְכֶּה .8 | בָּנָה תִּבְנֶה .7 |
| עָלָה תִּעָלֶה .12 | יָצָא תִּצָּא .11 | נָתַן תִּתֵּן .10 |

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on the use of adjectives. Translate the following phrases and sentences and fill in the blanks for use of adjective (*a* for attributive and *p* for predicative) and for gender and number.

Use	Gender	Number	
a	f	s	1. הָאִשָּׁה הַטּוֹבָה
			2. יֵשֶׁר הָאָדָם
			3. הַמְזַבֵּחַ הַטָּהוֹר
			4. הַבַּת הַטּוֹבָה
			5. טְמֵאִים הָאֱלִים
			6. הָאֱלֹהִים הַחַיִּים
			7. גְּדוֹלִים הַבְּגָדִים
			8. רְשָׁעָה הַמְלָכּוֹת
			9. לֵב חָכָם
			10. הָאֲרָצוֹת הַרְבוֹת

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. קָטַל						
2. אָבַדְתִּי						
3. אָכַתַּב						
4. יָרַד						

5.	שָׁבַת					
6.	נִרְאָה					
7.	גָּלוּת					
8.	אָמַר					
9.	לָקַח					
10.	תָּת					

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

	1.	יִכְלֹתִי לִקְרֹא אֶת־הַסֵּפֶר הַקִּדוֹשׁ
1. I am able to read the holy book. (Stative verbs are present tense.)	2.	יֵאָבֵה לְלָקַח אֶל־בַּיִת־אָבִיךָ
2. He will be willing to go to your father's house.	3.	יִרְאֲנוּ לָעֵבֶר אֶת־תּוֹרַת יְהוָה כִּי יִשְׁפֹּט אֶת־כָּל־עַבְדָּיו
3. We are afraid (stative) to transgress the law of the LORD, because he will judge all his servants.	4.	אָמְרוּ כִּי חָטְאתֶם כִּי לֹא שָׁמַרְתֶּם אֶת־הַבְּרִית
4. They said that you sinned, because you did not keep the covenant.	5.	נִצָּא מִן־הָעִיר לְשִׁמֵּעַ אֶל־הַנָּבִיא אֲשֶׁר דִּרַשׁ אֶת־יְהוָה
5. We will go out of the city to listen to the prophet who sought the LORD.	6.	זָכוּחַ תִּזְבַּח זְבָחִים טְהוֹרִים לְפָנַי יְהוָה כִּי קָדוֹשׁ הוּא
6. You will certainly offer pure sacrifices before the LORD, because he is holy.	7.	בְּשִׂכְבְּכֶם בְּלִילָה לֹא יִירָאוּ כִּי אֱלֹהֵיהֶם יִשְׁמַר אֶת־נַפְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם
7. When they lie down at night, they will not be afraid, because their God will guard their souls.	8.	נִעְבֹּד אֶת־יְהוָה צָבָאוֹת כָּל־יְמֵי־חַיֵּינוּ כִּי טוֹב הוּא
8. We will serve the LORD of Hosts all the days of our life, because he is good.		

21

THE VERB: QAL ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

Participles

- 21.1** As in English, there are two participles in Hebrew: “active” and “passive.” In this lesson you are learning the active participle. English active participles are formed with /ing/, for example, “he is *walking*,” “they are *giving*,” and so on.
- 21.2** Hebrew participles are “non-finite” verbs, because they are marked for gender and number but not for person.

The active participle is abbreviated ptc.

Form of the Active Participle

	Plural	Singular
Masculine	קְטָלִים	קָטַל
Feminine	קְטָלוֹת	קְטָלָה (קְטָלְתָּ) קָטַלְתָּ

- 21.3** The *ptc* is declined like the adjective (see p. 56). The *fs* has two forms, but קְטָלְתָּ is the more frequent.
- 21.4** The first vowel of a *ptc* may be either *cholem* (◌ֹ) or *cholem-vav* (◌וֹ). The spelling with *cholem-vav* (◌וֹ) is “correct”; the spelling with *cholem* (◌ֹ) is more frequent, but “defective.”

Defective spelling. When a word should be spelled with a long vowel, a vowel that has a vowel letter, but is spelled without the vowel letter, the word is spelled *defectively*, for example, *cholem* (ךּ) for *cholem-vav* (ךּוּ), *chireq* (ךּ) for *chireq-yod* (ךּי), or *qib-but* (ךּ) for *shureq* (ךּוּ). The *qal ptc* is an example of defective spelling: (1) *Cholem-vav* is a long “a”-class vowel, but *cholem* is a medium “u”-class vowel. (2) From a comparison with other related languages, we know that the first vowel of the *qal ptc* is a long “a”-class vowel, and should therefore be spelled with *cholem-vav* (ךּוּ). (3) The *qal ptc* is usually spelled with *cholem* (ךּ), and is therefore spelled defectively. Other examples of defective spelling are לֹא for לוֹא and נְבִיאִים for נְבִיאִים.

- 21.5** The *qal ptc* of weak roots varies from the standard paradigm. The following are the key variations.

	III Hey	III Alef	III Guttural
<i>ms</i>	גְּלָה	מְצָא	שְׁמַעַ
<i>fs</i>	גְּלָה	מְצָאת	שְׁמַעַת
<i>mp</i>	גְּלִים	מְצָאִים	שְׁמַעִים
<i>fp</i>	גְּלוֹת	מְצָאוֹת	שְׁמַעוֹת

Use of the Active Participle

- 21.6** Kind of action and time of action.

- The *ptc* expresses continuing action.

“writing” כְּתֹב

“sitting” יֹשֵׁב

“walking” הֹלֵךְ

- No tense is indicated by the *ptc*; tense is determined by context.
- Action “about to” take place soon (imminent future) can be expressed by the particle הֵנִיחָהּ plus the *ptc*.

“I am about to judge” הֵנִיחָהּ אֲנִי שֹׁפֵט

“I am about to walk” הֵנִיחָהּ אֲנִי הֹלֵךְ

21.7 Three uses. The *ptc* has the same three uses as the adjective: “attributive,” “predicate,” and “substantive” (see Lesson 10).

- ▶ An attributive *ptc* must agree in gender, number, and definiteness, and follow the noun it describes. Such constructions will usually be definite and are best translated with “who.”

“the man *who is writing*” הָאִישׁ הַכּוֹתֵב

“the woman *who is sitting*” הָאִשָּׁה הַיֹּשֶׁבֶת

“the men *who are walking*” הָאֲנָשִׁים הַהֹלְכִים

- ▶ This use of the *ptc* with the definite article is equal to the use of a *pf* or *impf* with the relative pronoun (אֲשֶׁר).
- ▶ A predicate *ptc* must agree in gender and number but does not have the definite article and usually follows the noun it describes. [Remember, however, that the predicate adjective tends to come before the noun it describes.]

“The man *is writing* the book.” הָאִישׁ כּוֹתֵב אֶת-הַסֵּפֶר

“The woman *is sitting* in the city.” הָאִשָּׁה יֹשֶׁבֶת בְּעִיר

“The men *are walking* to the city.” הָאֲנָשִׁים הֹלְכִים אֶל-הָעִיר

- ▶ A substantive *ptc* is used as a noun.

“a guard” שָׁמַר

“a judge” שֹׁפֵט

“the inhabitant” הַיֹּשֵׁב

- ▶ Some participles are used as substantives so frequently that they are listed as nouns in the dictionaries. You have already learned two such nouns, אֹיֵב (“enemy”) and כֹּהֵן (“priest”).

21.8 Two states. The *ptc* is used in the *cs* as well as the *abs* state.

“the guardian of the covenant” שָׁמַר-הַבְּרִית

“the judge of the wicked” שֹׁפֵט-הָרְשָׁעִים

“the inhabitants of the city” יֹשְׁבֵי הָעִיר

21.9 With suffixes. The *ptc* can take pronoun suffixes.

- ▶ The suffix is usually the object of the verb.

“all who find me” כָּל-מֹצְאֵי

“those who know him” יֹדְעֵיו

Vocabulary

there	שָׁם	950	mighty man	גִּבּוֹר	494
imprison	אָסַר	126	generation	דּוֹר	495
camp	חֵנֶה	79	wall	חוֹמָה	498
be hot, angry	חָרָה	147	heat, anger	חֶמֶה	502
capture	לָכַד	90	now	עַתָּה	944

Note:

- An idiom for anger in Hebrew is חָרָה אָף. The literal translation of חָרָה אָפוֹ is “his nose was hot,” which is idiomatically translated “he was angry.” A related idiom is אָרְךָ אֶפְסִים “length of nose” > “it takes a long time for one’s nose to get hot” > “patient.”

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of the active participle. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כָּרַת						
2. הִלְכָת						
3. עִבְרִים						
4. שְׁלָחוֹת						
5. שׁוֹלַח						
6. נִשְׂאָת						
7. בּוֹנִים						
8. בָּכָה						
9. גּוֹלוֹת						
10. רֹאֶה						

B. Focus on the use of the active participle. Translate the following (present progressive is fine, since there is no context) and indicate the use (a for attributive, p for predicate, or s for substantive).

Use	
a	1. המְלֶךְ הַיּוֹשֵׁב
	2. המְלֶךְ יוֹשֵׁב
	3. יוֹשְׁבֵי הָעִיר
	4. אֲנַחְנוּ אוֹכְלִים
	5. הִנֵּה אֲנַחְנוּ אוֹכְלִים
	6. הַעֲבָדִים בְּנִים
	7. הַעֲבָדִים הַבְּנִים
	8. הָאִם בָּכָה
	9. הָאִם יוֹצֵאת
	10. שֹׁפֵט־הַרְשָׁעִים

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on possessive suffixes. Translate the following nouns, paying attention to the number of the noun and the person, gender, and number of the suffix.

1. אוֹרֵי .2. אֵלֶיךָ .3. זְרוּעוֹתֶיךָ .4. קוֹלָהּ
 5. קוֹלֶיהָ .6. מִשְׁפַּחְתָּם .7. מִשְׁפַּחוֹתֵיהֶם .8. דְּבָרֵי
 9. דְּבָרֵי .10. זְבַחְכֶם .11. סִפְרוֹ .12. סִפְרֵיו
 13. מְלֻכְנוֹ .14. מְלֻכְנוֹ .15. עֵינֶיךָ .16. עֵינֶיהָ

D. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. עֲבַדְתֶּם						
2. אִמְצָא						
3. יִתֵּן						

4.	גָּלִינוּ					
5.	שָׁפֵט					
6.	שָׁמְרִים					
7.	בָּנוֹת					
8.	בָּנוֹת					
9.	יָרְדוּ					
10.	שָׁבַת					

Putting It All Together

E. Translate the following.

	1.	יָדַעְתִּי אֶת־הָאֲנָשִׁים הַשֹּׁמְעִים בְּדַבַּר־יְהוָה
1. I knew the men who were obeying the word of the LORD. (Remember: שָׁמַע בָּ means “obey.”)	2.	יָדַעְתִּי אֶת־הָאֲנָשִׁים אֲשֶׁר שָׁמְעוּ בְּדַבַּר־יְהוָה
2. I knew the men who obeyed the word of the LORD.	3.	הִנֵּה הוּא עֹלֶה אֶל־הַר־הָאֱלֹהִים לְזִבְחַ שָׁם
3. He is about to go up to the mountain of God to sacrifice there.	4.	לֹא תֵשֵׁב מִשְׁפַּחַת הַמֶּלֶךְ הַגְּדוֹלָה בְּמָקוֹם הַמְּלָחָמָה
4. The great (<i>fs</i>) family (<i>fs</i>) of the king (<i>ms</i>) will not dwell near the place of the battle.	5.	אָבִיתֶם לְשַׁפֵּךְ דָּם כִּי לֹא יִרְאֶתֶם אֶת־הָאֱלֹהִים הַחַיִּים
5. You were willing to shed blood, because you did not fear the living God.	6.	הַנְּבִיא הַקָּדוֹשׁ כָּתַב אֶת סֵפֶרוֹ לְמַלְךְ הַרְשָׁע הַהוּא
6. The holy prophet is writing his book to that wicked king.	7.	נִזְכָּר אֶת־תּוֹרַת אֱלֹהֵינוּ וּמִשְׁפָּטָיו לְעוֹלָם כִּי טוֹבִים הֵם
7. We will remember forever the law of our God and his judgments, for they are good.	8.	יָרַד הָאֵיב לְקַחַת אֶת־בְּנֵיךְ וּבְנוֹתֶיךָ לְעִירָם
8. The enemy will go down to take your sons and your daughters to their city.		

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

F. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Joshua 23:14 | וְהִגַּה אֲנֹכִי הַיּוֹם בְּדֶרֶךְ כָּל־הָאָרֶץ .1 |
| 1 Kings 18:9 | אֶתְּהָ נָתַן אֶת־עַבְדְּךָ בְּיַד אַחָאָב (Ahab) .2 |
| Psalms 145:20 | שָׁמַר יְהוָה אֶת־כָּל־אֲהַבָיו .3 |

22

PRONOUN SUFFIXES ON PREPOSITIONS

Form of Pronoun Suffixes on Prepositions

22.1 The pronoun suffixes added to prepositions are the same as those added to nouns. Prepositions are neither singular nor plural, but some prepositions take the suffixes added to singular nouns and others take the suffixes added to plural nouns.

Prepositions Taking the Suffixes Added to Singular Nouns

		Preposition	Noun
"to him"	<i>3ms</i>	לו	סוסו
"to her"	<i>3fs</i>	לָהּ	סוסָהּ
"to you"	<i>2ms</i>	לְךָ	סוסְךָ
"to you"	<i>2fs</i>	לְךָ	סוסְךָ
"to me"	<i>1cs</i>	לי	סוסי
"to them"	<i>3mp</i>	לָהֶם	סוסָם
"to them"	<i>3fp</i>	לָהֶן	סוסָן
"to you"	<i>2mp</i>	לָכֶם	סוסְכֶם
"to you"	<i>2fp</i>	לָכֶן	סוסְכֶן
"to us"	<i>1cp</i>	לָנוּ	סוסָנוּ

- Other prepositions following this paradigm are:

“in him”	בו	בְּ
“within him”	בְּתוֹכוֹ	בְּתוֹךְ
“with him”	עִמּוֹ	עִם

Prepositions Taking the Suffixes Added to Plural Nouns

		Preposition	Noun
“to him”	3ms	אֵלָיו	סוּסָיו
“to her”	3fs	אֵלֶיהָ	סוּסֶיהָ
“to you”	2ms	אֵלֶיךָ	סוּסֶיךָ
“to you”	2fs	אֵלֶיךָ	סוּסֶיךָ
“to me”	1cs	אֵלַי	סוּסֵי

“to them”	3mp	אֵלֵיהֶם	סוּסֵיהֶם
“to them”	3fp	אֵלֵיהֶן	סוּסֵיהֶן
“to you”	2mp	אֵלֵיכֶם	סוּסֵיכֶם
“to you”	2fp	אֵלֵיכֶן	סוּסֵיכֶן
“to us”	1cp	אֵלֵינוּ	סוּסֵינוּ

- Other prepositions following this paradigm are:

“before him”	לְפָנָיו	לְפָנָי
“on him”	עָלָיו	עַל
“under him”	תַּחְתָּיו	תַּחַת

The Preposition מִן with Suffixes

- 22.2** In some forms the preposition מִן is written twice, resulting in מִן + מִן = מִמֵּן as the base form.

“from him”	<i>3ms</i>	מִמֶּנּוּ
“from her”	<i>3fs</i>	מִמֶּנָּה
“from you”	<i>2ms</i>	מִמְּךָ
“from you”	<i>2fs</i>	מִמְּךָ
“from me”	<i>1cs</i>	מִמֶּנִּי

“from them”	<i>3mp</i>	מִמֶּהֶם
“from them”	<i>3fp</i>	מִמֶּהֶן
“from you”	<i>2mp</i>	מִכֶּם
“from you”	<i>2fp</i>	מִכֶּן
“from us”	<i>1cp</i>	מִמֶּנּוּ

The Preposition מִ with Suffixes

22.3 In addition to the regular form מִ there is an expanded form מִמּוֹ. This expanded form is the base form for most forms with a suffix.

“like him”	<i>3ms</i>	כְּמִוְהוּ
“like her”	<i>3fs</i>	כְּמִוְהָ
“like you”	<i>2ms</i>	כְּמִוְךָ
“like you”	<i>2fs</i>	
“like me”	<i>1cs</i>	כְּמִוְנִי

“like them”	<i>3mp</i>	כְּהֶם
“like them”	<i>3fp</i>	כְּהֶן
“like you”	<i>2mp</i>	כְּכֶם
“like you”	<i>2fp</i>	
“like us”	<i>1cp</i>	כְּמִוְנוּ

The Direct Object Marker (אֶת / אֹתָהּ) with Suffixes

22.4 When a pronoun is the direct object of a verb, the suffixes can be added to the direct object marker (אֶת / אֹתָהּ). Except in the 2mp, the first vowel is *cholem-vav* (וָ).

“him”	3ms	אותו
“her”	3fs	אותה
“you”	2ms	אותך
“you”	2fs	אותך
“me”	1cs	אותי

“them”	3mp	אותם	(1×)
“them”	3fp	אותן	
“you”	2mp	אתכם	
“you”	2fp		
“us”	1cp	אתנו	

“The king sent the prophet.”

שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־הַנָּבִיא

“The king sent him.”

שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ אוֹתוֹ

“The king sent the prophets.”

שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־הַנָּבִיאִים

“The king sent them.”

שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ אוֹתָם

Resumptive Pronouns on Prepositions

22.5 In English, a preposition is placed at the beginning of the clause; for example, “the place *in which he dwelled*.” In Hebrew, the preposition is placed at the end of the clause and a pronoun (that agrees with the noun being modified) is placed on the preposition. This pronoun is called “resumptive” because it resumes or picks up again the noun being modified.

“the place in which he dwelled”

הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר יָשַׁב בּוֹ

“the city to which he walked”

הָעִיר אֲשֶׁר הֵלֵךְ אֵלֶיהָ

“the king before whom we stood”

הַמֶּלֶךְ אֲשֶׁר עָמַדְנוּ לְפָנָיו

Vocabulary

peace	שְׁלוֹם	484	there is/are not	אֵין	879
be full, fill	מָלֵא	46	there is/are	יֵשׁ	511
abandon	עָזַב	98	glory, honor	כְּבוֹד	464
approach	קָרַב	105	very	מְאֹד	467
drink	שָׁתָה	63	messenger, angel	מְלָאָךְ	471

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on prepositions with pronoun suffixes. Translate the following prepositional phrases.

1. לוֹ .2. בְּךָ .3. עִמָּה .4. בְּתוֹכִי .5. לְךָ
 6. עִמָּהֶם .7. בְּתוֹכֵנוּ .8. בְּכֶם .9. לְכֶן .10. אֵלָיו
 11. עֲלֶיךָ .12. לְפָנַי .13. תַּחְתֵּיהָ .14. אֵלֵינוּ .15. לְפָנֵיהֶם
 16. תַּחְתֵּינוּ .17. עֲלֵיכֶם .18. אֵלַיְךָ .19. לְפָנֶיךָ .20. אֵלַיְכֶן
 21. עִמָּנוּ .22. לְפָנֵינוּ .23. לִי .24. אֵלַי .25. בָּנוּ

B. Translate the following.

	1. גָּתַן אֶת־הַזֶּבַח לָהֶם
1. He gave the sacrifice to them (mp).	2. הֵלְכוּ עִמָּנוּ
2. They walked with us.	3. לָקַחְתָּ אֶת־הַכֶּסֶף מִמֶּנִּי
3. You took the silver from me.	4. תַּחְתֵּיךָ זְרוּעֵ־יְהוָה
4. The arm of the LORD is under you (ms).	5. גָּדוֹל הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר עָמְדָנוּ לְפָנָיו
5. The man before whom we stood is great.	6. בְּטַחָנוּ בּוֹ
6. We trust in him. (Stative = present)	7. יִצַק אֶת־הַמַּיִם עֲלֵיכֶם

7. He poured out the water on you (mp).	8. לְכֹדוּ אֶת־הָעִיר מֵהֶם
8. They captured the city from them (mp).	

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on the construct state. Translate the following phrases.

1. דְּבַר הַנְּבִיא 2. דְּבַר־י הַנְּבִיא 3. צָבָא הַשָּׁמַיִם
 4. תּוֹרַת הָאָרֶץ 5. מִשְׁפַּחַת הַמֶּלֶךְ 6. זְבַחֵי הָאֱלֹהִים
 7. נְפִשׁוֹת הָעַמִּים 8. יוֹם יְהוָה 9. יְמֵי הַשָּׁנָה
 10. אֲדוֹן־כָּל־הָאָרֶץ 11. רֵאשִׁית דְּרָכּוֹ 12. בְּרִית אֱלֹהֵינוּ

D. Focus on adjectives and the construct state. Translate the following phrases, paying attention to which noun is modified by the adjective.

1. יוֹם יְהוָה הַגָּדוֹל 2. צָבָא הַשָּׁמַיִם הָרַב
 3. רֵאשִׁית דְּרָכּוֹ הַטּוֹבָה 4. זְבַחֵי הַכֹּהֵן הַטָּמֵא
 5. דְּבַר הַנְּבִיאִים הַרְשָׁעִים 6. יְמֵי הַשָּׁנָה הַטּוֹבִים
 7. תּוֹרַת יְהוָה הַטְּהוֹרָה 8. בְּרִית אֱלֹהֵינוּ הַזְּקֵנָה
 9. נְפִשׁוֹת הָעַמִּים הַטְּהוֹרוֹת 10. דְּבַר־י הַנְּבִיא הַגָּדוֹל
 11. אֲדוֹן־כָּל־הָאָרֶץ הַגָּדוֹל 12. מִשְׁפַּחַת הַמֶּלֶךְ הַגָּדוֹל

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כְּתַבְתֶּם						
2. נָרַד						
3. עָשׂוֹת						
4. בָּנִים						
5. מְצָאנוּ						
6. אָתָּן						

7.	שָׁבֶת					
8.	כָּתַב					
9.	לָכוּד					
10.	יַעֲלוּ					

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

	1.	יֵלְכוּ אַנְשֵׁי הָעִיר עִמָּנוּ אֶל־בֵּית־הַכֹּהֵן
1. The men of the city will walk to the house of the priest with us.	2.	יְהוָה נָתַן אֶת־הָאָרֶץ לָנוּ לְעוֹלָם
2. The LORD is giving the land to us forever.	3.	נָבִיא יְהוָה יֵרֵד מִן־הָהָר לְקַרְא אֶת־סֵפֶר תּוֹרַת הַבְּרִית אֲלֵיכֶם
3. The prophet of the LORD will come down from the mountain to read the book of the law of the covenant to you (mp).	4.	הַנֶּעֱרַר אֲשֶׁר מָצָא אֶת הַזָּהָב שָׁלַח אוֹתוֹ לִי
4. The boy who found the gold sent it to me.	5.	טוֹב הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר לֵב טָהוֹר בְּתוֹכוֹ
5. The man who has a pure heart within is good.	6.	אֲנִי עֹלֶה אֶל־הַהָרִים לְשָׁבֶת שָׁם
6. I am going up to the mountains to live there.	7.	לֹא יָכֹל הָאָח הַהוּא לַעֲמֹד לְפָנַי כִּי קָדוֹשׁ אַתָּה וְלֹא קָדוֹשׁ הוּא
7. That brother is not able to stand before you because you are holy, but he is not holy.	8.	אָבָה אֲדוֹן־כָּל־הָאָרֶץ לְפָקֹדְךָ
8. The Lord of the whole earth is willing to care for you.		

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

Deuteronomy 1:30

1. יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם הִהֲלִיךְ לְפָנֵיכֶם

Joshua 22:31

2. הַיּוֹם יִדְעֵנוּ כִּי־בְתוֹכֵנוּ יְהוָה

Genesis 41:38

3. אִישׁ אֲשֶׁר רוּחַ אֱלֹהִים בּוֹ

23

THERE IS (NOT) AND HAVE (NOT)

There Is (Not) in Hebrew

23.1 There Is (Present Time)

- To express “there is” in present time the particle **יש** is used.

“There is a boy in the house.” **יש נַעַר בְּבַיִת**

“There are boys in the house.” **יש נְעָרִים בְּבַיִת**

- **יש** is not marked for person, gender, or number.
- To express “there is not” in present time, the particle **אין** is used.

“There is not a boy in the house.” **אין נַעַר בְּבַיִת**

“There are not boys in the house.” **אין נְעָרִים בְּבַיִת**

- **אין** is not marked for person, gender, or number.

23.2 There Was (Past Time)

- To express “there was” in past time, the 3ms and 3cp forms of the verb **הָיָה** are used.

“There was a boy in the house.” **הָיָה נַעַר בְּבַיִת**

“There were boys in the house.” **הָיוּ נְעָרִים בְּבַיִת**

- To express “there was not” in past time, **לא** is added.

“There was not a boy in the house.” **לא הָיָה נַעַר בְּבַיִת**

“There were not boys in the house.” **לא הָיוּ נְעָרִים בְּבַיִת**

Have (Not) in Hebrew

23.3 Have (Present Time)

- To express “have” in present time the particle **יש** is used with the preposition **לְ**.

“The father has a son.” יֵשׁ לְאָב בֶּן

“I have a son.” יֵשׁ לִי בֶּן

- ▶ To express “not have” in present time, the particle אֵין is used with the preposition לְ.

“The father does not have a son.” אֵין לְאָב בֶּן

“I do not have a son.” אֵין לִי בֶּן

23.4 Have (Past Time)

- ▶ To express “have” in past time the *pf* of הָיָה is used with the preposition לְ.

“The father had a son.” הָיָה לְאָב בֶּן

“I had a son.” הָיָה לִי בֶּן

“The father had sons.” הָיוּ לְאָב בָּנִים

“I had sons.” הָיוּ לִי בָנִים

- ▶ *The form of הָיָה must agree with whatever is possessed.*
- ▶ To express “not have” in past time לֹא is added.

“The father did not have a son.” לֹא הָיָה לְאָב בֶּן

“I did not have a son.” לֹא הָיָה לִי בֶּן

23.5 Have (Future Time)

- ▶ To express “have” in future time the *impf* of הָיָה is used with the preposition לְ.

“The father will have a son.” יְהִיָּה לְאָב בֶּן

“I will have sons.” יְהִיוּ לִי בָנִים

- ▶ *The form of הָיָה must agree with whatever is possessed.*
- ▶ To express “not have” in future time לֹא is added.

“The father will not have a son.” לֹא יְהִיָּה לְאָב בֶּן

“I will not have sons.” לֹא יְהִיוּ לִי בָנִים

Another Use of הָיָה לְ

23.6 הָיָה לְ is used in the sense of “become.”

“The man became a father.” הָיָה הָאִישׁ לְאָב

“The woman will become a mother.” תְּהִיָּה הָאִשָּׁה לְאִמָּה

Another Use of אֵין

- ▶ אֵין is used to negate sentences with predicate participles.

“You (*ms*) are not walking.” אֵין אַתָּה הֹלֵךְ

“You (*fs*) are not walking.” אֵין אַתְּ הֹלְכֶת

- ▶ In such constructions, אֵין is usually used with pronoun suffixes, rather than independent personal pronouns.

“You (*ms*) are not walking.” אֵינְךָ הֹלֵךְ

“You (*fs*) are not walking.” אֵינְךָ הֹלְכֶת

- ▶ Here are the forms of אֵין with the pronoun suffixes.

3mp	אֵינָם	3ms	אֵינָנוּ
3fp		3fs	אֵינְנָהּ
2mp	אֵינְכֶם	2ms	אֵינְךָ
2fp		2fs	אֵינְךָ
1cp	אֵינָנוּ	1cs	אֵינְנִי

Vocabulary

sin, guilt	עֲוֹן	478	sin	חַטָּאת	461
choose	בָּחַר	128	decree, law	חֹק	506
flee	בָּרַח	133	commandment	מִצְוָה	525
cling to	דָּבַק	134	in front of	נֶגֶד (נֶגְדָה)	936
want, desire	חָפֵץ	146	around	סְבִיב	938

Notes:

- The word עֲוֹן is spelled defectively for עֲוֹנוֹן.
- The verb בָּחַר often takes its object through the preposition ב, for example, בָּחַר בַּנֶּעֶר, “He chose the boy.”
- The plural of מִצְוָה is usually spelled defectively, מִצְוֹת for מִצְוֹת.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on “there is/was (not).” Translate the following, paying attention to the difference between past/present and positive/negative.

1. הָיָה נָבִיא בְּאֶרֶץ .1
 2. לֹא הָיָה נָבִיא בְּאֶרֶץ .2
 3. אִין נָבִיא בְּאֶרֶץ .3
 4. יֵשׁ נָבִיא בְּאֶרֶץ .4
 5. יֵשׁ שְׁלוֹם בַּמְּלָכוֹת .5
 6. אִין גְּבוּר שָׁם .6
 7. לֹא הָיָה גְבוּר שָׁם .7
 8. אִין זָבַח עַל־הַמִּזְבֵּחַ .8
 9. יֵשׁ גְּבוּר עַל־הַדָּרָךְ .9

B. Focus on “have/had (not).” Translate the following, paying attention to the difference between past/present and positive/negative.

1. הָיוּ לְאִישׁ בְּהֵמוֹת .1
 2. לֹא הָיוּ לְאִישׁ בְּהֵמוֹת .2
 3. אִין לְאִישׁ בְּהֵמוֹת .3
 4. יֵשׁ לְאִישׁ בְּהֵמוֹת .4
 5. יֵשׁ לָךְ עֲבָדִים .5
 6. אִין לְנוּ שְׁלוֹם .6
 7. לֹא הָיָה לְכֶם כְּבוֹד .7
 8. אִין לְבַת אָח .8
 9. יֵשׁ לְעִיר חוֹמָה .9

C. Focus on אִין negating predicate participles. Translate the following.

1. אִין אָנִי כֹתֵב .1
 2. אִינְנִי כֹתֵב .2
 3. אִין אַתָּה שׁוֹמֵעַ .3
 4. אִינְךָ שׁוֹמֵעַ .4
 5. אִין אַתֶּם בֹּטְחִים .5
 6. אִינְכֶם בֹּטְחִים .6
 7. אִין הוּא מַלְךְ .7
 8. אִינְנוּ מַלְךְ .8
 9. אִינְנוּ כֹרְתִים בְּרִית .9

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on infinitives. Translate the following, paying attention to the use of the *inf const* and *inf abs*.

	1.	לֹא אָבִיתָ לְשֹׁכֵב עַל־הָאֲדָמָה
1. You are not willing (stative = present) to lie down on the ground.	2.	יִכְלְנוּ לְחַנּוּת תַּחַת הַשָּׁמַיִם
2. We are able (stative = present) to camp under the sky.	3.	יִלְךְ לְרֹאוֹת אֶת־הַמַּלְחָמָה

3. He will go to see the battle.	4. כְּלַכְתּוֹ לְרֹאוֹת אֶת־הַמִּלְחָמָה . . .
4. When he goes to see the battle . . .	5. בְּכַתְּבִי אֶת־הַסֵּפֶר . . .
5. When I write/wrote the book . . .	6. בְּיוֹם אֲכַלְךָ מִמֶּנּוּ אָבוֹד תֵּאבֹד
6. In the day when you eat (<i>inf const</i>) from it you will surely (<i>inf abs</i>) perish.	7. יֵצֵא מִן־הַבַּיִת לְרֹדֶת מִן־הָהָר
7. We will go out of/from the house to go down from the mountain.	8. שְׁלַח אֶת הָאֲנָשִׁים לְבְנוֹת חוֹמָה
8. He sent the men to build a wall.	

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כְּתַבְתֶּם						
2. נִבְטַח						
3. עָשׂוֹת						
4. גָּלוֹת						
5. דָּעַת						
6. אָתָּן						
7. בָּרָאָתָּ						
8. תֵּצֵא						
9. תֵּאכְלוּ						
10. אָבוֹד						

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

	1. לֹא יִחַרְהָ אֵף יְהוָה בְּעַמּוֹ לְעוֹלָם
1. The anger of the LORD will not burn against his people forever.	2. וּבַיּוֹם הַהוּא יִהְיֶה שְׁלוֹם בְּכָל־הָאָרֶץ
2. And in that day there will be peace in the whole earth.	3. יֵשׁ כְּבוֹד לְאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר יֵרָא אֶת־יְהוָה בְּכָל־נַפְשׁוֹ

3. There is honor for the man who fears (stative = present) the LORD with all his soul.	4. בָּכָה בְּכִינוּ כִּי לֹא הָיָה לָנוּ כֹּהֵן לְזִבְחַ זִבְחֵי קֹדֶשׁ לָנוּ
4. We really wept, because we had no priest to offer holy sacrifices for us.	5. הִנֵּה יֵצֵא הַצֶּבֶא הָרֹב הַזֶּה לְמִלְחָמָה אֲשֶׁר בֵּין הַהָרִים וּבֵין הַיָּם
5. This large army is about to go out to the battle which is between the mountains and the sea.	6. הָעֹבְדִים הַבְּנִים אֶת־הַחֹמָה יוֹשְׁבִים עַל־הָאֲדָמָה לֶאֱכֹל וְלִשְׁתּוֹת
6. The servants who are building the wall are sitting on the ground to eat and to drink.	7. גָּאוּל תִּגְאֹל זִרְוֹעַ יְהִנֶּה הַחֲזִיקָה אוֹתָנוּ כִּי עֲמוּ אֲנַחֲנוּ
7. The strong arm (fs) of the LORD will surely redeem us, because we are his people.	8. טוֹבִים דְּבָרֵי הָאִשָּׁה הַיְדַעַת אֶת־דְּרָךְ הַשְּׁלוֹם
8. The words of the woman who knows the way of peace are good.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

1. אֵין שְׁלוֹם אָמַר אֱלֹהֵי לְרָשָׁעִים
Isaiah 57:21
2. וַיִּדְעוּ כָּל־הָאָרֶץ כִּי יֵשׁ אֱלֹהִים לְיִשְׂרָאֵל (Israel)
1 Samuel 17:46
3. אֵינָם יֹדְעִים אֶת־מִשְׁפַּט אֱלֹהֵי הָאָרֶץ
2 Kings 17:26

24

THE VERB: QAL VOLITIVES

Volitives

- 24.1** Volitives (from Latin *volo* “to will” and related to English “volition” = “will”) are verb forms that are used to express the *will* of the speaker. Hebrew has three volitives:
- Cohortative: volitive of the first person, for example, “Let me listen!”
 - Imperative: volitive of the second person, for example, “Listen!”
 - Jussive: volitive of the third person, for example, “Let him listen!”
- 24.2** Volitives have special *forms* as well as the special *use* of expressing the will of the speaker.

There is a “jussive of the second person” that has a form similar to a jussive but the use of expressing the will of the second person. This “jussive of the second person” is used primarily in one context; see below on Negating Volitives.

Cohortative

Cohortative is abbreviated coh.

- 24.3** Qal Strong Verb
- The cohortative is the first person *impf*, to which הָ is added. This הָ is not to be confused with הָ = the *fs* marker.

	Cohortative	Imperfect
“Let me write.”	אֶכְתֹּב	אֲכַתֵּב
“Let us write.”	נִכְתֹּב	נִכְתֵּב

- ▶ Since the medium cholem (◌◌◌) ends up in an open pretonic syllable, cholem reduces to sheva, as in יִקְטֹלוּ > יִקְטְלוּ.

24.4 Qal Weak Verbs

	Cohortative	Imperfect	
“Let me fall.”	אֶפְלָה	אֶפֶל	I Nun
“Let me dwell.”	אֶשְׁכָּה	אֶשֶׁב	I Yod (Vav)
“Let me stand.”	אֶעֱמֶדָה	אֶעֱמֹד	I Guttural

- ▶ Two vocal shevas in a row are not permitted in Hebrew, so the expected chatef-segol (◌◌◌◌) under the ayin (ע) is changed to the corresponding short vowel, segol (◌◌◌).

	Cohortative	Imperfect	
“Let me go away.”	אֶגְלֶה	אֶגְלוֹה	III Hey

- ▶ Because the first-person form already ends in a vowel, the expected ה◌◌ cannot be added. Context will determine whether an *impf* or a *coh* translation is appropriate.

Imperative

Imperative is abbreviated impv.

24.5 Qal Strong Verbs

- ▶ The imperative, like the *inf const*, is related to the imperfect. Basically, the *impv* is the second person *impf* without the prefix.

Imperative	Imperfect	
קְטֹל	תִּקְטֹל	2ms
קְטֹלִי	תִּקְטֹלִי	2fs
קְטֹלוּ	תִּקְטֹלוּ	2mp
קְטֹלוּנָה	תִּקְטֹלוּנָה	2fp

- With the prefix gone, the first sheva becomes vocal, resulting in two vocal shevas in a row in the *fs* and *mp* forms, so the first sheva becomes *chireq* in these forms.
- If the *impf* has a *patach* as the theme vowel, so does the *impv*.

Imperative	Imperfect	
בָּטַח	תִּבְטַח	2ms

24.6 Qal Weak Verbs

	Imperative	Imperfect		
“Stand!”	עֲמַד	תִּעְמַד	2ms	I Guttural
“Stand!”	עֲמְדִי	תִּעְמְדִי	2fs	
“Stand!”	עֲמְדוּ	תִּעְמְדוּ	2mp	
“Stand!”	עֲמְדִינָה	תִּעְמְדִינָה	2fp	

“Fall!”	נִפֹּל	תִּפֹּל	2ms	I Nun
“Fall!”	נִפְּלִי	תִּפְּלִי	2fs	
“Fall!”	נִפְּלוּ	תִּפְּלוּ	2mp	
“Fall!”	נִפְּלִינָה	תִּפְּלִינָה	2fp	

“Dwell!”	שֶׁב	תִּשֶׁב	2ms	I Yod (Vav)
“Dwell!”	שְׁבִי	תִּשְׁבִי	2fs	
“Dwell!”	שְׁבוּ	תִּשְׁבוּ	2mp	
“Dwell!”	שְׁבִינָה	תִּשְׁבִינָה	2fp	

Since הלך and נתן follow the paradigm of ישב in the *impf*, they do so in the *impv*, resulting in לֵךְ and תֵּן.

	Imperative	Imperfect		
"Go away!"	גִּלְה	תִּגְלֶה	2ms	III Hey
"Go away!"	גִּלִּי	תִּגְלִי	2fs	
"Go away!"	גִּלוּ	תִּגְלוּ	2mp	
"Go away!"	גִּלְיָנָה	תִּגְלִינָה	2fp	

Jussive

Jussive is abbreviated jus.

24.7 Qal Strong Verb

- In the strong verb, the *jus* and the *impf* are identical in form. Context determines whether a *jus* or an *impf* translation is required.

24.8 Qal Weak Verbs

- In most weak verbs, the *jus* and the *impf* are identical in form. One exception is III Hey verbs. In III Hey verbs, the *jus* is a shortened form of the *impf*.

	Jussive fs	Jussive ms	Imperfect
"Let him/her go away!"	תִּגַּל	יִגַּל	יִגְלֶה
"Let him/her cry!"	תִּבְכֵּךְ	יִבְכֵּךְ	יִבְכֶּה
"Let him/her go up!"	תִּעַל	יִעַל	יִעֲלֶה

Negating Volitives

- The *coh* and *jus* are negated with אַל, "not."

"Let us not send him!"

אַל נִשְׁלַחְהוּ אוֹתוֹ

"Let him not build it!"

אַל יִבֵּן אוֹתוֹ

- The *impv* is never negated. To express a negative command in the second person, a “jussive of the second person” is used. The form is that of a jussive, being short, but used in the second person.

“Do not build it!” אַל תִּבְנֶה אוֹתוֹ

“Do not cry!” אַל תִּבְכֵּה

- אַל-תִּבְכֵּה could also mean “Don’t let her cry.”

Indirect Volitives

- In addition to their use for expressing the “direct” will of the speaker, the volitives are also used to express the “indirect” will of the speaker. An indirect volitive will most often be translated as a purpose clause in English, “so that. . . .”
- Whenever there is a sequence of volitive + ׀ + volitive, the second volitive is usually “indirect,” unless the volitives are the same person.

שְׁלַח אֹתָנוּ וְנִזְבַּחַה זְבָחִים

“Send us, so that we may offer sacrifices.” (*impv* + ׀ + *coh*)

שְׁלַח אוֹתוֹ וְיִבֶן מִזְבֵּחַ

“Send him, so that he may build an altar.” (*impv* + ׀ + *jus*)

נְשַׁלְחָה אוֹתוֹ וְיִבֶן מִזְבֵּחַ

“Let us send him, so that he may build an altar.” (*coh* + ׀ + *jus*)

יִבֶן מִזְבֵּחַ וְנִזְבַּחַה זְבָחִים

“Let him build an altar, so that we may offer sacrifices.”

(*jus* + ׀ + *coh*)

Vocabulary

arise, stand	קום	20	go in , enter	בוא	3
be high, exalted	רום	59	be ashamed	בוש	66
run	רוץ	107	understand	בין	68
put, place	שים	23	die	מות	12
turn, return, repent	שוב	24	turn aside	סור	54

Note:

- These forms are qal *inf const* of a weak verb, which is the subject of the next chapter.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of the volitives. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. אֲשַׁפֹּטָה						
2. זָבַחוּ						
3. יִבֶּן						
4. שֵׁב						
5. לֵךְ						
6. נִתְּנָה						
7. בָּכָה						
8. אֲדַעָה						
9. קָחוּ						
10. כִּתְּבִי						

B. Focus on the use of the volitives. Translate the following.

- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|----------------|------------------|
| .1 פִּקֹּד | .2 נִכְרְתָה | .3 יִבֶּן | .4 אֶל יַעֲלֵ |
| .5 שְׁלַחוּ | .6 דַּבְּקִי | .7 אֶל אֲרָדָה | .8 בָּנוּ |
| .9 צְאוּ | .10 לְכוּ | .11 תַּעֲשֵׂ | .12 אֶל תִּבְדֹּ |

C. Focus on the use of the indirect volitives. Translate the following.

	1.	כָּתַב סֵפֶר וְאָקְרָאָה אוֹתוֹ
1. Write a book, so that I may read it.	2.	בָּנוּ בַּיִת וְנִשְׁכְּבָה בוֹ
2. Build a house so that we may live in it.	3.	נִזְכְּרָה אֶת־יְהוָה וְנִעֲבֹדָה אוֹתוֹ
3. Let us remember the LORD, and let us serve him.	4.	יַעַל אֶת־הַהָר וְיָבֵן מִזְבֵּחַ
4. Let him go up the mountain, so that he may build an altar.	5.	תֵּן מַיִם לָהּ וְתִשְׁתֶּה
5. Give water to her, so that she may drink.		

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. מְלַכֶּת						
2. יִבְטְחוּ						
3. שְׁלַחִי						
4. זִבְחִים						
5. אָבוֹד						
6. לְקַחְתֶּם						
7. תִּשְׁמְעוּ						
8. שִׁמְרֵת						
9. נִפְלְתִי						
10. תִּפְקֹד						

Putting It All Together**E.** Translate the following.

	1. שְׁמַע אֶת־דְּבָרֵי הַנְּבִיאֵי הַיְשָׁרִים
1. Listen to the upright words of the prophet.	2. אֵל נִירָאָה לְלֶכֶת אֶל־בַּיִת יְהוָה הַיּוֹם כִּי מִלְּךָ־כָּל־הָאָרֶץ הוּא
2. Let us not be afraid to go to the house of the LORD today, for he is the king of all the earth.	3. הַנְּשִׂיִם דֹּבְקוֹת לַבְּרִית אֲשֶׁר כָּרְתוּ אִמּוֹתֵיהֶן עִמָּן
3. The women are clinging to the covenant which their mothers made with them.	4. יִבְרַח הַנְּעַר הַמֵּצֵא אֶת־הַסֵּפֶר מֵאִבּוֹ הַחֲזָקִים
4. The boy who finds the book will flee from his strong enemies.	5. דַּעוּ כִּי לֹא תִשָּׁבוּ עַל־הָאָדָמָה לְעוֹלָם כִּי עֲבַרְתֶּם אֶת־מִצְוֹת־יְהוָה וַחֲקִיו
5. Know that you (<i>mp</i>) will not live on the land forever, because you have transgressed the commandments of the LORD and his statutes.	6. יִכְלְנוּ לְלֶכֶד אֶת־הַגְּבוּרִים הַגְּדוֹלִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁפְכוּ אֶת־דַּם־בְּנֵינוּ
6. We are (stative) able to capture the great warriors who shed the blood of our sons.	7. אֵין הִצָּבָא אָבָה לְעֹזֵב אֶת מְלַחְמַת הַקִּדְּשׁ
7. The army is not willing to leave the holy battle.	8. נִשְׁלַחָה אֶת־עַבְדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶל־הָעִיר וַיְבִנוּ בַּיִת לֹו שָׁם
8. Let us send the king's servants to the city, so that they may build a house for him there.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible**F.** Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- Psalm 62:9 1. בְּטַחוּ בּוֹ בְּכָל־עֵת . . . שְׁפָכוּ־לְפָנָיו לְבַבְכֶם
- Deuteronomy 4:1 2. וְעַתָּה יִשְׂרָאֵל שְׁמַע אֶל־הַחֲקִים וְאֶל־הַמְּשֻׁפָּטִים
לְמַעַן תַּחֲיוּ
- Isaiah 2:5 3. לְכוּ וְנִלְכָה בְּאוֹר יְהוָה

25

QAL: HOLLOW VERBS

Hollow Verbs

- A hollow verb is weak, because the root is not made up of three consonants but only of two consonants, with a long vowel in between, for example, קום, שים, and בוא.

25.1 Infinitive Construct

- The characteristic long vowel is present in the *inf const*, which is the dictionary form of hollow verbs, for example, קום, שים, and בוא.

25.2 Imperfect

- The characteristic long vowel is also present in the *impf*.

	בוא	שים	קום
3ms	יבוא	ישים	יקום
3fs	תבוא	תשים	תקום
2ms	תבוא	תשים	תקום
2fs	תבואי	תשימי	תקומי
1cs	אבוא	אשים	אקום

3mp	יבואו	ישימו	יקומו
3fp	תבואינה	תשימינה	תקומינה
2mp	תבואו	תשימו	תקומו
2fp		תשימינה	תקומינה
1cp	נבוא	נשים	נקום

25.3 Imperative

- The characteristic long vowel is also present in the *impv*, because the *impv* is related in form to the *inf const* and the *impf*.

				Imperfect
2ms	בוא	שים	קום	תִּקּוּם
2fs	בואי	שימי	קומי	תִּקְוִי
2mp	בואו	שימו	קומו	תִּקְמוּ
2fp			קומנה	תִּקְוִינָה

25.4 Cohortative

- The *coh* is simply the *impf* with the הָ added on, for example, אֲקוּמָה.

25.5 Jussive

- As in III Hey verbs, the jussive is a shortened form of the *impf*, for example, יִקּוּם (*impf* יִקְוּם) and יִשִּׁים (*impf* יִשְׁיִים).

25.6 Perfect

- The characteristic long vowel is not found in the *pf*. Most hollow verbs are action verbs, and the vowel of the *pf* is an “a”-class vowel. Several hollow verbs are stative verbs, and in these cases the vowel of the *pf* is an “i”- or “u”-class vowel.

	מות	בוש	בוא	שים	קום
3ms	מָת	בוֹשׁ	בָּא	שָׁם	קָם
3fs	מִתָּה	בוֹשָׁה	בָּאָה	שָׁמָּה	קָמָה
2ms	מִתָּהּ		בָּאתְּ	שָׁמַתְּ	קָמַתְּ
2fs		בִּשְׁתְּ	בָּאתְ	שָׁמַתְ	קָמַתְ
1cs	מִתִּי	בִּשְׁתִּי	בָּאתִי	שָׁמַתִּי	קָמַתִּי

3cp	מִתּוֹ	בוֹשׁוּ	בָּאוּ	שָׁמוּ	קָמוּ
2mp			בָּאתֶם	שָׁמַתֶם	קָמַתֶם
2fp				שָׁמַתְן	קָמַתְן
1cp	מִתְּנוּ	בוֹשְׁנוּ	בָּאנוּ	שָׁמְנוּ	קָמְנוּ

25.7 Participle

- The qal *ptc* has the same form as the 3ms of the *pf*, onto which the *ptc* endings are added.

	מֹות	בוֹשׁ	בוֹא	שָׁים	קֹם
<i>ms</i>	מֹת	בוֹשׁ	בָּא	שָׁם	קָם
<i>fs</i>	מֹתָה		בָּאָה	שָׁמָה	קָמָה
<i>mp</i>	מֹתִים	בוֹשִׁים	בָּאִים	שָׁמִים	קָמִים
<i>fp</i>			בָּאוֹת	שָׁמוֹת	קָמוֹת

25.8 Infinitive Absolute

- The *inf abs* has the *cholem-vav* (ו) characteristic of every qal *inf abs*.

מֹות בוֹשׁ בוֹא שָׁם קֹם

Vocabulary

field	שָׂדֶה	441	stone <i>f</i>	אֶבֶן (אֶבֶן)	447
gather	אָסַף	28	border, boundary	גְּבוּל	459
think	חָשַׁב	80	seed, offspring	זֶרַע (זֶרַע)	460
add, do again	יָסַף	37	therefore	עַל-כֵּן	942
answer, be humble	עָנָה	56	tree, wood	עֵץ	433

Practice**Focusing on New Material**

- A. Focus on the forms of qal Hollow verbs.** Memorize the forms of the qal Hollow verbs before parsing the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. קָם						
2. שָׁמְנוּ						
3. בָּאתָ						

4.	שָׁבוּ					
5.	תָּרוּץ					
6.	אָבִין					
7.	תָּבוֹאוּ					
8.	רָמִים					
9.	שִׁמוּ					
10.	בָּאוֹת					
11.	מוֹת					
12.	יְבוֹשׁוּ					
13.	נְסוּרָה					
14.	יָשִׁם					
15.	יָקַם					
16.	רָצִים					
17.	מָתוּ					
18.	בוֹשִׁי					
19.	מָתָה					
20.	תָּרוּמוּ					

Reviewing Previous Lessons

B. Focus on the use of the *pf* and *impf*. Translate the following verb forms.

1. שָׁמַע .2 כָּבַד .3 יָבִיטָה .4 אָשַׁפֵּט .5 עָמְדוּ

6. רָאִיתֶם .7 נַעֲשֶׂה .8 בָּנִינוּ .9 תִּקְחִי .10 יַעֲלוּ

C. Focus on the forms of the *pf* and *impf*. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יֵאָבֵה						
2. אָמַר						
3. יִרְדּוּ						

4.	מָצֵאתִי					
5.	עָלִיתֶם					
6.	אָשֵׁב					
7.	נָתַתְּ					
8.	נָקַח					
9.	תֵּלְכוּ					
10.	תִּשְׂאִי					

Putting It All Together

D. Translate the following.

	1.	רָצוּ אִיבֵי אֱלֹהֵינוּ אֶל-עִיר-קֹדֶשׁוֹ כִּי רָם הוּא
1. The enemies of our God ran to his holy city (<i>fs</i>) because he (<i>ms</i>) is exalted.	2.	לֹא טָהוֹר הַמָּקוֹם אֲשֶׁר זָבְחוּ הַכֹּהֲנִים הַרְשָׁעִים בּוֹ
2. The place in which the wicked priests sacrificed is not clean.	3.	לֹא יְבוֹשׁוּ אַנְשֵׁי יִשְׂרָאֵל כָּל-יְמֵי-חַיֵּיהֶם
3. Upright men will not be ashamed all the days of their lives.	4.	הַבְּטָחִים בַּיהוָה יִקְוֹמוּ לְעוֹלָם כִּי הוּא יִשְׁמַר נַפְשׁוֹתֵיהֶם
4. Those who trust in the LORD will stand/endure forever, for he himself will guard their souls.	5.	אֲשָׂא אֶת-חַטָּאתְךָ וְעוֹנֶךָ כִּי אֶהְבֵּתִי אוֹתְךָ מֵעוֹלָם
5. I will forgive your sin (<i>ms</i>) and your (<i>ms</i>) iniquity/guilt, for I have loved you (<i>ms</i>) from eternity.	6.	יִסוֹר בֶּן חָכָם מִכָּל-דֶּרֶךְ רָשָׁע
6. A wise son will turn aside from every wicked path.	7.	נָסַע הָעָם בְּבִקְרָה וְלֹא חָנָה עַד-הָעֶרֶב כִּרְאוֹתָם אֶת-הַהָרִים
7. The people broke camp in the morning and did not set up camp until evening, when they saw the mountains.	8.	קָחוּ אֶת-הַכֶּסֶף וְאֶת-הַזָּהָב לְשִׁמֹּר אֲשֶׁר יֵשִׁים אוֹתָם בְּבַיִת
8. Take (<i>mp</i>) the silver and the gold to the guard who will place them in the house.		

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

E. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

1. וְקָרָא זֶה אֶל-זֶה וְאָמַר קְדוֹשׁ קְדוֹשׁ יְהוָה זְבָאוֹת
 מְלֵא^a כָּל-הָאָרֶץ כְּבוֹדוֹ
 Isaiah 6:3
2. אֵלֶּה הַחֻקִּים וְהַמְשָׁפָטִים אֲשֶׁר תִּשְׁמְרוּן^b לַעֲשׂוֹת
 בְּאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר נָתַן יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי אֲבֹתֵיךָ לָךְ לְרִשְׁתָּהּ^c כָּל-הַיָּמִים
 אֲשֶׁר-אַתֶּם חַיִּים עַל-הָאָדָמָה
 Deuteronomy 12:1

^aThis form is a noun in the construct state and means “fulness of.”

^bSome times a *2mp impf* has an extra *nun* (ן) on the end; there is no effect on the meaning. The sense of שְׁמַר here is “guard” > “be careful.”

^cThis form is the preposition לְ + the *inf const* of יָרַשׁ + the *3fs* object suffix, which agrees with הָאָרֶץ (*fs*).

26

THE VERB: VAV-RELATIVE

Vav-Relative

- The *vav*-relative is a special use of the conjunction *vav* (ו) when attached to a *pf* or *impf* verb. This *vav* “relates” the verb to which it is attached to a previous verb.

Form of Vav-Relative

26.1 Form of Vav-Relative Imperfect

- Vav-relative *impf* is made up of *vav* + *patach* + strong *dagesh* (ׁ ׁ), prefixed to the *impf/jus*.

וַיִּקְטֹל
וַתִּקְטֹל
וַאֲקִטֹל

- Note the compensatory lengthening on the 1cs form.
- The verb form used is actually the *jus* not the *impf*, as is clear from the *vav*-relative *impf* of some forms of III Hey and Hollow verbs.

Vav-Relative	Jussive	Imperfect
וַיִּבֶן	יִבֶן	יִבְנֶה
וַיִּבְּן	יִבְּן	יִבְנֶה
וַיִּקָּם	יִקָּם	יִקְוֶם
וַיִּשָּׂם	יִשָּׂם	יִשְׁוֶם

- To identify the root as III Hey or Hollow, look at the vowel of the verb prefix. If the vowel is a ׁ, then the root is Hollow.

- Often, but not always, the accent moves to the right, thus explaining the difference between the *jus* **קָמַץ** and the vav-relative *impf* **וַיִּקְמַץ** (the second *qamets* = *qamets-chatuf*) and the *jus* **שָׁמַץ** and the vav-relative *impf* **וַיִּשְׁמַץ**.

*The classical name of vav is “waw.” Vav-relative goes by a variety of names, waw-consecutive being quite common. Because of the frequent use of the term waw-consecutive imperfect, vav-relative imperfect is abbreviated *wci* in this grammar.*

26.2 Form of Vav-Relative Perfect

- Vav-relative perfect is made up of the simple *vav* (וַ) prefixed to the *pf*.

וַקָּטַל
וַקָּטַלְתֶּם

- Often, but not always, the accent will move to the final syllable.

וַקָּטַלְתָּ קָטַלְתָּ
וַקָּטַלְתִּי קָטַלְתִּי

*Vav-relative perfect is abbreviated *wcp*.*

Use of Vav-Relative

- Vav-relative is used in a variety of ways, but the most frequent use is to express temporal succession: “The next thing that happened (or will happen).”

26.3 Use of Vav-Relative Imperfect

- In an earlier phase of Hebrew, there were two imperfects: a “long imperfect” and a “short imperfect.”
 - The long imperfect was used as a present and a future. This long imperfect is found in Biblical Hebrew as the imperfect = present/future (**יִקְרֹם**).
 - The short imperfect was used as a jussive and for past time. This short imperfect is found in Biblical Hebrew as a jussive (**יִקְרַם**) and in the vav-relative *impf* (**וַיִּקְרַם**), which expresses temporal succession in past time.

- One traditional name for the vav-relative is *waw-conversive*, which presumes that an imperfect = present/future is converted to a past tense by the addition of ׀ as a prefix. However, this is not the case. The vav-relative imperfect = past time is simply the preservation of an old use of the short imperfect.

“He sat then wrote in the book.” יָשַׁב וַיִּכְתֹּב בַּסֵּפֶר

“They sat then made a covenant.” יָשָׁבוּ וַיַּכְרִתוּ בְרִית

“He sat then said to me. . .” יָשַׁב וַיֹּאמֶר אֵלַי

שְׁלַחְתִּי אֶת־הַנֶּעֶר וַיִּמְצָא אֶת־הַכֶּסֶף

“I sent the boy, then he found the money.”

26.4 Use of Vav-Relative Perfect

- The original use of the vav-relative *pf* was probably to mark the “then” clause in an “if . . . then” statement.

“If you go with me, then I will go.” אִם תֵּלֵךְ עִמִּי וְהִלַּכְתִּי

“If you listen, then you will know.” אִם תִּשְׁמַע וַיִּדְעָתָּ

- Because the “then” clause is by definition a future situation, the vav-relative *pf* is used to express temporal succession in future time when following an *impf* verb.

“We will go, then we will sacrifice.” נֵלֵךְ וְנִזְבַּחְנוּ

“You will sit down, then you will eat.” תֵּשֵׁב וְאָכַלְתָּ

אֶזְבַּח וַיִּשְׁבַּת וְאָכַלְתָּ

“I will sacrifice, then you will sit down and eat.”

Vocabulary

burnt offering	עוֹלָה	431	after, behind	אַחֲרַי	875
be great, wealthy	גָּדַל	71	just as, when	כַּאֲשֶׁר	909
clothe, dress, wear	לָבַשׁ	88	what?	מָה	927
reach out, extend	נָטָה	50	who?	מִי	930
be much, many	רַבָּה	58	gift, grain offering	מִנְחָה	472

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of the vav-relative imperfect (*wci*). Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. וַיִּבְטַח						
2. וַאֲבִטַח						
3. וַנִּקֶּם						
4. וַתִּבֶּן						
5. וַתַּעַל						
6. וַיִּתֵּן						
7. וַתִּשֶׂם						
8. וַיִּבֶן						
9. וַיַּעַשׂ						
10. וַתִּפֹּל						

B. Focus on the use of the vav-relative perfect and the vav-relative imperfect. Translate the following forms.

1. וַיִּזְבְּחוּ .2. וַזָּבְחוּ .3. וַעֲלָה .4. וַיַּעַל .5. וַתִּקָּם
 6. וַקָּמְתָּ .7. וַיֹּאמֶר .8. וַיִּבְנֶן .9. וַיִּרְצוּ .10. וַאֲעֲמֹד
 11. וַנִּתְּתָם .12. וַיַּעֲלוּ .13. וַיִּדְעֵנוּ .14. וַיִּשָּׂא .15. וַיִּפֹּל

C. Focus on the use of the vav-relative perfect and the vav-relative imperfect. Translate the following sentences.

	1.	אִם תִּחַטָּא וּמָתָה
1. If you (<i>ms</i>) sin, you (<i>ms</i>) will die.	2.	חָטְאוּ וַיָּמוּתוּ
2. They sinned, then they died.	3.	בָּאוּ בְּבֵית־יְהוָה וַיִּזְבְּחוּ אֶת־זִבְחֵיהֶם

3. They entered the house of the LORD, then they offered their sacrifices.	4. רָאִיתָ אֶת־הַבָּגָד וַתִּקַּח אוֹתוֹ אֶל־בֵּיתְךָ
4. You (ms) saw the garment, then you (ms) took it to your house.	5. וַיָּקָם וַיֵּלֶךְ עַל־הַדֶּרֶךְ וַיֵּשֶׁב אֶל־מִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ וַיִּשְׂאוּ אֶת־עֹנּוֹ
5. He arose, went along the road, and returned to his family. Then they forgave his sin.	6. וַיָּקָם וַהֲלֹךְ עַל־הַדֶּרֶךְ וַיֵּשֶׁב אֶל־מִשְׁפַּחְתּוֹ וַנִּשְׂאוּ אֶת־עֹנּוֹ
6. He will arise, go along the road, and return to his family. Then they will forgive his sin.	

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on the form of the infinitive construct. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כָּתַב						
2. בֵּין						
3. תַּת						
4. בָּכוֹת						
5. רָדַת						
6. קָחַת						
7. לָקַחְתְּ						
8. עָשׂוֹת						
9. שׁוֹב						
10. בּוֹא						

E. Focus on the use of the infinitive construct in temporal clauses.

Translate the following.

1. כְּשֶׁלַח הָאִישׁ אֶת־הַנֶּעֶר .2. כְּשֶׁלַח אוֹתוֹ אֶת־הַנֶּעֶר .3. כְּשֶׁלַח אוֹתוֹ
4. בְּקוֹם אִיבִינוּ עָלֵינוּ .5. בְּשִׂכְבְּךָ וּבְקוֹמְךָ .6. בְּעֵלוֹת הַכְּהֹנִים
7. בְּצֵאתוֹ וּבְבוֹאוֹ .8. בְּלִדְת־הָאִשָּׁה אֶת־בְּנָהּ .9. בְּבִנוֹתְכֶם מִזִּבְחַךְ

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

1. If you (<i>mp</i>) carefully (<i>inf abs</i>) keep the judgments of the LORD your (<i>mp</i>) God and his statutes, then you will live and enter the land which the LORD is giving you to possess [it].	1. אִם שָׁמַרְתָּ מְשֹׁפְטֵי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיכֶם וְחֻקֵּי וְחַיִּיתֶם וּבֵאתֶם בְּאֶרֶץ אֲשֶׁר יְהוָה נֹתֵן לָכֶם לְרִשְׁתָּהּ
2. The prophet said to those wicked priests, “Because you abandoned the LORD, he will abandon you and you will perish.”	2. וַיֹּאמֶר הַנְּבִיא אֶל־הַכֹּהֲנִים הַרְשָׁעִים הָהֵם כִּי עָזַבְתֶּם אֶת־יְהוָה וְעָזַב אֶתְכֶם וַאֲבַדְתֶּם
3. This is the morning on which we will set out and go to the mountains and find wood to build houses for ourselves and for our sons.	3. זֶה הַבֹּקֶר אֲשֶׁר נָסַע בּוֹ וְהִלְכְנוּ אֶל־הַהָרִים וּמָצְאוּ עֵצִים לְבָנוֹת בָּתִּים לָנוּ וּלְבָנֵינוּ
4. The mighty men of the nations came up from the sea, captured your (<i>mp</i>) cities, and took your (<i>mp</i>) wives and your (<i>mp</i>) daughters. And they fled, and you (<i>mp</i>) were not able to stand against them.	4. וַיַּעֲלוּ גִבּוֹרֵי הַגּוֹיִם מִן־הַיָּם וַיִּלְכְּדוּ אֶת־עָרֵיכֶם וַיִּקְחוּ אֶת־נְשֵׁיכֶם וְאֶת־בָּנוֹתֵיכֶם וַיִּבְרְחוּ וְלֹא יָכַלְתֶּם לְעֹמַד עָלֵיהֶם

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

1. וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוֹשֻׁעַ אֶל־הָעָם לֹא תוֹכְלוּ לַעֲבֹד אֶת־יְהוָה
Joshua 24:19 כִּי אֱלֹהִים קְדָשִׁים הוּא
2. וַיֹּאמְרוּ הָעָם אֶל־יְהוֹשֻׁעַ אֶת־יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ נַעֲבֹד
Joshua 24:24-25 וּבְקוֹלוֹ נִשְׁמַע: וַיִּכְרַת יְהוֹשֻׁעַ בְּרִית לָעָם בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא
וַיֵּשֶׁם לוֹ חֻק וּמִשְׁפָּט בְּשֵׁכֶם^c

^a“Joshua”

^bA collective noun—that is, a singular noun referring to a group or collection of items—often takes a plural verb in Hebrew.

^cThe symbol ׃ is called *sof passuq* (“end of verse”) and marks the end of a verse.

^dThe *ms* suffix refers back to the collective ׀ and so is translated with a plural, “to them.”

^e“In Shechem”

CLAUSES: TEMPORAL AND INTERROGATIVE

Temporal Clauses

- ▶ Hebrew has various ways of expressing temporal clauses, clauses introduced with before, when, after, etc. Three common ways are introduced in this lesson.

27.1 Preposition + Infinitive Construct

- ▶ The *inf const* preceded by **כִּ** or **כַּ** and used as a temporal clause was introduced in Lesson 20. Other prepositions are also used to form temporal clauses.

“when he sent the prophet”	בְּשִׁלְחוֹ אֶת־הַנָּבִיא
“when he sent the prophet”	כְּאֲשֶׁר שָׁלַח אֶת־הַנָּבִיא
“after he sent the prophet”	אַחֲרֵי שִׁלְחוֹ אֶת־הַנָּבִיא
“until he sent the prophet”	עַד שִׁלְחוֹ אֶת־הַנָּבִיא

- ▶ The time of such clauses is indicated by context. Two frequent indicators at the beginning of clauses are: (1) **וַיְהִי** (*wci* of **הָיָה**) for past time and (2) **וַיְהִי־** (*wcp* of **הָיָה**) for future time.

“when he sent the prophet”	וַיְהִי כְּשִׁלְחוֹ אֶת־הַנָּבִיא
“after he sent the prophet”	וַיְהִי אַחֲרֵי שִׁלְחוֹ אֶת־הַנָּבִיא
“when he sends the prophet”	וַיְהִי־ כְּשִׁלְחוֹ אֶת־הַנָּבִיא

- ▶ **וַיְהִי** and **וַיְהִי־** need not be translated, because they simply function to indicate the time.
- ▶ The main clause is usually introduced by a *wci* for past time or a *wcp* for future time.

וַיְהִי כְּשִׁלְחוֹ אֶת־הַנָּבִיא וַיֵּלֶךְ הַנָּבִיא אֶל־הָעִיר

“When he sent the prophet, the prophet went to the city.”

וַיְהִי אַחֲרַי שְׁלַח אֶת־הַנָּבִיא וַיִּשְׁלַח אֶת־הַכֹּהֵן

“After he sent the prophet, he sent the priest.”

וְהָיָה כִּשְׁלַח אֶת־הַנָּבִיא וְהָלַךְ הַנָּבִיא אֶל־הָעִיר

“When he sends the prophet, the prophet will go to the city.”

27.2 Preposition or Particle + Perfect or Imperfect

וַיְהִי כִּי שְׁלַח אֶת־הַנָּבִיא וַיֵּלֶךְ הַנָּבִיא אֶל־הָעִיר

“When he sent the prophet, the prophet went to the city.”

וַיְהִי אַחֲרַי שְׁלַח אֶת־הַנָּבִיא וַיִּשְׁלַח אֶת־הַכֹּהֵן

“After he sent the prophet, he sent the priest.”

וְהָיָה כִּי יִשְׁלַח אֶת־הַנָּבִיא וְהָלַךְ הַנָּבִיא אֶל־הָעִיר

“When he sends the prophet, the prophet will go to the city.”

27.3 Time Words

וַיְהִי בַיּוֹם הַהוּא וַיִּשְׁלַח אֶת־הַנָּבִיא

“In that day, he sent the prophet.”

וְהָיָה בַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְשְׁלַח אֶת־הַנָּבִיא

“In that day, he will send the prophet.”

וַיְהִי בַבֹּקֶר וַיֵּלֶךְ אֶל־הָעִיר

“In the morning, he went to the city.”

וְהָיָה בַבֹּקֶר וְהָלַךְ אֶל־הָעִיר

“In the morning, he will go to the city.”

Interrogative Clauses

- Hebrew has two ways of asking questions.

27.4 Interrogative Pronouns

- Questions are often introduced with an interrogative pronoun.

“Who went to the city?” מי הָלַךְ אֶל־הָעִיר

“Who will go to the city?” מי יֵלֶךְ אֶל־הָעִיר

“What did he say to you?” מָה אָמַר אֵלַיךְ

“What will he say to you?” מָה יֹאמַר אֵלַיךְ

27.5 Interrogative Particle הַ

- The interrogative particle הַ is not an independent word but is prefixed to another word.
- The interrogative particle הַ is distinguished from the definite article in that the definite article never has *chatef-patach* (◌ֿ) as the vowel and the interrogative particle does not have strong *dagesh* as an element.

“He went to the city.”

הָלַךְ אֶל־הָעִיר

“Did he go to the city?”

הֲהָלַךְ אֶל־הָעִיר

“He will go to the city.”

יֵלֵךְ אֶל־הָעִיר

“Will he go to the city?”

הֲיֵלֵךְ אֶל־הָעִיר

Vocabulary

	דָּבַר	4	ark	אָרוֹן	454
Piel: speak	דָּבַר		righteous	צַדִּיק	336
	הָלַל	75	righteousness	צִדְקָה / צִדִּיק	545/6
Piel: praise	הָלַל			בָּקַשׁ	30
	כָּפַר	87	Piel: seek	בָּקַשׁ	
Piel: atone	כָּפַר		Qal: be blessed	בָּרַךְ	31
	צִוָּה	19	Piel: bless	בָּרַךְ	
Piel: command	צִוָּה				
Qal: be holy	קָדַשׁ	103			
Piel: sanctify	קָדַשׁ				

Note:

- The piel verb pattern is introduced in the next lesson. When a verb occurs in the qal and the piel, both spellings are given in the vocabulary list, for example, קָדַשׁ and קָדַשׁ. If a verb occurs in the piel only, both spellings are given, but a meaning is given for the piel only, for example, כָּפַר and כָּפַר.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on temporal clauses. Translate the following clauses.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. וַיְהִי בְּכַתּוֹב הָאִישׁ סֵפֶר | 2. וְהָיָה בְּכַתּוֹב הָאִישׁ סֵפֶר |
| 3. וַיְהִי אַחֲרֵי כְּתוּבוֹ סֵפֶר | 4. וַיְהִי כִּי כָּתַב סֵפֶר |
| 5. וַיְהִי כְּאֲשֶׁר כָּתַבוֹ סֵפֶר | 6. וַיְהִי לְפָנָי כָּתַב סֵפֶר |
| 7. וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא | 8. וַיְהִי בַּשָּׁנָה הַהִיא |
| 9. וְהָיָה כְּשֶׁפֶט יְהוָה אֶת־הַגּוֹיִם | 10. וַיְהִי כְּשֶׁפֶט יְהוָה אֶת־עַמּוֹ |

B. Focus on temporal clauses within sentences. Translate the following.

	1. וַיְהִי אַחֲרֵי כְּתוּב הָאִישׁ אֶת־הַסֵּפֶר וְאָקְרָא אוֹתוֹ
1. After the man wrote the book, I read it.	2. וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא וּבָא יְהוָה לְשֹׁפֵט אֶת־הַגּוֹיִם
2. On that day, the LORD will come to judge the nations.	3. וַיְהִי כְּאֲשֶׁר רָאוּתִי אֶת־הָאִשָּׁה וְאָשַׁב לְבֵיתִי
3. When I saw the woman, I returned to my house.	4. וְהָיָה בְּזִבְחַת הַפֶּהֶן אֶת־הַזֶּבַח וְאָכְלָנוּ לְפָנָי הָאֱלֹהִים
4. When the priest offers the sacrifice, we will eat in the presence of God.	5. וַיְהִי לְפָנָי זָבַחוּ אֶת־הַזֶּבַח וַיִּנָּשֵׁב עַל־הָאָדָמָה
5. Before he offered the sacrifice, we sat down on the ground.	

C. Focus on interrogative clauses. Translate the following clauses.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. מִי שָׁמַע אֶת־הַדְּבָרִים | 2. הֲשָׁמַע אֶת־הַדְּבָרִים |
| 3. מָה שָׁמַע | 4. הֲתִשְׁמַע אֵלַי |
| 5. הֲאֵתָהּ מָלְךְ הָעִיר | 6. מִי מָלְךְ הָעִיר |
| 7. מָה אָמַר אֵלַיךְ | 8. הֲיִזְבַּח זְבָחִים |
| 9. מָה אֵתָהּ עָשָׂה | 10. מִי הִלְךְ עִמָּנוּ |

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. שִׁכַּבְתִּי						
2. אֶפְקֹד						
3. מָלַכְתָּ						
4. זָכַרְתֶּם						
5. נִכְתַּב						
6. יִדְרֹשׁוּ						
7. תִּדְבְּקוּ						
8. אָכְלוּ						
9. אֶסְפְּנוּ						
10. תִּמְצְאֵי						

E. Focus on nouns with pronoun suffixes. Translate the following words.

1. שְׁלוֹמֶךָ .2. שְׁלוֹמְכֶם .3. שְׁלוֹמוֹ .4. שְׁלוֹמִי .5. שְׁלוֹמִינוּ
 6. דְּבָרָם .7. דְּבָרֵיהֶם .8. דְּבָרֶיךָ .9. דְּבָרִי .10. דְּבָרֶיהָ
 11. זְכוֹרוֹ .12. זְכוֹרֵי .13. זְכוֹתֵיהֶם .14. זְכוֹתֵינוּ .15. זְכוֹתֵיךָ

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

	1. וַיְהִי בְּלֶכֶת מְלִכְנוּ אֶל־הָעִיר וַיֵּרָא אֶת־הַכֹּהֵן הַיֹּשֵׁב שָׁם וַיֹּאמֶר לוֹ מָה שְׁמֶךָ
1. When our king came to the city, he saw the priest who was living there. Then he said to him, “What is your name?”	2. וַהֲיָה לְפָנַי צְאֹתִי לְמַלְחָמָה וַדְּרֹשׁתִּי אֶת־יְהוָה וְשִׁבְתִּי מִחַטָּאתַי לְמַעַן יֵצֵא עָמִי

2. Before I go out to the battle, I will seek the LORD and turn from my sin, so that he will go out with me.	3. וַיְהִי בְלִכּוּד אֵיבֵינוּ אֶת־מִשְׁפַּחוֹתֵינוּ וַיִּקְחוּ אוֹתָם אֶל־אֲרָצָם וַיֹּאסְרוּ אוֹתָם וַנֹּאמֶר נִלְכֶה אַחֲרֵיהֶם פֶּן יֵאבְדוּ
3. When our enemies captured our families, they took them to their country and imprisoned them. Then we said, “Let’s go after them, lest they perish.”	4. וַיְהִי בְרִדְתִּי מִן־הַהָר וְאִמְצָא אֶת הָעָם חֹטְאִים לֵאלֹהֵי וְאֲשֵׁב עַל־הָאָדָמָה וְאִבְכֶּה מְאֹד
4. When I came down from the mountain, I found the people sinning against my God. Then I sat down on the ground and really wept.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following from Josh 1:1–2.

- (1) וַיְהִי אַחֲרֵי מוֹת^a מֹשֶׁה^b עֶבֶד יְהוָה וַיֹּאמֶר
יְהוָה אֶל־יְהוֹשֻׁעַ^c בֶּן־נֹון^d מִשְׁרַת^e מֹשֶׁה לֵאמֹר:^f
(2) מֹשֶׁה עֶבְדִּי מֵת וְעַתָּה קוּם עֲבֹר אֶת־הַיַּרְדֵּן^g הַזֶּה
אֲתָה וְכָל־הָעָם הַזֶּה אֶל־הָאָרֶץ אֲשֶׁר אָנֹכִי
נֹתֵן לָהֶם לְבְנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל^h:

^a“The death of”

^b“Moses”

^c“Joshua”

^d“son of Nun”

^e“servant of”

^fThe *inf const* of אָמַר is used to introduce a quotation and is often left untranslated.

^g“Jordan”

^h“Israel”

28

THE PIEL: STRONG ROOTS

Meaning of the Piel

- The piel is the second of the seven major verb patterns you will learn. The qal makes up 69% of all verbs in the Hebrew Bible; the piel, 9%.¹
- Like the qal, the piel has a *pf*, *impf*, *jus*, *coh*, *impv*, *ptc*, *inf const*, and *inf abs*.
- To change verb pattern is to **change the meaning** of the verb.

Piel	Qal	Root
“destroy”	“perish”	אבד
“finish”	“be finished”	כלה
“fill”	“be full”	מלא
“set free”	“send”	שלח

- Some verbs occur only (or mainly) in the piel without a corresponding qal.

“seek”		בקש
“speak”		דבר
“command”		צוה

Form of the Piel

- The primary characteristic of the piel is the strong *dagesh* in the middle root consonant.

1. B. Waltke and M. O'Connor, *Syntax*, §21.2.3e.

28.1 Perfect

Piel	Qal	
קָטַל	קָטַל	3ms
קָטַלְהָ	קָטַלְהָ	3fs
קָטַלְתָּ	קָטַלְתָּ	2ms
קָטַלְתְּ	קָטַלְתְּ	2fs
קָטַלְתִּי	קָטַלְתִּי	1cs
קָטַלּוּ	קָטַלּוּ	3cp
קָטַלְתֶּם	קָטַלְתֶּם	2mp
קָטַלְתֶּן	קָטַלְתֶּן	2fp
קָטַלְנוּ	קָטַלְנוּ	1cp

28.2 Imperfect

Piel	Qal	
יִקְטַל	יִקְטַל	3ms
תִּקְטַל	תִּקְטַל	3fs
תִּקְטַלְתָּ	תִּקְטַלְתָּ	2ms
תִּקְטַלְתְּ	תִּקְטַלְתְּ	2fs
אֶקְטַל	אֶקְטַל	1cs
יִקְטַלּוּ	יִקְטַלּוּ	3mp
תִּקְטַלְנָה	תִּקְטַלְנָה	3fp
תִּקְטַלּוּ	תִּקְטַלּוּ	2mp
תִּקְטַלְנָה	תִּקְטַלְנָה	2fp
נִקְטַל	נִקְטַל	1cp

28.3 Imperative

Imperative	Imperfect	
קִטֵּל	תִּקְטֹל	2ms
קִטְּלִי	תִּקְטְלִי	2fs
קִטְּלוּ	תִּקְטְלוּ	2mp
קִטְּלֵנָה	תִּקְטְלֵנָה	2fp

28.4 Infinitives

Infinitive Construct	Imperative
קִטֵּל	קִטֵּל
Infinitive Absolute	
קִטֵּל / קִטֹּל	

28.5 Participle

Piel	Qal	
מִקְטֵל	קֹטֵל	ms
מִקְטֹלֶת	קֹטֹלֶת	fs
מִקְטָלִים	קֹטָלִים	mp
מִקְטָלוֹת	קֹטָלוֹת	fp

28.6 Cohortative

Piel	Qal	
אֶקְטֹלָה	אֶקְטֹלָה	1cs
נֶקְטֹלָה	נֶקְטֹלָה	1cp

28.7 Jussive

Piel	Qal	
יִקְטֹל	יִקְטֹל	3ms

Vocabulary

Piel: pollute, begin	חָלַל		sword <i>f</i>	חָרַב (חָרַב)	421
	כָּסָה	86	utensil	כֶּלִי	423
Piel: conceal, cover	כָּסָה	86	meeting	מוֹעֵד	468
Qal: count	סָפַר	97	congregation	עֵדָה	536
Piel: report, tell	סָפַר		yet, still	עוֹד	940
Qal: be glad	שָׂמַח	109	only	רַק	948
Piel: make glad	שָׂמַח			חָלַל	78

Practice

Focusing On New Material

A. Focus on the form of the piel. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. דִּבְרָתִי						
2. יִכְפֹּר						
3. מְקַדֵּשׁ						
4. הִלְלוּ						
5. תִּבְקָשִׁי						
6. דִּבְרָתָם						
7. הִלְלוּ						
8. נִקְדָּשׁ						
9. בִּקֵּשׁ						
10. מְדַבְּרִים						
11. אֶהְלֵלָה						
12. כִּפֹּר						
13. תִּבְקָשׁ						
14. קִדְּשָׁתְךָ						
15. תִּדְבְּרוּ						

Reviewing Previous Lessons

B. Focus on strong verbs in the qal and piel. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יִמְלֹךְ						
2. יְדַבֵּר						
3. הִלְכָהְ						
4. הִלְכָהְ						
5. שָׁפֵטוּ						
6. דָּבְרוּ						
7. מְקַדֵּשׁ						
8. שָׁמַר						
9. תִּכְפְּרוּ						
10. בִּקְשׂוּם						

C. Focus on III Hey verbs in the qal. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. בָּכִינוּ						
2. יִבְנֶה						
3. עָלִים						
4. רָאוּת						
5. יִגְלוּ						
6. עָשׂוּ						
7. בָּנֶה						
8. בָּכוּ						
9. כָּלוּת						
10. נָטִיטָם						

Putting It All Together

D. Translate the following.

1. When the prophet came, he spoke to all the people saying, “Praise the LORD, because his faithfulness is/lasts forever.”	1. וַיְהִי כְּבֹא הַנְּבִיא וַיְדַבֵּר אֶל-כָּל-הָעָם לֵאמֹר הֲלֹלוּ אֶת-יְהוָה כִּי לְעוֹלָם חֲסִדוֹ
2. The anger of the LORD did not burn against us, because we sought his face and sanctified his great name.	2. לֹא חָרָה עָלֵינוּ אַף-יְהוָה כִּי בִקְשָׁנוּ אֶת-פְּנֵיו וַנִּקְדַּשׁ אֶת-שְׁמוֹ הַגָּדוֹל
3. You will atone for the altar and sanctify it. Then all who touch it will be holy. (נגע usually takes its object through the preposition כּ).	3. תִּכַּפֵּר אֶת-הַמִּזְבֵּחַ וְקִדַּשְׁתָּ אוֹתוֹ וְכָל-הַנִּגַּע בּוֹ יִקְדַּשׁ
4. I heard a voice speaking and I said, “Who are you?” Then he said to me, “I am the LORD your God, who atones for every-thing/all which you have done.”	4. וַאֲשַׁמַּע קוֹל מְדַבֵּר וָאָמַר מִי אַתָּה וַיֹּאמֶר אֵלַי אֲנִי יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ הַמְכַפֵּר לְכָל-אֲשֶׁר עָשִׂיתָ

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

E. Translate the following from 1 Samuel 11.

(4) וַיָּבֵאוּ הַמְּלָאכִים גִּבְעַת^a שָׂאוֹל^b וַיְדַבְּרוּ אֶת-הַדְּבָרִים בְּאָזְנֵי הָעָם
וַיִּשְׂאוּ^c כָּל-הָעָם אֶת-קוֹלָם וַיִּבְכּוּ: (5) וַהֲיָה^d שָׂאוֹל בָּא אַחֲרַי
הַבֶּקֶר מִן-הַשָּׂדֶה וַיֹּאמֶר שָׂאוֹל מִה-לָּעֵם^e כִּי יִבְכּוּ^f וַיִּסְפְּרוּ^g לוֹ
אֶת-דְּבָרֵי אֲנָשֵׁי יִבְיִשׁ^h: (6) וַתִּצְלַחⁱ רוּחַ-אֱלֹהִים עַל-שָׂאוֹל
בְּשִׁמְעוֹ אֶת-הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה וַיַּחַר אַפּוֹ מְאֹד:

^a “To Gibeah of”

^b “Saul”

^cThe form should be וַיִּשְׂאוּ with strong *dagesh* in the ש , since the ל of the root has assimilated. Frequently, however, a consonant with strong *dagesh* and vocal *sheva* will lose the strong *dagesh*.

^d“Just then”

^eLiterally, “What to the people” = “What is wrong with the people?”

^f*Impf* for present time.

^g“They reported”

^h“Jabesh”

ⁱ“Rushed”

THE PIEL: WEAK ROOTS

Weak Roots in the Piel

- Weak roots cause piel verbs to vary from the standard paradigm, as is the case in the qal. The variations are similar to those learned in the qal. II Guttural and III Hey roots show variations.

29.1 II Guttural

- Because the middle consonant is a guttural, which cannot take the strong *dagesh* that is characteristic of the piel, II Guttural verbs vary from the standard paradigm (1) by not having *dagesh* in the middle consonant and (2) by having compensatory lengthening of the preceding vowel.

II Guttural Imperfect	Standard Imperfect	II Guttural Perfect	Standard Perfect	
יְבַרֵךְ	יְקַטֵּל	בִּרַךְ	קָטַל	3ms
תְּבַרְכֶּךָ	תְּקַטֵּל	בִּרְכָה	קָטְלָה	3fs
תְּבַרְכֶּם	תְּקַטֵּל	בִּרְכֶתָּם	קָטְלֶתָּם	2ms
תְּבַרְכֵי	תְּקַטְלֵי	בִּרְכֶתְיָם	קָטְלֶתְיָם	2fs
אֶבְרַךְ	אֶקַטֵּל	בִּרְכֹתִי	קָטְלֹתִי	1cs

יְבַרְכוּ	יְקַטְלוּ	בִּרְכוּ	קָטְלוּ	3c/mp
תְּבַרְכֶנּוּ	תְּקַטְלֶנּוּ			3fp
תְּבַרְכוּ	תְּקַטְלוּ	בִּרְכֹתֶם	קָטְלֹתֶם	2mp
תְּבַרְכֶנּוּ	תְּקַטְלֶנּוּ	בִּרְכֹתֵן	קָטְלֹתֵן	2fp
נְבַרְךָ	נְקַטֵּל	בִּרְכֹנוּ	קָטְלוּנוּ	1cp

II Guttural Participle	Standard Participle	II Guttural Imperative	Standard Imperative	
מְכַרֵּךְ	מְקַטֵּל	כַּרְךְ	קַטֵּל	2ms
מְכַרְכֵּת	מְקַטְלֵת	כַּרְכִּי	קַטְלִי	2fs
מְכַרְכִּים	מְקַטְלִים	כַּרְכוּ	קַטְלוּ	2mp
מְכַרְכוֹת	מְקַטְלוֹת	כַּרְכְּנָה	קַטְלְנָה	2fp

II Guttural Inf abs	Standard Inf abs	II Guttural Inf const	Standard Inf const
כַּרְוֵךְ / כַּרְךְ	קַטֵּל	כַּרְךְ	קַטֵּל

29.2 III Hey

III Hey Piel Imperfect	III Hey Qal Imperfect	III Hey Piel Perfect	III Hey Qal Perfect	
יְגַלֶּה	יְגַלֶּה	גָּלָה	גָּלָה	3ms
תְּגַלֶּה	תְּגַלֶּה	גָּלְתָה	גָּלְתָה	3fs
תְּגַלְּהוּ	תְּגַלְּהוּ	גָּלִיתְּ	גָּלִיתְּ	2ms
תְּגַלִּי	תְּגַלִּי	גָּלִיתִּי	גָּלִיתִּי	2fs
אֶגְלֶה	אֶגְלֶה	גָּלִיתִי	גָּלִיתִי	1cs

יְגַלּוּ	יְגַלּוּ	גָּלוּ	גָּלוּ	3c/mp
תְּגַלְּינָה	תְּגַלְּינָה			3fp
תְּגַלּוּ	תְּגַלּוּ	גָּלִיתֶם	גָּלִיתֶם	2mp
תְּגַלְּינָה	תְּגַלְּינָה	גָּלִיתֶן	גָּלִיתֶן	2fp
נְגַלֶּה	נְגַלֶּה	גָּלִינוּ	גָּלִינוּ	1cp

III Hey Piel Participle	III Hey Qal Participle	III Hey Piel Imperative	III Hey Qal Imperative	
מְגַלֶּה	גָּלָה	גַּלֵּה	גַּלֵּה	2ms
מְגַלֶּה	גָּלָה	גַּלִּי	גַּלִּי	2fs
מְגַלִּים	גָּלִים	גַּלוּ	גַּלוּ	2mp
מְגַלּוֹת	גָּלוֹת		גַּלִּינָה	2fp

III Hey Piel Inf abs	III Hey Qal Inf abs	III Hey Piel Inf const	III Hey Qal Inf const
גַּלֵּה	גָּלָה	גַּלוֹת	גָּלוֹת

III Hey Piel Wci	III Hey Qal Wci	III Hey Piel Jussive	III Hey Qal Jussive	
יִגַּל	יִגַּל	יִגַּל	יִגַּל	3ms

The Root צוה

- The root **צוה** is not Hollow; the *vav* (ו) is a consonant. This root is used as a verb mainly in the piel (“to command”). (It is also used in the noun **מִצְוָה**, “commandment.”) In verb forms from this root, ו is not *shureq*, but *vav* with strong *dagesh*; for example, **צַוְהוּ**, **צַוְהִי**, **צַוְהֵה**, and **מִצְוָה**. The *inf const* is usually spelled defectively, **צוֹת** for **צוֹתוֹת**.

Vocabulary

seven	שִׁבְעָה	403	one	אֶחָד	373
eight	שְׁמֹנֶה	561	two	שְׁנַיִם (שְׁנַיִם)	406
nine	תְּשֻׁעָה	723	three	שְׁלֹשָׁה	443
ten	עֲשָׂרָה	434	four	אַרְבָּעָה	410
one hundred	מֵאָה	391	five	חֲמֵשֶׁה	420
one thousand	אַלְפֵי (אַלְף)	409	six	שֵׁשׁ	485

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of the piel from weak roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כָּסָה						
2. בָּרַךְ						
3. יָגֵלָה						
4. אָבַרְךָ						
5. מִכְסִים						
6. מְבַרְכוֹת						
7. גָּלִינוּ						
8. בָּרַכְנוּ						
9. בָּרַךְ						
10. כְּסוֹת						

B. Focus on the piel from strong and weak roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. שִׁמְחָתֶם						
2. יְהַלְלוּ						
3. יִכְסוּ						
4. צִוִּיתָ						
5. מְבַקְשֵׁת						
6. מְגַלָּה						
7. קָדְשׁוּ						
8. בָּרְכוּ						
9. צִוִּיתָ						
10. תְּבַרְךָ						

C. Focus on the difference in meaning when a verb occurs in both the qal and the piel. Translate the following verb forms. If you encounter a root you have not yet learned in the qal or piel, consult the vocabulary at the back of the grammar for the meaning.

1. שָׁמְחוּ .2. שָׁמְחוּ .3. סָפְרָתִי .4. סָפְרָתִי .5. קָדַשׁ
6. קָדַשׁ .7. גָּדְלָנוּ .8. גָּדְלָנוּ .9. כָּלִיתָם .10. כָּלִיתָם

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on the construct state. Translate the following.

1. תּוֹרַת יְהוָה .2. עֲדַת הַקֹּדֶשׁ .3. שְׁלוֹם הָאָרֶץ .4. מִשְׁפַּט הַמֶּלֶךְ
5. עֲבָדֵי הָאִישׁ .6. חוֹמַת הָעִיר .7. כְּבוֹד הַגְּבוּר .8. מְלַחֶמֶת הַשָּׁנָה
9. אֲדַמַּת קֹדֶשׁ .10. אֱלֹהֵי הַשָּׁמַיִם .11. צְדָקַת הָעַם .12. דְּבַר הַנְּבִיא

E. Focus on verbs in the qal and the piel. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. מָלָא						
2. זָקַן						
3. הִלְלוּ						
4. יִשְׁמַח						
5. תְּסַפְרוּ						
6. כִּסּוּת						
7. בְּנוּת						
8. מְצוּיִם						
9. דְּבַרְתֶּם						
10. גָּלִיתִי						

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

	1. וַיְדַבְּרוּ כַּהֲנֵי הַבַּיִת לְעַם וַיֹּאמְרוּ לָהֶם בְּרַכּוּ וַגְדִּלוּ אֶת־שֵׁם־יְהוָה הַגָּדוֹל
1. The temple priests spoke to the people and said to them, “Bless and magnify the great name of the LORD.”	2. וַיְהִי כְכַלּוֹת הַנְּבִיא לְדַבֵּר וַיִּפְּלוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים עַל־פְּנֵיהֶם וַיִּבְכוּ וַיִּקְוּמוּ וַיֹּאמְרוּ חָטְאנוּ מְאֹד
2. When the prophet finished speaking, the men fell on their faces and wept. Then they got up and said, “We have sinned greatly.”	3. וַהֲיָה בַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְכָרַת יְהוָה בְּרִית לְכָל־הַגּוֹיִם וְשָׁמְחוּ בּוֹ וְהִלְלוּ אוֹתוֹ לְעוֹלָם
3. In that day the LORD will make a covenant for all nations. And they will rejoice in him and praise him forever.	4. אָבִיתִי לְסַפֵּר לְךָ אֶת־כָּל־אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה לִי יְהוָה אַחֲרֵי בְקָשְׁתִּי אוֹתוֹ בְּכָל־נַפְשִׁי
4. I want to tell you everything which the LORD did for me after I sought him with all my soul.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following from Joshua 22:2–3

(2) וַיֹּאמֶר אֲלֵיהֶם אַתֶּם שְׂמַרְתֶּם אֶת כָּל־אֲשֶׁר צִוָּה אֶתְכֶם מֹשֶׁה^a עַבְדַּד יְהוָה וַתִּשְׁמְעוּ בְּקוֹלִי לְכָל אֲשֶׁר צִוִּיתִי אֶתְכֶם: (3) לֹא עֲזַבְתֶּם אֶת־אֲחֵיכֶם

^a“Moses”

30

NUMBERS AND “SURPRISE”

Numbers

30.1 Cardinals and Ordinals from One to Ten

		Cardinals				Ordinals	
		Feminine	Masculine			Feminine	Masculine
1		אַחַת	אַחַד	1st		רְאשׁוֹנָה	רְאשׁוֹן
2		שְׁתַּיִם	שְׁנַיִם	2nd		שְׁנִית	שְׁנִי
3		שְׁלֹשׁ	שְׁלֹשָׁה	3rd		שְׁלִישִׁית	שְׁלִישִׁי
4		אַרְבַּע	אַרְבַּעַה	4th		רְבִיעִית	רְבִיעִי
5		חֲמִשׁ	חֲמִשָּׁה	5th		חֲמִישִׁית	חֲמִישִׁי
6		שֵׁשׁ	שֵׁשָׁה	6th		שִׁשִּׁית	שִׁשִּׁי
7		שִׁבְעַ	שִׁבְעָה	7th		שְׁבִיעִית	שְׁבִיעִי
8		שְׁמֹנֶה	שְׁמֹנֶה	8th		שְׁמִינִית	שְׁמִינִי
9		תְּשַׁע	תְּשַׁעַה	9th		תְּשִׁיעִית	תְּשִׁיעִי
10		עָשָׂר	עָשָׂרָה	10th		עֲשִׂירִית	עֲשִׂירִי

- The cardinal number *one* agrees in gender and follows the noun it modifies, for example, **אִישׁ אֶחָד**, “one man,” and **אִשָּׁה אַחַת**, “one woman.”
- The cardinal number *two* agrees in gender but may come before or after the noun it modifies, for example, **שְׁנַיִם אַנְשִׁים**, “two men,” and **נְשִׁים שְׁתַּיִם**, “two women.”
- The cardinal numbers *three* through *ten* may come before or after the noun they modify, but the form that looks feminine is used with a

masculine noun and the form that looks masculine is used with a feminine noun, for example, **שְׁלֹשָׁה אַנְשִׁים**, “three men,” and **שְׁלֹשׁ נָשִׁים**, “three women.”

- The cardinal numbers *two* through *ten* may also be used in the construct state and are then placed before the noun that they modify, for example, **שְׁלֹשַׁת אַנְשִׁים**, “three men,” and **שְׁלֹשׁ נָשִׁים**, “three women.”
- The ordinal numbers are used just like adjectives, for example, **הַיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי**, “the seventh day.”

30.2 “Teens”

- The numbers *eleven* through *nineteen* are made up of a combination of the “ones” plus a form of “ten.” The form of “ten” with masculine nouns is **עָשָׂר**, resulting in, for example, **שְׁלֹשָׁה עָשָׂר**, “thirteen.” The form of “ten” with feminine nouns is **עָשָׂרָה**, resulting in, for example, **שְׁלֹשׁ עָשָׂרָה**, “thirteen.”

30.3 “Tens”

- The “tens” (i.e., 20, 30, 40, etc.) are formed with masculine plurals. “Twenty” is formed with the plural of ten, **עָשָׂרִים**. “Thirty” through “ninety” are the plurals of the corresponding “ones,” for example, **שְׁלֹשִׁים**, “thirty,” and **אַרְבָּעִים**, “forty.”

30.4 “Hundreds”

- The “hundreds” are formed by placing a construct form of the “ones” in front of the plural of “hundred,” for example, **חֲמִשָּׁת מֵאוֹת**, “five hundred,” and **שֵׁשֶׁת מֵאוֹת**, “six hundred.”

30.5 “Thousands”

- The “thousands” are formed by placing a construct form of the “ones” in front of the plural of “thousand,” for example, **שִׁבְעַת אֲלָפִים**, “seven thousand,” and **שְׁמֹנַת אֲלָפִים**, “eight thousand.”

“Surprise”

- 30.6** The particle **הִנֵּה**, traditionally translated “behold,” often introduces something “unexpected” or a “surprise.”
- In reports of dreams, **הִנֵּה** often occurs.

וְהִנֵּה מַלְאָכֵי אֱלֹהִים

“There were angels of God!” (Genesis 28:12)

- Sometimes an author draws attention to the marvelous with הִנֵּה.

וַיֵּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת-כָּל-אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה וְהִנֵּה-טוֹב מְאֹד

“And God saw everything that he had made, and it was very good!” (Genesis 1:31)

- An event about to take place in the immediate future is often expressed by הִנֵּה followed by a participle.

הִנֵּה אֲנֹכִי עֹשֶׂה דָבָר

“I am about to do something. . . !” (1 Samuel 3:11)

- הִנֵּה is used to show existence.

הִנֵּה אִשְׁתְּךָ קַח וְלֵךְ

“Here is your wife! Take her and go!” (Genesis 12:19)

- הִנֵּה may have pronoun suffixes added to it.

הִנֵּךְ שָׁכֵב עִם אֲבֹתֶיךָ

“You are about to lie down with your fathers.” (Deut 31:16)

Vocabulary

Qal: be provoked	כָּעַס	159	strength, virtue	חֵיל (חֵיל)	462
Hiph: provoke	הִכְעִיס		staff, tribe	מִטָּה	470
Qal: remain	שָׁאַר	113	inheritance	נַחֲלָה	476
Hiph: leave	הִשְׁאִיר		leader	שָׂר	442
	שָׁבַע	114	sabbath	שַׁבָּת	557
Hiph: make swear	הִשְׁבִּיעַ		gate	שַׁעַר (שַׁעַר)	445
	שָׁלַךְ	120			
Hiph: throw; reject	הִשְׁלִיךְ				

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on cardinal numbers one through ten. Translate the following.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. מִלְּךְ אֶחָד | 2. אֵם אַחַת | 3. שְׁנַיִם מְלָכִים |
| 4. שְׁתַּיִם אַמּוֹת | 5. שְׁלֹשָׁה מְלָכִים | 6. שְׁלֹשׁ אַמּוֹת |
| 7. תְּשַׁע אַמּוֹת | 8. שִׁבְעָה מְלָכִים | 9. חֲמֵשָׁה מְלָכִים |
| 10. עֶשְׂרֵה מְלָכִים | 11. יָשׁ אַמּוֹת | 12. אַרְבַּע אַמּוֹת |

B. Focus on ordinal numbers one through ten. Translate the following.

- | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. הַמְּלֶךְ הָרִאשׁוֹן | 2. הָאֵם הָרִאשׁוֹנָה | 3. הַמְּלֶךְ הַשְּׁלִישִׁי |
| 4. הָאֵם הַשְּׁלִישִׁית | 5. הָאֵם הָרְבִיעִית | 6. הַמְּלֶךְ הַשְּׁמִינִי |
| 7. הַמְּלֶךְ הַשְּׁבִיעִי | 8. הָאֵם הַתְּשִׁיעִית | 9. הַמְּלֶךְ הַשְּׁשִׁי |

C. Focus on higher cardinal numbers. Decipher the following.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. שְׁלֹשִׁים | 2. שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשֵׁשׁ |
| 3. אַרְבָּעָה וְחֲמִישִׁים | 4. תְּשַׁעִים וְיָשׁ |
| 5. שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת | 6. שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשֵׁשׁ |
| 7. שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשֵׁשִׁים | 8. שְׁלֹשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשֵׁשִׁים וְשֵׁשׁ |
| 9. שְׁלֹשַׁת אֲלָפִים | 10. שְׁלֹשַׁת אֲלָפִים וְשֵׁשׁ מֵאוֹת וְשֵׁשִׁים וְשֵׁשׁ |

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on the qal and piel of strong roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. שָׁלַחַתְּ						
2. דִּבַּרְתָּ						
3. נִכְתַּב						
4. נִסְפַּר						

5. מָלְכוּ						
6. אָהֵל						
7. קָדְשׁוֹ						
8. קָדְשׁוֹ						
9. מְשַׁמְּחִים						
10. בְּקִשְׁתָּם						

E. Focus on negatives. Translate the following, paying attention to the different negative particles used.

	1. לא נשלח את־הנער
1. We will not send the boy.	2. אל נשלחה את־הנער
2. Let's not send the boy.	3. לא תבנה את־הבית
3. You (ms)/she will not build the house.	4. אל תבן את־הבית
4. Don't build/let her build the house.	5. יֵשֵׁב לְבִלְתִּי עִמָּדוֹ כָּל־הַיּוֹם
5. He sat down, so as not to stand the whole day.	6. אָסְרוּ אוֹתוֹ לְבִלְתִּי מָלְכוֹ עַל־הָעִיר
6. They imprisoned him, so that he would not reign over the city.	

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

	1. רָאִינוּ אֶת־שְׁלֹשֶׁת הַנְּבִיאִים הַמְדַבְּרִים לְזִקְנֵי הָעִיר
1. We saw the three prophets who were speaking to the elders of the city.	2. יֵצְאוּ אַרְבָּעִים גְּבוּרִים לְמִלְחָמָה הַגְּדוּלָה וַיְמֹתוּ שָׁם וְלֹא שָׁבוּ לְמִשְׁפַּחוֹתֵיהֶם

<p>2. Forty warriors went out to the great battle and died there. They did not return to their families.</p>	<p>3. וַיֵּלְכוּ חֲמֵשׁ מֵאוֹת וַחֲמִשִּׁים עֲבָדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ לְמִצָּא אֶת־בְּנוֹ וַיְהִי בְּמִצְאָם אוֹתוֹ וַיָּשׁוּבוּ לְבֵית הַמֶּלֶךְ וַיֹּאמֶר לוֹ הַמֶּלֶךְ אַל תֵּלֵךְ אֶל־הַשָּׂדֶה כִּי־אִם שְׁנַיִם עֲבָדִים עִמָּךְ</p>
<p>3. Five hundred and fifty of the king’s servants went to find his son. And when they found him, they returned to the king’s palace. Then the king said to him, “Don’t go into the field unless two servants are with you.”</p>	<p>4. וְהִנֵּה בַיּוֹם הַהוּא יָבוֹא יְהוָה לְשַׁפֵּט אֶת־כָּל־הָאָרֶץ וְכָל־בְּנֵי־הָאָדָם יִרְאוּ אֶת־כְּבוֹדוֹ וְעָבְדוּ אוֹתוֹ עַמּוֹ לְעוֹלָם</p>
<p>4. And in that day the LORD will come to judge the whole earth. All mankind will see his glory. And his people will serve him forever!</p>	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following from 2 Samuel 5:4–5.

- (4) בֶּן־שְׁלֹשִׁים^a שָׁנָה דָּוִד בְּמָלְכוֹ אַרְבַּעִים שָׁנָה מָלַךְ:
 (5) בְּחֶבְרוֹן^b מָלַךְ עַל־יְהוּדָה^c שְׁבַע שָׁנִים וְשָׁשָׁה חֳדָשִׁים
 וּבִירוּשָׁלַם^d מָלַךְ שְׁלֹשִׁים וְשָׁשָׁה שָׁנָה עַל כָּל־יִשְׂרָאֵל^e וַיְהוּדָה^c

^aLit. “son of thirty years” = “thirty years old”; a common noun like שָׁנָה is often in the singular when used with teens or tens.

^b“In Hebron”

^c“Judah”

^d“Jerusalem”; spelled defectively for יְרוּשָׁלַיִם

^e“Israel”

31

THE HIPHIL: STRONG ROOTS

The Meaning of the Hiphil

- The hiphil is the third of the seven major verb patterns you will learn. The hiphil makes up 13% of all verbs in the Hebrew Bible.¹ The qal, piel, and hiphil make up 91% of all verbs.
- Like the qal and the piel, the hiphil has a *pf*, *impf*, *jus*, *coh*, *impv*, *ptc*, *inf const*, and *inf abs*.
- To change verb pattern is to **change the meaning** of the verb.

Hiphil	Qal	Root
“magnify”	“be great”	גדל
“make king”	“be king”	מלך
“appoint”	“visit”	פקד
“sanctify”	“be holy”	קדש

- Some verbs occur only (or mainly) in the hiphil, without a corresponding qal.

“tell”		נגד
“deliver”		נצל
“throw”		שלך

The hiphil is abbreviated hiph.

1. B. Waltke and M. O'Connor, *Syntax*, §21.2.3e.

Form of the Hiphil

- The primary characteristics of the hiphil are: (1) a prefixed ה and (2) י□ as the theme vowel.

31.1 Perfect

Hiphil	Qal	
הִקְטִיל	קָטַל	3ms
הִקְטִילָהּ	קָטַלָּהּ	3fs
הִקְטִילְתָּ	קָטַלְתָּ	2ms
הִקְטִילְתְּ	קָטַלְתְּ	2fs
הִקְטִילְתִּי	קָטַלְתִּי	1cs

הִקְטִילוּ	קָטְלוּ	3cp
הִקְטִילְתֶּם	קָטַלְתֶּם	2mp
הִקְטִילְתֶּן	קָטַלְתֶּן	2fp
הִקְטִילְנוּ	קָטְלוּ	1cp

31.2 Imperfect

- The characteristic ה is dropped in the *impf*, as is the ה of the definite article with an inseparable preposition, for example, לְהַבִּיתָ for הַבִּיתָ.

Hiphil	Qal	
יִקְטִיל	יִקְטַל	3ms
תִּקְטִיל	תִּקְטַל	3fs
תִּקְטִיל	תִּקְטַל	2ms
תִּקְטִילִי	תִּקְטַלִּי	2fs
אֶקְטִיל	אֶקְטַל	1cs

יִקְטִילוּ	יִקְטְלוּ	3mp
תִּקְטִילְנָה	תִּקְטִילְנָה	3fp
תִּקְטִילוּ	תִּקְטְלוּ	2mp

Hiphil	Qal	
תִּקְטְלֶנָּה	תִּקְטְלֶנָּה	2fp
נִקְטֵיל	נִקְטֵל	1cp

31.3 Imperative

Imperative	Imperfect	
הִקְטֵל	תִּקְטֵיל	2ms
הִקְטִילִי	תִּקְטִילִי	2fs
הִקְטִילוּ	תִּקְטִילוּ	2mp
הִקְטִלְנָה	תִּקְטִלְנָה	2fp

31.4 Infinitives

Inf. Const.	Imperative
הִקְטֵיל	הִקְטֵל
Inf. Abs.	
הִקְטֵל	

31.5 Participle

- The characteristic ה is dropped in the *ptc.*

Hiphil	Qal	
מִקְטֵיל	קֵטֵל	ms
מִקְטִילַת	קֵטִילַת	fs
מִקְטִילִים	קֵטִילִים	mp
מִקְטִילוֹת	קֵטִילוֹת	fp

31.6 Cohortative

- The characteristic ה is dropped in the *coh.*

Hiphil	Qal	
אֶקְטִלָּה	אֶקְטִלָּה	1cs
נִקְטִלָּה	נִקְטִלָּה	1cp

31.7 Jussive

- The *jus* is a short form; see §24.8 and §25.5.

Jussive	Imperfect	
יִקְטֹל	יִקְטִיל	3ms

31.8 Vav-relative

Vav-relative	Jussive	
וַיִּקְטֹל	יִקְטֹל	3ms

Vocabulary

	חֲרֹשׁ	149	faithfulness, truth	אָמֶת	65
Hiph: be silent, silence	הִחְרִישׁ				
	נֶבֶט	170	camp	מַחֲנֶה	469
Hiph: look	הִבִּיט				
	נָגַד	49	work, product	מַעֲשֵׂה	473
Hiph: tell	הִגִּיד				
	נָדַח	171	midst	קָרַב (קָרַב)	480
Hiph: scatter	הִדְיִחַ				
	נָצַל	53		אָמֵן	65
Hiph: deliver	הִצִּיל		Hiph: believe, trust	הִאֲמִין	

Practice**Focusing on New Material**

- A. Focus on the form of the hiphil.** Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הִכְעִיסוּ						
2. הִשְׁלִיכוּ						

3.	הִשְׁאִיר					
4.	אֲשַׁבֵּעַ					
5.	מִכְעִיסִים					
6.	הִשְׁלַכְתֶּם					
7.	תִּשְׁבִּיעוּ					
8.	וַתִּכְעַס					
9.	מִשְׁאֲרַת					
10.	הִשְׁלַכְתִּי					

B. Focus on the difference in meaning when a verb occurs in both the qal and the hiphil. Translate the following verb forms. If you encounter a root that you have not yet learned in the qal or hiphil, consult the vocabulary at the back of the grammar for the meaning.

1. כָּעַס 2. הִכְעִיס 3. שְׁאֲרַתִּי 4. הִשְׁאֲרַתִּי 5. קָדַשְׁתָּ
 6. הִקְדַּשְׁתָּ 7. זָכַרְנוּ 8. הִזְכַּרְנוּ 9. גָּדַלְתֶּם 10. הִגְדַּלְתֶּם

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on the form of verbs in the qal from I Guttural roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. חִזְקֶתֶם						
2. עֲזַבְתֶּם						
3. יִחְזַק						
4. אָעַמַּד						
5. עָמַד						
6. חִשְׁבְתֶם						

D. Focus on qal verbs from I Nun roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יָתַן						
2. אָפַל						
3. אָפְלָה						
4. נָסַע						
5. תָּגַשׁ						
6. יָשָׂא						
7. יָטָה						
8. נָתַתֶּם						

Putting It All Together**E.** Translate the following.

	1. חָטָא אִישׁ אֶחָד וַיִּכְעַס אֶת־יְהוָה וַיַּחַר אָפוֹ עָלָיו עַד שֶׁבַּ מִחֲטָאתוֹ
1. One man sinned and provoked the LORD, so his anger burned against him, until he turned from his sin.	2. לֹא אָבִינוּ לְהִשְׁאִיר אֶת־הַצֹּאֵן בְּהָרִים וַנִּקַּח אוֹתוֹ לַשָּׂדֶה
2. We were not willing to leave the flock in the mountains, so we took it to the field.	3. הִשְׁבִּיעַ הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־שְׁנַיִם הַמְּלָאכִים כִּי לֹא יֵדְבְּרוּ לְזִקְנֵי הָעִיר וַיִּשְׁלַח אוֹתָם מִבֵּיתוֹ בַּלַּיְלָה
3. The king made the two messengers swear that they would not speak to the elders of the city, then he sent them from his palace at night.	4. בִּשְׂאֵת הַשֹּׁר אֶת־מָטוֹ עַל־רֹאשׁוֹ וַיִּקּוּמוּ כָּל־הָאֲנָשִׁים וַיַּעֲמְדוּ לְפָנָיו וַיֹּאמֶר אֲלֵיהֶם צֵאוּ לַמִּלְחָמָה וְאַל־תִּירְאוּ כִּי יְהוָה עִמָּכֶם
4. When the leader raised his staff above his head, all the men arose and stood before him. Then he said to them, “Go out to the battle, and do not be afraid, for the LORD is with you.”	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

F. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

1. 1 Kings 12:20
 וַיְהִי כְּשָׁמַע כָּל־יִשְׂרָאֵל כִּי־שָׁב יִרְבֵּעָם^a וַיִּשְׁלְחוּ וַיִּקְרְאוּ
 אֹתוֹ אֶל־הָעֵדָה וַיִּמְלִיכוּ אֹתוֹ עַל־כָּל־יִשְׂרָאֵל
2. Joshua 3:6
 וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוֹשֻׁעַ^b אֶל־הַכֹּהֲנִים לֵאמֹר שְׂאוּ^c אֶת־אֲרוֹן הַבְּרִית
 וְעָבְרוּ לְפָנַי הָעַם וַיִּשְׂאוּ^d אֶת־אֲרוֹן הַבְּרִית וַיֵּלְכוּ
 לְפָנַי הָעַם

^a “Jeroboam”

^b “Joshua”

^c From the root ושא.

^d The form should be וַיִּשְׂאוּ, with strong *dagesh* in the ש, but strong *dagesh* is often lost when the consonant is followed by vocal *sheva*.

THE HIPHIL: I GUTTURAL AND I NUN

I Guttural

- Because the first consonant is a guttural, which usually does not take simple *sheva*, I Guttural verbs vary from the standard paradigm by having *chatef-segol* (◌ֿ) under the first root letter in the *pf* and *chatef-patach* (◌ֿ) under the first root letter in the other forms.

I Guttural Imperfect	Standard Imperfect	I Guttural Perfect	Standard Perfect	
יַעֲמִיד	יִקְטִיל	הֶעֱמִיד	הִקְטִיל	3ms
תַּעֲמִיד	תִּקְטִיל	הֶעֱמִידָה	הִקְטִילָה	3fs
תַּעֲמִיד	תִּקְטִיל	הֶעֱמַדְתָּ	הִקְטַלְתָּ	2ms
תַּעֲמִידִי	תִּקְטִילִי	הֶעֱמַדְתְּ	הִקְטַלְתְּ	2fs
אֶעֱמִיד	אִקְטִיל	הֶעֱמַדְתִּי	הִקְטַלְתִּי	1cs

יַעֲמִידוּ	יִקְטִילוּ	הֶעֱמִידוּ	הִקְטִילוּ	3m/cp
תַּעֲמִידְנָה	תִּקְטִלְנָה			
תַּעֲמִידוּ	תִּקְטִילוּ	הֶעֱמַדְתֶּם	הִקְטַלְתֶּם	2mp
תַּעֲמִידְנָה	תִּקְטִלְנָה	הֶעֱמַדְתֶּן	הִקְטַלְתֶּן	2fp
נֶעֱמִיד	נִקְטִיל	הֶעֱמַדְנוּ	הִקְטַלְנוּ	1cp

I Guttural Participle	Standard Participle	I Guttural Imperative	Standard Imperative	
מַעֲמִיד	מִקְטִיל	הֶעֱמַד	הִקְטֵל	2ms
מַעֲמִידַת	מִקְטִילַת	הֶעֱמִידִי	הִקְטִילִי	2fs

I Guttural Participle	Standard Participle	I Guttural Imperative	Standard Imperative	
מְעַמִּידִים	מְקַטִּילִים	הַעֲמִידוּ	הַקְטִילוּ	2mp
מְעַמִּידוֹת	מְקַטִּילוֹת	הַעֲמִדְנָה	הַקְטִלְנָה	2fp
I Guttural Inf abs	Standard Inf abs	I Guttural Inf const	Standard Inf const	
הַעֲמִד	הַקְטִל	הַעֲמִיד	הַקְטִיל	
I Guttural Vav-rel.	Standard Vav-rel.	I Guttural Jussive	Standard Jussive	
וַיַּעֲמִד	וַיִּקְטֵל	יַעֲמִד	יִקְטֵל	3ms

I Nun

- The *nun* of the root will always assimilate to the second root consonant in these forms.

Participle	Imperative	Imperfect	Perfect	
מַצִּיל		יַצִּיל	הִצִּיל	3ms
מַצִּילָת		תַּצִּיל	הִצִּילָה	3fs
	הַצֵּל	תַּצִּיל	הִצִּילְתָּ	2ms
	הַצִּילִי	תַּצִּילִי	הִצִּילְתְּ	2fs
		אֶצִּיל	הִצִּילְתִּי	1cs
מַצִּילִים		יַצִּילוּ	הִצִּילוּ	3c/mp
מַצִּילוֹת		תַּצִּלְנָה		3fp
	הַצִּילוּ	תַּצִּילוּ	הִצִּילְתֶּם	2mp
	הַצִּלְנָה	תַּצִּלְנָה	הִצִּילְתֶּן	2fp
		נֶצִּיל	הִצִּלְנוּ	1cp

Vav-rel.	Jussive	Inf abs	Inf const
וַיִּצֵל	יִצֵל	הִצֵּל	הִצִּיל

Vocabulary

friend	רֵעַ	482	fire	אֵשׁ	411
	יָבַח	153	fire offering	אֵשָׁה	587
Hiph: rebuke	הוֹכִיחַ				
	יָשַׁע	41	with	אֶת	889
Hiph: save	הוֹשִׁיעַ				
	יָתַר	84	flesh, meat	בָּשָׂר	458
Hiph: leave behind	הוֹתִיר				
Qal: learn	לָמַד	162	declaration	נְאֻם	475
Piel: teach	לָמַד				

Note:

- The preposition אֶת must not be confused with the direct object marker אֶת/את־. With the pronoun suffix, the preposition אֶת has the form אֹתוֹ, in contrast to the direct object marker, which has the form אוֹתוֹ.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the the form of the hiphil from I Guttural and I Nun roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הִאֲמִינוּ						
2. אָבִיט						
3. תִּגְדּוּ						

4.	הִגִּידוּ					
5.	הִגִּידוּ					
6.	נִחְרַשׁ					
7.	הֶאֱמִין					
8.	הֶאֱמִין					
9.	הִחְרַשׁ					
10.	יִצֵּל					
11.	וַיִּצֵּל					
12.	הִבְטָחָם					
13.	מֵאֲמִין					
14.	יִחְרַשׁ					
15.	מִבִּיטִים					

Reviewing Previous Lessons

B. Focus on the form of all verbs learned to this point. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1.	מִצָּאָה					
2.	גְּלוּת					
3.	יֵאֱמִינוּ					
4.	מִכְרַךְ					
5.	יִתֵּן					
6.	בְּנָה					
7.	דִּבֶּר					
8.	יִרַד					
9.	קִמְּתָם					
10.	גְּלוּת					

C. Focus on qal verbs from I Yod roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יִשָּׁב						
2. יִיבֹשׁ						
3. יִלְדוּ						
4. יִרְאֶה						
5. יִיטֵב						
6. יִאֲדַע						
7. יִתְצַאֵי						
8. יִתְרַשֵּׁי						

Putting It All Together

D. Translate the following.

	1. לֹא הֶאֱמִינוּ בַיהוָה אֱלֹהֵיהֶם וְלֹא אָבָה לְאָבֵד אוֹתָם כִּי עָמַד הֵם אֲשֶׁר אָהַב אוֹתָם
1. They did not believe in the LORD their God, but he was not willing to destroy them, because they were his people, whom he loved.	2. נִאֲמִינָה בְּאֱלֹהֵינוּ וְיִצֵּל אוֹתָנוּ מִכָּל־אִי־בִינוּ וְעַבְדְּנוּ אוֹתוֹ לְעוֹלָם
2. Let us trust in our God, so that he will save us from all our enemies. Then we will serve him forever.	3. כְּמִצָּאָם אֶת־הָאִישׁ הָרָשָׁע בְּקִרְבִּי הַמִּתְחַנֶּה וַיִּקְחוּ אוֹתוֹ אֶל־הַזְּקֵנִים אֲשֶׁר שָׁפְטוּ אוֹתוֹ וַיִּשָּׁב מִחַטָּאתוֹ
3. When they found the wicked man within the camp, they took him to the elders, who judged him. Then he repented from his sin.	4. אָגִיד אֶת־שִׁמְךָ לְכָל־הַגּוֹיִם וַיִּדְעוּ כִּי אַתָּה הָאֱלֹהִים הַחַיִּים וְכִי תַעֲמַד אִמְתָּךְ לְדוֹר וָדוֹר
4. I will declare your name to all the nations. Then they will know that you are the living God, and that your truth endures for all generations (lit. “to generation and generation”).	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

- E.** Translate the following from 2 Chronicles 9:5–6. The first verb is *3fs* and refers to the Queen of Sheba.

(5) וַתֹּאמֶר אֶל־הַמֶּלֶךְ אָמֶת הַדְּבָר אֲשֶׁר שָׁמַעְתִּי בְּאֶרֶץ־
 עַל־דְּבָרֶיךָ וְעַל־חֲכָמְתְּךָ^a: (6) וְלֹא־הֶאֱמַנְתִּי לְדַבְרֵיהֶם
 עַד^b אֲשֶׁר־בָּאתִי וַתִּרְאֶינָה עֵינַי

^aThe noun חֲכָמָה (*qamets-chatuf*) means wisdom.

^bעַד and אֲשֶׁר עַד mean the same thing.

33

THE HIPHIL: I YOD

I Yod (Yod)

- I Yod (Yod) verb forms originally were **הִיטִיב**, **יִיטִיב**, etc., before the initial *patach* changed to a *chireq*. But because the unaccented diphthong יִ□ contracts to י□ (see “diphthong,” p. 70), the forms are **הִיטִיב**, **יִיטִיב**, etc.

I Yod (Yod) Imperfect	Standard Imperfect	I Yod (Yod) Perfect	Standard Perfect	
יִיטִיב	יִקְטִיל	הִיטִיב	הִקְטִיל	3ms
תִּיטִיב	תִּקְטִיל	הִיטִיבָּה	הִקְטִילָּהּ	3fs
תִּיטִיב	תִּקְטִיל	הִיטִיבְתָּ	הִקְטִילְתָּ	2ms
תִּיטִיבִי	תִּקְטִילִי	הִיטִיבְתְּ	הִקְטִילְתְּ	2fs
אִיטִיב	אִקְטִיל	הִיטִיבְתִּי	הִקְטִילְתִּי	1cs

יִיטִיבוּ	יִקְטִילוּ	הִיטִיבוּ	הִקְטִילוּ	3m/cp
תִּיטִיבְנָה	תִּקְטִלְנָה			
תִּיטִיבוּ	תִּקְטִילוּ	הִיטִיבְתֶּם	הִקְטִילְתֶּם	2mp
תִּיטִיבְנָה	תִּקְטִלְנָה	הִיטִיבְתֵּן	הִקְטִילְתֵּן	2fp
נִיטִיב	נִקְטִיל	הִיטִיבְנוּ	הִקְטִילְנוּ	1cp

I Yod (Yod) Participle	Standard Participle	I Yod (Yod) Imperative	Standard Imperative	
מִיטִיב	מִקְטִיל	הִיטֵב	הִקְטֵל	2ms
מִיטִיבֵת	מִקְטִילֵת	הִיטִיבִי	הִקְטִילִי	2fs

I Yod (Yod) Participle	Standard Participle	I Yod (Yod) Imperative	Standard Imperative	
מִיטִיבִים	מְקַטְלִים	הִיטִיבוּ	הֲקַטְלוּ	2mp
מִיטִיבוֹת	מְקַטְלוֹת	הִיטְבִּינָה	הֲקַטְלִינָה	2fp

I Yod (Yod) Inf abs	Standard Inf abs	I Yod (Yod) Inf const	Standard Inf const
הִיטֵב	הֲקַטֵּל	הִיטִיב	הֲקַטִּיל

I Yod (Yod) Wei	Standard Wei	I Yod (Yod) Jussive	Standard Jussive	
וַיִּיטֵב	וַיִּקְטֵל	יִיטֵב	יִקְטֵל	3ms

I Yod (Vav)

- I Yod (Vav) verb forms should be הוֹשִׁיב, הוֹשִׁיבוּ, etc. But because the unaccented diphthong וֹ contracts to ו, the forms are הוֹשִׁיב, הוֹשִׁיבוּ, etc.

I Yod (Vav) Imperfect	Standard Imperfect	I Yod (Vav) Perfect	Standard Perfect	
יוֹשִׁיב	יִקְטִיל	הוֹשִׁיב	הֲקַטִּיל	3ms
תוֹשִׁיב	תִּקְטִיל	הוֹשִׁיבָה	הֲקַטִּילָה	3fs
תוֹשִׁיב	תִּקְטִיל	הוֹשִׁיבְתָּ	הֲקַטִּילְתָּ	2ms
תוֹשִׁיבִי	תִּקְטִילִי	הוֹשִׁיבְתְּ	הֲקַטִּילְתְּ	2fs
אוֹשִׁיב	אִקְטִיל	הוֹשִׁיבְתִּי	הֲקַטִּילְתִּי	1cs

יוֹשִׁיבוּ	יִקְטִילוּ	הוֹשִׁיבוּ	הֲקַטִּילוּ	3m/cp
תוֹשִׁיבָנָה	תִּקְטִילָנָה			
תוֹשִׁיבוּ	תִּקְטִילוּ	הוֹשִׁיבְתֶם	הֲקַטִּילְתֶם	2mp
תוֹשִׁיבָנָה	תִּקְטִילָנָה	הוֹשִׁיבְתֶן	הֲקַטִּילְתֶן	2fp
נוֹשִׁיב	נִקְטִיל	הוֹשִׁיבֵנוּ	הֲקַטִּילֵנוּ	1cp

I Yod (Vav) Participle	Standard Participle	I Yod (Vav) Imperative	Standard Imperative	
מוֹשִׁיב	מִקְטִיל	הוֹשִׁב	הִקְטִל	2ms
מוֹשֶׁבֶת	מִקְטִילַת	הוֹשִׁיבִי	הִקְטִילִי	2fs
מוֹשִׁיבִים	מִקְטִילִים	הוֹשִׁיבוּ	הִקְטִילוּ	2mp
מוֹשִׁיבוֹת	מִקְטִילוֹת	הוֹשִׁבְנָה	הִקְטִלְנָה	2fp

I Yod (Vav) Inf abs	Standard Inf abs	I Yod (Vav) Inf const	Standard Inf const
הוֹשִׁב	הִקְטִל	הוֹשִׁיב	הִקְטִיל

I Yod (Vav) Wei	Standard Wei	I Yod (Vav) Jussive	Standard Jussive	
יִוֹשֵׁב	יִקְטֵל	יֹוֹשֵׁב	יִקְטֵל	3ms

Known I Yod (Vav) Verbs in the Hiphil

	Hiphil		Qal
“dry up”	הוֹבִישׁ	“be dry”	יָבֵשׁ
“inform”	הוֹדִיעַ	“know”	יָדַע
“father”	הוֹלִיד	“give birth”	יָלַד
“bring out”	הוֹצִיא	“go out”	יָצָא
“bring down”	הוֹרִיד	“go down”	יָרַד
“dispossess”	הוֹרִישׁ	“inherit”	יָרַשׁ
“settle”	הוֹשִׁיב	“dwell”	יָשַׁב

Vocabulary

Qal: shoot, throw

יָדָה

82

belly, womb *f*

בֶּטֶן (בֶּטֶן)

589

Hiph: praise, confess

הוֹדָה

Qal: shoot, throw	יָרָה	157	palm, sole <i>f</i>	כָּף	465
Hiph: teach	הוֹרָה				
	כּוֹן	42	tongue	לָשׁוֹן	519
Hiph: make firm	הִכִּין				
Qal: rest	נָח	172	bone <i>f</i>	עֵצָם (עֲצָם)	539
Hiph: give rest, settle	הִנִּיחַ				
	נָכָה	51	lip	שִׁפָּה	555
Hiph: strike	הִכָּה				

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of the hiphil from I Yod roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הִיטִיב						
2. הוֹשִׁיב						
3. יוֹשִׁיב						
4. יִיטִיב						
5. מוֹלִידִים						
6. הוֹרְדָתָם						
7. תִּיטִיבוּ						
8. וְנוֹשֵׁב						
9. הוֹשִׁעַ						
10. הוֹשִׁיבִי						

B. Focus on the difference in meaning when a verb occurs in both the qal and the hiphil. Translate the following verb forms. If you encounter a root that you have not yet learned in the qal or hiphil, consult the vocabulary at the back of the grammar for the meaning.

- .1 יִצֵּא .2 הוֹצִיא .3 יָבֵשׁ .4 הוֹבִישׁ .5 יָרַד
 .6 הוֹרִיד .7 יָרַשׁ .8 הוֹרִישׁ .9 יָדַע .10 הוֹדִיעַ
 .11 יִלְדֶה .12 הוֹלִיד .13 הוֹצִאתָם .14 הוֹרְדָתָם .15 הוֹדַעְתָּם

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on the form of qal and piel verbs from III Hey roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. גָּלָה						
2. גָּלָה						
3. יִכְסֶה						
4. יִכְסֶה						
5. גָּלוּת						
6. גָּלוּת						
7. כָּסִיתָ						
8. כָּסִיתָ						
9. יִגְלוּ						
10. יִגְלוּ						

D. Focus on the form of qal verbs from Hollow roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. קָם						
2. יָקוּם						
3. קוּם						

4.	קָמְתֶם					
5.	תָּקַם					
6.	וַתָּקַם					
7.	קָמַתָּ					
8.	תִּקְרָמוּ					
9.	קִרְמוּ					
10.	אֶקְרָמָהּ					

Putting It All Together

E. Translate the following.

	1.	יָרַד הַנְּבִיא מִן־הַהָר וַיּוֹרֵד אֶת־הָעָם עִמּוֹ וַיֵּלְכוּ אֶל־הָעִיר לְשִׁבְתָּ שָׁם
1. The prophet came down from the mountain and brought the people down with him. Then they went to the city to live there.	2.	כָּבוֹא הַכֹּהֵן לְאֲנָשִׁים וַיֹּאמֶר אֲלֵיהֶם הוֹצִיאוּ אֶת־הָאִישׁ הַרְשָׁע לְמַעַן אֲשַׁפֵּט אוֹתוֹ כִּי חָטָא לַיהוָה
2. When the priest came to the men he said to them, “Bring out the wicked man, that I may judge him, for he has sinned against the LORD.”	3.	יָכַל יְהוָה לְהוֹכִישׁ אֶת־הַיָּם הַגָּדוֹל כִּי מֶלֶךְ הוּא עַל־כָּל־הָאָרֶץ וְעַבְדָּנוּ אוֹתוֹ כָּל־יְמֵי־חַיֵּינוּ
3. The LORD is able to dry up the great sea, because he is king over all the earth. And we will serve him all the days of our life (The adj יָי is used in the plural for “life.”)	4.	יּוֹשִׁיב יְהוָה אוֹתָךְ בְּאֶרֶץ טוֹבָה וַיִּשְׁבֶּתָ שָׁם שָׁנוֹת רַבּוֹת וְהוּא יְהוָה אֱלֹהֶיךָ וְאַתָּה תִּהְיֶה עִמּוֹ
4. The LORD will settle you in a good land and you will live there many years. He will be your God, and you will be his people.		

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

F. Translate the following from Judges 7:4, 5, 7.

- (4) וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל־גִּדְעוֹן^a עוֹד הָעַם רַב
הוֹרֵד אוֹתָם אֶל־הַמַּיִם. . . . (5) וַיּוֹרֵד אֶת־הָעַם אֶל־הַמַּיִם:
(7) וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה אֶל־גִּדְעוֹן בְּשֵׁלֶשׁ מֵאוֹת הָאִישׁ^b . . . אוֹשִׁיעַ אֶתְכֶם. . . .

^a“Gideon.”

^bהָאִישׁ is here a collective singular for a plural = “men.”

34

THE HIPHIL: III HEY AND HOLLOW

III Hey

- The hiphil of verbs from III Hey roots varies from the standard paradigm with the same endings as in the qal and the piel.

III Hey Hiphil Imperfect	III Hey Qal Imperfect	III Hey Hiphil Perfect	III Hey Qal Perfect	
יִגְלֶה	יִגְלֶה	הִגְלָה	גָּלָה	3ms
תִּגְלֶה	תִּגְלֶה	הִגְלָתָה	גָּלָתָה	3fs
תִּגְלֶה	תִּגְלֶה	הִגְלִיתְךָ	גָּלִיתְךָ	2ms
תִּגְלִי	תִּגְלִי	הִגְלִיתְךָ	גָּלִיתְךָ	2fs
אִגְלֶה	אִגְלֶה	הִגְלִיתִי	גָּלִיתִי	1cs

יִגְלוּ	יִגְלוּ	הִגְלוּ	גָּלוּ	3c/mp
תִּגְלִינָה	תִּגְלִינָה			
תִּגְלוּ	תִּגְלוּ	הִגְלִיתֶם	גָּלִיתֶם	2mp
תִּגְלִינָה	תִּגְלִינָה	הִגְלִיתֶן	גָּלִיתֶן	2fp
נִגְלֶה	נִגְלֶה	הִגְלִינוּ	גָּלִינוּ	1cp

III Hey Hiphil Participle	III Hey Qal Participle	III Hey Hiphil Imperative	III Hey Qal Imperative	
מִגְלֶה	גֹּלֶה	הִגְלִי	גָּלֵה	2ms
מִגְלֶה	גֹּלֵה	הִגְלִי	גָּלֵה	2fs
מִגְלִים	גֹּלִים	הִגְלוּ	גָּלוּ	2mp
מִגְלוֹת	גֹּלוֹת		גָּלִינָה	2fp

III Hey Hiphil Inf abs	III Hey Qal Inf abs	III Hey Hiphil Inf const	III Hey Qal Inf const
הִגִּילָה	גִּילָה	הִגִּילוֹת	גִּילוֹת
III Hey Hiphil Wci	III Hey Qal Wci	III Hey Hiphil Jussive	III Hey Qal Jussive
וַיִּגַּל	וַיִּגַּל	יִגַּל	יִגַּל

The Hiphil of נכה

- The hiphil of נכה is fairly frequent, occurring more than 500 times, and is doubly weak, being I Nun and III Hey.

Participle	Imperative	Imperfect	Perfect	
מִכֶּה	הִכֵּה	יִכֶּה	הִכָּה	3ms
Wci	Jussive	Inf abs	Inf const	
וַיִּךְ	יִךְ	הִכָּה	הִכּוֹת	3ms

Hollow

- The hiphil of verbs from Hollow roots will in most forms have יָ as the theme vowel.

Hollow Hiphil Imperfect	Hollow Qal Imperfect	Hollow Hiphil Perfect	Hollow Qal Perfect	
יִקִּים	יִקום	הִקִּים	קָם	3ms
תִּקִּים	תִּקום	הִקִּימָה	קָמָה	3fs
תִּקִּים	תִּקום	הִקִּימוּתָ	קָמָתָ	2ms
תִּקִּימִי	תִּקוּמִי	הִקִּימוֹת	קָמָתָ	2fs
אִקִּים	אִקום	הִקִּימוֹתִי	קָמָתִי	1cs

Hollow Hiphil Imperfect	Hollow Qal Imperfect	Hollow Hiphil Perfect	Hollow Qal Perfect	
יָקִימוּ	יָקוּמוּ	הִקְיִמוּ	קָמוּ	3c/mp
תִּקְיִמְנָה	תִּקְוִמְנָה			
תִּקְיִמוּ	תִּקְוִמוּ	הִקְיִמוּתָם	קָמְתָם	2mp
תִּקְיִמְנָה	תִּקְוִמְנָה	הִקְיִמוּתֶיךָ	קָמְתֶיךָ	2fp
נָקִים	נָקוּם	הִקְיִמוּנוּ	קָמְנוּ	1cp

Hollow Hiphil Participle	Hollow Qal Participle	Hollow Hiphil Imperative	Hollow Qal Imperative	
מְקִים	קָם	הִקְיִם	קוּם	2ms
מְקִימָה	קָמָה	הִקְיִמִי	קוּמִי	2fs
מְקִימִים	קָמִים	הִקְיִמוּ	קוּמוּ	2mp
מְקִימוֹת	קָמוֹת	הִקְיִמְנָה	קוּמְנָה	2fp

Hollow Hiphil Inf abs	Hollow Qal Inf abs	Hollow Hiphil Inf const	Hollow Qal Inf const
הִקְיִם	קוּם	הִקְיִם	קוּם

Hollow Hiphil Wci	Hollow Qal Wci	Hollow Hiphil Jussive	Hollow Qal Jussive
יִקְיִם	יִקְוּם	יִקְיִם	יִקְוּם

Known Hollow Verbs in the Hiphil

	Hiphil		Qal
“bring”	הִבִּיאַ	“come”	בּוֹא
“kill”	הִמִּיתַ	“die”	מוֹת
“remove”	הִסִּירַ	“turn aside”	סוּר
“raise”	הִקִּיםַ	“rise”	קוּם
“return” (transitive)	הִשִּׁיבַ	“return” (intransitive)	שׁוּב

Vocabulary

width	רָחַב (רָחַב)	552	end	אַחֲרִית	574
Qal: sojourn	גִּוַר	72	length	אָרְךָ (אָרְךָ)	586
Qal: kill	הָרַג	76	right, south <i>f</i>	יָמִין	510
Qal: flee	נוּס	94	north <i>f</i>	צָפוֹן	547
Qal: turn	פָּנָה	99	first, former	רִאשׁוֹן	550

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of the hiphil from III Hey and Hollow roots.

Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הִגְלִיתָ						
2. הִקִּימוֹתָ						
3. הִכִּינוּ						
4. יִנְיחוּ						
5. יִגְלֶה						
6. הִגְלוֹתָ						
7. מִקִּים						
8. מִגְלִים						
9. הִכִּין						
10. הִגְלֶה						

B. Focus on the form of the hiphil from roots that are doubly weak.

Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הִכָּה						
2. הוֹדָה						

3.	יָכָה					
4.	יֹדָה					
5.	מוֹדָה					
6.	מָכָה					
7.	הִכּוֹת					
8.	הוֹדוֹת					
9.	הוֹדָה					
10.	הִכָּה					

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on the pronoun suffixes on nouns. Translate the following.

1. סוֹסוֹ .2 סוֹסָה .3 סוֹסִיָּה .4 סוֹסְנוֹ .5 סוֹסָם
 6. סוֹסְךָ .7 סוֹסְךָ .8 סוֹסְכֶם .9 סוֹסְיָךְ .10 סוֹסְןָ

D. Focus on the pronoun suffixes on prepositions. Translate the following.

1. עִמָּךְ .2 עִמָּנוּ .3 עִמָּהּ .4 עִמּוֹ .5 עִמָּךְ
 6. עִמָּן .7 עִמָּכֶם .8 עִמָּכֶן .9 עִמִּי .10 עִמָּם

E. Focus on the form of all verbs learned to this point. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יוֹרִיד						
2. יִכְסֶה						
3. בָּאָתָּ						
4. שִׁלַּח						
5. דִּבַּרְתִּי						
6. יִתְּנוּ						
7. תִּלְדַּ						
8. קָחַת						

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

1. Our God gave us rest from all our enemies and settled us in a good land. And we will praise his name forever.	1. הַנִּיחַ אֱלֹהֵינוּ לָנוּ מִכָּל-אִיְבָנֵינוּ וַיֹּשֶׁב אוֹתָנוּ בְּאֶרֶץ טוֹבָה וַיִּשְׁמוּ נְהַלֵּל לְעוֹלָם
2. After the LORD exiled his people to another country, they repented of all their sins. So he returned them to their land.	2. אַחֲרֵי הַגְּלוּת יְהוָה אֶת-עַמּוֹ אֶל-אֶרֶץ אַחֲרַת וַיָּשׁוּבוּ מִכָּל-עֲוֹנוֹתֵיהֶם וַיֹּשֶׁב אוֹתָם אֶל-אֶרְצָם
3. And in that day the fathers will teach their sons to know the LORD saying, “He is our lord and we are his servants, because he has delivered us.”	3. וּבַיּוֹם הַהוּא יוֹרוּ הָאָבוֹת אֶת-בְּנֵיהֶם לְדַעַת אֵת יְהוָה לֵאמֹר הוּא אֲדוֹנֵינוּ וַעֲבָדָיו אֲנַחְנוּ כִּי הוֹשִׁיעַ אוֹתָנוּ
4. The guard struck the man on the mouth, because he spoke against the High Priest, who was in the temple of the LORD. Then he removed him.	4. הִכָּה הַשֹּׁמֵר אֶת-הָאִישׁ עַל-הַפֶּה כִּי דִבֶּר עַל-הַכֹּהֵן הַגָּדוֹל אֲשֶׁר בְּבַיִת יְהוָה וַיִּסֶּר אוֹתוֹ

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following from Psalm 136:1–3, 26.

כִּי לְעוֹלָם חֲסָדוֹ	הוֹדוּ לַיהוָה כִּי-טוֹב
כִּי לְעוֹלָם חֲסָדוֹ	הוֹדוּ לַאלֹהֵי הָאֱלֹהִים
כִּי לְעוֹלָם חֲסָדוֹ	הוֹדוּ לְאֲדֹנָי הָאֲדֹנִים
כִּי לְעוֹלָם חֲסָדוֹ	הוֹדוּ לְאֵל הַשָּׁמַיִם

35

MORE ON PRONOUN SUFFIXES

Pronoun Suffixes on כָּל

35.1 Form of כָּל with Suffixes

- The word כָּל was introduced in Lesson 13, where you learned that the construct form is כָּל־ (*gamets-chatuf*). The form to which pronoun suffixes are added is כָּלְךָ, resulting in forms such as כָּלוֹ, כָּלְהָ, כָּלְכֶם, and כָּלָנוּ.

35.2 Use of כָּל with Suffixes

- Emphasis: כָּל with a suffix is often placed after a noun it modifies to add emphasis.

“Israel, all of you!”

יִשְׂרָאֵל כָּלְךָ

“Listen, nations, all of them!”

שְׁמַעוּ עַמִּים כָּלְכֶם

“The king’s whole house, all of it!”

כָּל־בַּיִת הַמֶּלֶךְ כָּלוֹ

- “Everyone”: With the 3ms suffix, understood as referring to the totality of persons or things, the sense is “all of them” or “everyone.”

“Everyone says, ‘Glory.’”

כָּלוֹ אָמַר כְּבוֹד

“Everyone loves the king.”

כָּלוֹ אָהַב אֶת־הַמֶּלֶךְ

Pronoun Suffixes on Verbs

- In Lesson 22, you learned that when a direct object is a pronoun it is added to the direct object marker אֶת/את־.

“The king sent the prophets.” שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶת־הַנְּבִיאִים

“The king sent them.”

שָׁלַח הַמֶּלֶךְ אוֹתָם

- ▶ A pronoun used as a direct object can also be added directly to the verb.

“The king sent them.” שְׁלַחַם הַמֶּלֶךְ

“The king sent us.” שְׁלַחֲנוּ הַמֶּלֶךְ

- ▶ When a suffix is added, the accent moves to the left, so vowels will change according to the rules learned previously. Here are some examples.

“He sent us.” שְׁלַחֲנוּ שְׁלַח

“You (ms) sent us.” שְׁלַחֲתָנוּ שְׁלַחְתְּ

“I sent you (ms).” שְׁלַחֲתִיךָ שְׁלַחְתִּי

“They sent you (ms).” שְׁלַחוּךָ שְׁלַחוּ

“He will send us.” יִשְׁלַחֲנוּ יִשְׁלַח

“He will send you (fs).” יִשְׁלַחֲךָ יִשְׁלַח

- ▶ Most of the time, the suffix added to the verb is the same as the suffix added to the direct object marker, but two forms are different:
 - For the 3ms, in addition to ו, as in קָטְלוּ, הוּא־וְ occurs, as in קָטְלוּהוּ. The connection between הוּא־וְ and the independent personal pronoun הוּא is obvious.
 - For the 1cs the form is נִי־וְ or נִי־וְ, as in קָטַלְנִי and יִקְטַלְנִי. The connection between נִי and the independent personal pronoun אֲנִי is obvious.
- ▶ A pronoun suffix as direct object may also be added to participles.

“sending her” שְׁלַחָהּ שְׁלַחַת

“sending them” שְׁלַחָם שְׁלַחַת

Vocabulary

oil	שֶׁמֶן (שֶׁמֶן)	560	vine f	גִּפְן (גִּפְן)	601
	לֶחֶם	89	honey	דְּבַשׁ	604
Niph: fight	גָּלַחַם				
Qal: anoint	מָשַׁח	168	wine	יַיִן (יַיִן)	509
Qal: open	פָּתַח	100	vineyard	כַּרְם (כַּרְם)	518
Qal: ask	שָׁאַל	112	fruit	פְּרִי	543

Practice

Focusing on New Material

גנוללל ט הַת תאלסנארת :סצטטט ננרפ הַת התן כל נ סשט:-

1. הַמְּלָכִים כָּלָם .2. הַמְּלָכִים כָּלְכֶם .3. כָּל־הַמְּלָכִים כָּלָם
 4. כָּל־מֶלֶךְ כָּלוּ .5. הָעִיר כָּלָה .6. כָּל־הָעִיר כָּלָה
 7. כָּלוּ יֵלֶךְ .8. שָׁמַע כָּלוּ .9. כָּלוּ יִרְאֶה

B. Focus on verbs with pronoun suffixes. Identify the person, gender, and number of the suffix.

1. שָׁמַרְךָ .2. יִשְׁמְרוּנוּ .3. תִּשְׁלַחֵם .4. זָכַרְתָּהוּ .5. נִתְּנָכֶם
 6. תִּמְלִיכוּנִי .7. יִשְׁאַהּ .8. נִבְקְשָׁהוּ .9. דָּרְשָׁנוּהוּ .10. יִרְשָׁתִים
 11. מִצָּאתַנִי .12. מִצָּאתָהּ .13. תַּעֲבֹרְךָ .14. יִשְׁפֹּטֵנוּ .15. יִצְיֵלְהוּ

C. Focus on verbs with pronoun suffixes. Translate the following.

1. שָׁמַרְךָ .2. יִשְׁמְרוּנוּ .3. תִּשְׁלַחֵם .4. זָכַרְתָּהוּ .5. נִתְּנָכֶם
 6. תִּמְלִיכוּנִי .7. יִשְׁאַהּ .8. נִבְקְשָׁהוּ .9. דָּרְשָׁנוּהוּ .10. יִרְשָׁתִים
 11. מִצָּאתַנִי .12. מִצָּאתָהּ .13. תַּעֲבֹרְךָ .14. יִשְׁפֹּטֵנוּ .15. יִצְיֵלְהוּ

Reviewing Previous Lessons

D. Focus on sentences with volatives. Review Lesson 24 before translating these sentences.

	1.	נְהַלְלָה אֶת־שֵׁם יְהוָה
1. Let us praise the name of the LORD.	2.	הִלְלוּ אֶת־שֵׁם יְהוָה
2. Praise (<i>mp</i>) the name of the LORD.	3.	יֶבֶן מִזְבֵּחַ לַיהוָה
3. Let him build an altar for the LORD.	4.	יָקָם הַנֶּעַר לִפְנֵי הַזְּקֵנִים
4. Let the boy rise before the elders.	5.	קוּם לִפְנֵי הַזְּקֵנִים

5. Rise before the elders.	6. אֶל־תִּקַּם לְפָנַי הַרְשָׁעִים
6. Don't rise before the wicked.	7. אֶל־תִּשְׁלַךְ אֶת־תּוֹרַת יְהוָה
7. Don't reject the law of the LORD.	8. אֶקְרָאָה בַּתּוֹרָה וְאֶדְעָה אֶת־יְהוָה
8. Let me read in the Law, so that I may know the LORD.	9. שָׁמַע וְתִשָּׁב מִחַטָּאתָךְ
9. Listen, so that you may turn from your sin.	10. אֶל־תִּחַטָּא פֶּן תֵּאבֵד
10. Don't sin, lest you perish.	

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. שָׁלַחַתְּ						
2. דִּבַּרְתָּ						
3. הִשְׁלַכְתָּ						
4. יִכְתֹּב						
5. יִמְלִיךְ						
6. יִמְלֵא						
7. נִבְקַשׁ						
8. הִשְׁאִירָהּ						

Putting It All Together

F. Translate the following.

	1. יָגֵד מִלְּאֹךְ־הָאֵיב לְמַלְכֵנוּ אֶת־הַדָּבָר אֲשֶׁר דִּבֶּר שָׂרוּ לּוֹ וְנִדְעָה מַה נַּעֲשֶׂה וְיָבִיאוּהוּ לְפָנַי הַמֶּלֶךְ וַיָּגֵד אֶת־הַדָּבָר
1. Let the messenger of the enemy tell our king the message which his leader spoke to him, so that we may know what we should do. Then they brought him before the king, and he told the matter.	2. יָצְאוּ שְׂבָעַת גְּבוּרִים לְמַלְחָמָה אֲשֶׁר בְּשׂוּדָה וַיֵּרְאוּ אֶת־מַחְנֵה־הָאֵיב וַיָּבִיאוּ בּוֹ וַיְמִיתוּ אֶת־כָּל־הָאֲנָשִׁים כְּלָם

<p>2. Seven mighty men went out to the battle which was in the field, and they saw the enemy camp. So they entered it and killed absolutely every man.</p>	<p>3. בְּרֵאשִׁית הַשָּׁנָה וַיִּמְלִיכוּהוּ וַיִּמְלֹךְ בַּשָּׁנָה הַהִיא וַיָּמָת וַיִּמְלִיכוּ אֶת־בְּנוֹ הַחֲכָמִים תַּחֲתָיו וַיִּמְלֹךְ שָׁנֹת רַבּוֹת וְהוּא מֶלֶךְ טוֹב וְגָדוֹל</p>
<p>3. At the beginning of the year, they made him king. He reigned during that year, then he died. So they made his wise son king in place of him, and he reigned for many years. He was a good and great king.</p>	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

G. Translate the following from Genesis 2:2–3

(2) וַיְכַל^a אֱלֹהִים בַּיּוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי מְלַאכְתּוֹ^b אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה וַיִּשְׁבֹּת^c בַּיּוֹם
הַשְּׁבִיעִי מִכָּל־מְלַאכְתּוֹ אֲשֶׁר עָשָׂה: (3) וַיְבָרֶךְ^a אֱלֹהִים אֶת־יוֹם הַשְּׁבִיעִי
וַיְקַדְּשׁ^a אֹתוֹ כִּי בּוֹ שָׁבַת מְלַאכְתּוֹ אֲשֶׁר־בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים לַעֲשׂוֹת:

^aStrong *dagesh* is often lost when the vowel under the consonant is vocal *sheva*.

^bThe noun מְלַאכָה means “work.”

^cThe verb שָׁבַת means “rest” and is related to the noun שַׁבָּת (“Sabbath”).

36

THE NIPHAL: STRONG ROOTS

The Meaning of the Niphal

- The niphal is the fourth of the seven major verb patterns you will learn. The niphal makes up 6% of all verbs in the Hebrew Bible.¹ The qal, piel, hiphil, and niphal make up 97% of all verbs.
- Most niphal verbs are the passive of the qal.

Niphal	Qal	Root
“be remembered”	“remember”	זכר
“be cut”	“cut”	כרת
“be given”	“give”	נתן
“be guarded”	“guard”	שמר

- Sometimes the niphal is the reflexive of the qal.

“guard himself”	“guard”	שמר
-----------------	---------	-----

- A few verbs occur only (or mainly) in the niphal, without a corresponding qal and with a qal-like action sense.

“fight”		לחם
“swear an oath”		שבע

The niphal is abbreviated niph.

1. B. K. Waltke and M. O'Connor, *Syntax*, §21.2.3e.

Form of the Niphal

- The primary characteristic of the niphal is a prefixed *nun* (נ).

36.1 Perfect

Niphal	Qal	
נִקְטַל	קָטַל	3ms
נִקְטְלָה	קָטְלָה	3fs
נִקְטַלְתָּ	קָטַלְתָּ	2ms
נִקְטַלְתְּ	קָטַלְתְּ	2fs
נִקְטַלְתִּי	קָטַלְתִּי	1cs

נִקְטְלוּ	קָטְלוּ	3cp
נִקְטַלְתֶּם	קָטַלְתֶּם	2mp
נִקְטַלְתֶּן	קָטַלְתֶּן	2fp
נִקְטַלְנוּ	קָטַלְנוּ	1cp

36.2 Imperfect

	Niphal	Qal	
(> יִנְקַטַּל)	יִנְקַטַּל	יִקְטַל	3ms
	יִנְקַטְלָה	יִקְטְלָה	3fs
	יִנְקַטַּלְתָּ	יִקְטַלְתָּ	2ms
	יִנְקַטַּלְתְּ	יִקְטַלְתְּ	2fs
	יִנְקַטַּלְתִּי	יִקְטַלְתִּי	1cs
	יִנְקַטְלוּ	יִקְטְלוּ	3mp
	יִנְקַטְלֶנָה	יִקְטְלֶנָה	3fp
	יִנְקַטְלוּ	יִקְטְלוּ	2mp
	יִנְקַטְלֶנָה	יִקְטְלֶנָה	2fp
	יִנְקַטַּל	יִקְטַל	1cp

36.3 Imperative

	Imperative	Imperfect	
(> הַנְּקִטֵּל)	הַנְּקִטֵּל	תִּנְקֹטֵל	2ms
	הַנְּקִטְלִי	תִּנְקֹטְלִי	2fs
	הַנְּקִטְלוּ	תִּנְקֹטְלוּ	2mp
	הַנְּקִטְלֵנָּה	תִּנְקֹטְלֵנָּה	2fp

36.4 Infinitives

	Infinitive Construct	Imperative
(> הַנְּקִטֵּל)	הַנְּקִטֵּל	הַנְּקִטֵּל

Infinitive Absolute
הַנְּקִטֵּל / נִקְטֵל

36.5 Participle

	Niphal	Qal	
	נִקְטָל	קֹטֵל	ms
	נִקְטָלֶת	קֹטֶלֶת	fs
	נִקְטָלִים	קֹטְלִים	mp
	נִקְטָלוֹת	קֹטְלוֹת	fp

36.6 Cohortative

	Niphal	Qal	
(> אֶנְקִטֵּל)	אֶנְקִטֵּלָּהּ	אֶנְקִטֵּלָּהּ	1cs
	נִקְטֵלָּהּ	נִקְטֵלָּהּ	1cp

36.7 Jussive

	Jussive	Imperfect	
(> יִנְקִטֵּל)	יִנְקִטֵּל	יִנְקֹטֵל	3ms

36.8 Vav-relative

	Vav-relative	Jussive	
(> וַיִּקְטֹל)	וַיִּקְטֹל	יִקְטֹל	3ms

Vocabulary

copper, bronze	נְחֹשֶׁת (נְחָשֶׁת)	531	iron	בְּרִזָּל	592
sun	שֶׁמֶשׁ	562	hill	גְּבֻעָה	596
	נָבָא	91	valley	גֵּיאַ	599
Niph: prophesy	נָבָא				
Qal: gather	קָבַץ	101	river	נָהָר	529
Qal: pasture, tend	רָעָה	108	wadi	נַחַל (נַחֲלִי)	530

Note:

- Usually, a נָהָר has water flowing all year round, but a נַחַל has water only during the rainy season.

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of the niphal. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. נִקְטַל						
2. נִקְטְלוּ						
3. נִלְחַמְתֶּם						
4. יִכְתֹּב						
5. נִשְׁמַר						
6. הִשְׁמְרוּ						
7. תִּקְטְלוּ						

8. נִקְטְלָת						
9. נִשְׁמְרוּ						
10. הִקְטִיל						

B. Focus on the difference in meaning when a verb occurs in both the qal and the niphal. Translate the following verb forms.

1. מִשַׁח .2. נִמְשַׁח .3. נִאָּל .4. נִגָּל .5. כָּתַב .6. נִכְתַּב .7. דָּרַשׁ .8. נִדְרַשׁ .9. זָכַר .10. נִזְכָּר

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on qal and hiphil verbs from I Guttural and I Nun roots.

Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יַעֲמִדְתֶּם						
2. יַעֲמֵד						
3. יַעֲמִיד						
4. הִעֲמִיד						
5. הִעֲמִידוּ						
6. מִעֲמִידִים						
7. יָפַל						
8. יִפְלוּ						
9. תִּפֹּל						

D. Focus on the difference between attributive and predicate adjectives. Read the following phrases and sentences, and fill in the blanks for use of adjective (*a* for attributive and *p* for predicative) and for gender and number.

Use	Gender	Number	
a	f	s	.1 האִשָּׁה הַטּוֹבָה
			.2 קְדוֹשׁ הַכֹּהֵן
			.3 הַזֵּבַח הַטָּמֵא

			.4	טובה הארץ
			.5	גדולים הגבורים
			.6	האלהים החיים
			.7	המשפחות הרבות
			.8	רשעה המלכות
			.9	לב חכם
			.10	הנשים הטובות

Putting It All Together

E. Translate the following.

	1. נשלחו מפניו האנשים אשר לא בקשו את יהוה אלהיהם כל ימי חייהם
1. The men who did not seek the LORD their God all the days of their lives were sent from his presence.	2. ויהי כהלקחו אל העיר ויקבצו הזקנים והאנשים והנשים ובניהם ובנותיהם לו ויאמר להם יהי יהוה עמכם
2. When he was taken to the city, the elders, the men, the women, and their sons and their daughters were gathered to him. Then he said to them, “May the LORD be with you.”	3. דרשו את שלום עיר אלהינו כי יברך יהוה את דרשי שלום עירו ונשמרו מכל איביהם
3. Seek the peace of the city of our God, for the LORD will bless those who seek the peace of his city, and they will be guarded from all their enemies.	4. הורו את בניכם את מצות יהוה ותזכרנה ויורו את בניהם ואת בני בניהם לדעת את יהוה ואת מצותיו
4. Teach (<i>mp</i>) your sons the commandments (<i>fp</i>) of the LORD, so that they (<i>fp</i>) may be remembered, and so that they (<i>mp</i>) may teach their sons and their grandsons to know the LORD and his commandments.	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

F. Translate the following from Zechariah 13:1-2.

(1) בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא יִהְיֶה מְקוֹר^a נִפְתָּח לְבַיִת דָּוִד^b וּלְיִשְׂרָאֵל יְרוּשָׁלַיִם^c
 לְחַטָּאת. . . . (2) וְהָיָה בַּיּוֹם הַהוּא נֶאֱמַר יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת אֶכְרִית
 אֶת־שִׁמּוֹת הָעֲצָבִים^d מִן־הָאָרֶץ וְלֹא יִזְכְּרוּ עוֹד וְגַם אֶת־הַנְּבִיאִים
 וְאֶת־רוּחַ הַטְּמָאָה^e אֲעַבִּיר מִן־הָאָרֶץ:

^a“A well”

^b“David”

^c“Jerusalem”

^d“The idols”

^e“Uncleanness;” טָמֵא = “unclean”

37

THE NIPHAL: WEAK ROOTS

I Guttural

- The niphal of verbs from I Guttural roots vary from the standard paradigm: (1) by replacing the *sheva* under the first root letter with *chatef-segol* (◌ֿ) or (2) by having compensatory lengthening of the initial *chireq* (◌ֿ) to *tsere* (◌ֿ) because the initial guttural does not take strong *dagesh*.

I Guttural Imperfect	Strong Imperfect	I Guttural Perfect	Strong Perfect
יַעֲמֹד	יִקְטֹל	נִעְמַד	נִקְטַל

I Guttural Participle	Strong Participle	I Guttural Imperative	Strong Imperative
נִעְמָד	נִקְטֹל	הַעֲמֹד	הִקְטֹל

I Guttural Vav-rel.	Strong Vav-rel.	I Guttural Inf const	Strong Inf const
וַיַּעֲמֹד	וַיִּקְטֹל	הַעֲמֹד	הִקְטֹל

I Nun

- The niphal of verbs from I Nun roots vary from the standard paradigm only in the *pf* and the *ptc*, where the initial *nun* of the root assimilates to the second root letter.

I Nun Participle	Strong Participle	I Nun Perfect	Strong Perfect
נִצֵּל	נִקְטֹל	נִצַּל	נִקְטַל

I Yod (Vav)

- The niphal of verbs from I Yod (Vav) roots vary from the standard paradigm: (1) by having the original *vav* preserved because of the strong *dagesh*, or (2) by having a vestige of the original *vav* in the form of *cholem-vav* (ם).

I Yod (Vav) Imperfect	Strong Imperfect	I Yod (Vav) Perfect	Strong Perfect
יִנָּשֵׁב	יִקָּטֵל	נִשָּׁב	נִקָּטֵל

I Yod (Vav) Participle	Strong Participle	I Yod (Vav) Imperative	Strong Imperative
נוֹשֵׁב	נִקָּטֵל	הִנָּשֵׁב	הִקָּטֵל

I Yod (Vav) Vav-rel.	Strong Vav-rel.	I Yod (Vav) Inf const	Strong Inf const
וַיִּנָּשֵׁב	וַיִּקָּטֵל	הִנָּשֵׁב	הִקָּטֵל

III Hey

- The niphal of verbs from III Hey roots vary from the standard paradigm with basically the same endings as in the qal, piel, and hiphil. In the *pf*, the niphal usually has יָ (נִגְלִינוּ) in place of יָ (גָּלִינוּ).

III Hey Niphal Imperfect	III Hey Qal Imperfect	III Hey Niphal Perfect	III Hey Qal Perfect
יִגְלֶה	יִגְלֶה	נִגְלָה	גָּלָה

III Hey Niphal Participle	III Hey Qal Participle	III Hey Niphal Imperative	III Hey Qal Imperative
נִגְלֶה	גְּלֶה	הִגְלֶה	גְּלֶה

III Hey Niphal Inf abs	III Hey Qal Inf abs	III Hey Niphal Inf const	III Hey Qal Inf const
הִגְלֶה	גְּלֶה	הִגְלוֹת	גְּלוֹת

III Hey Niphal Vav-rel.	III Hey Niphal Jussive	III Hey Niphal Imperfect
יִגַּל	יִגַּל	יִגַּלְהַ

Vocabulary

south, Negeb	נִגְבַּ (נִגְב)	528	behind, west	אַחֲרָיוֹן	573
Qal: bury	קָבַר	102	cubit	אַמָּה	452
	קָטַר	104	wheat	חֲטָה	616
Piel: burn a sacrifice	קָטַר				
Hiphil: burn a sacrifice	הִקְטִיר				
Qal: burn	שָׂרַף	111	fat	חֵלֶב (חֵלֶב)	617
	שָׂרַת	123	pasture land	מִגְרָשׁ	520
Piel: serve, minister	שָׂרַת				

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of the niphal from weak roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יִאֲמַן						
2. נִדְחֵתִי						
3. יִלְדֵּוּ						
4. יִבְנֶה						
5. נִבְנֶה						
6. יִעֲנֶה						
7. נִדְעֲנוּ						
8. הִנְתְּרוּ						
9. נִאֲסַפְתֶּם						

10.	הִרְאוּת					
11.	נִצַּל					
12.	נִעְנִיתָ					
13.	הִתְרַגֵּי					
14.	תִּנְדְּעוּ					
15.	נִבְאוּ					

B. Focus on the meaning of niphal verbs from weak roots. Translate the following.

1. נִאֲסְפוּ .2. נִדְּחוּ .3. יִתְרֹוּ .4. נִבְנָה .5. נִלְדְּנוּ
 6. נִרְאָה .7. נִאֲמַן .8. נִדְּעֵנוּ .9. נִבָּא .10. יִרְאָה

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on the difference between attributive and predicate participles. Read the following phrases and sentences, and fill in the blanks for use of participle (*a* for attributive and *p* for predicative) and for gender and number.

Use	Gender	Number	
a	m	s	1. הַאִישׁ הַיֹּשֵׁב
			2. הַכֹּהֵן יֹשֵׁב
			3. הַנֶּעֶר הַמְדַבֵּר
			4. הַנְּבִיא מְדַבֵּר
			5. יֹצְאִים הַגְּבוּרִים
			6. הַגְּבוּרִים הַיֹּרְדִים
			7. הַנָּשִׁים הַמּוֹדְעוֹת
			8. הַנָּשִׁים בָּאוֹת
			9. הַעֲמִים הַנֹּאֲסָפִים
			10. נִדְּחַ הָעָם

Putting It All Together

D. Translate the following.

<p>1. The holy men were delivered from the wicked men who were fighting against them. Then they settled in a good land, and houses were built for them in the mountains and in the valleys.</p>	<p>1. וַיִּנְצְלוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים הַקְּדוֹשִׁים מִן־הָאֲנָשִׁים הָרָשָׁעִים הַנִּלְחָמִים עֲלֵיהֶם וַיֵּשְׁבוּ בְּאֶרֶץ טוֹבָה וַיִּבְנוּ בְּתֵימָם לָהֶם בְּהָרִים וּבְגִיאֹת</p>
<p>2. When the prophets prophesied to the elders, the elders and all the people repented, and were not exiled from their land. Then they clung to the covenant of their fathers.</p>	<p>2. וַיְהִי כִּאֲשֶׁר הִנְבֵּא הַנְּבִיאִים אֶל הַזְּקֵנִים וַיֵּשׁוּבוּ הַזְּקֵנִים וְכָל־הָעָם וְלֹא נִגְלוּ מֵאֶרֶצָם וַיִּדְבְּקוּ לְבְרִית אֲבוֹתָם</p>
<p>3. The words of the LORD and his judgments and his laws are firm, so that you (<i>mp</i>) may trust in them and not be afraid. For you (<i>mp</i>) will never be abandoned by the LORD.</p>	<p>3. יֵאֱמְנוּ דְבַר־יְהוָה וּמִשְׁפָּטָיו וְתוֹרוֹתָיו לְמַעַן תִּאֱמִינוּ בָּם וְלֹא תִירָאוּ כִּי לֹא תַעֲזָבוּ בְּיְהוָה לְעוֹלָם</p>

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

E. Translate the following from 1 Kings 18:36.

וַיְהִי בַעֲלוֹת^a הַמִּנְחָה וַיִּגַּשׁ אֵלֶיהוּ^b הַנְּבִיא וַיֹּאמֶר יְהוָה^c
 אֱלֹהֵי אֲבְרָהָם^d יִצְחָק^e וְיִשְׂרָאֵל^f הַיּוֹם יִנְדַע^g כִּי־אַתָּה אֱלֹהִים
 כִּי־יִשְׂרָאֵל וְאֲנִי עַבְדְּךָ וּבְדַבְּרְךָ עָשִׂיתִי אֵת כָּל־הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה:

^aThe form is the qal *inf. const.* of עלה (go up, ascend) with the preposition בּ = “in” in the sense of “at the time of” > “At the time of the ascending of.”

^b“Elijah”

^c“O LORD”; a vocative

^d“Abraham”

^e“Isaac”

^f“Israel”

^gJussive in sense

MORE PASSIVE VERBS: QAL, PUAL, AND HOPHAL

Qal Passive Participle

- In addition to the active participle, the qal has a passive participle (abbreviated *pass ptc*).

38.1 Form of the Qal Passive Participle

	Plural	Singular
Masculine	קְטוּלִים	קְטוּל
Feminine	קְטוּלוֹת	קְטוּלָה

38.2 Use of the Qal Passive Participle

- The *pass ptc* has the same three uses as the *ptc*.
 - Attributive: “the man who was guarded” הָאִישׁ הַשְּׂמוּר
 - Predicative: “The man was guarded.” שְׂמוּר הָאִישׁ
 - Substantive: “the guarded man” הַשְּׂמוּר

Pual

- The pual is the fifth of the seven major verb patterns; it makes up only 0.6% of the verbs in Hebrew¹ and is the passive of the piel.
- To change verb pattern is to *change the meaning* of the verb.

Pual	Piel	Root
“be blessed”	“bless”	בִּרַךְ
“be praised”	“praise”	הִלֵּל

1. Waltke and O'Connor, *Syntax*, §21.2.3e.

Pual	Piel	Root
“be atoned for”	“atone for”	כפר
“be sent away”	“send away”	שלח

- Occasionally, the niph'al serves as the passive of the piel.

Niph'al	Piel	Root
“be defiled”	“defile”	חלל

- The pual is formed like the piel, with strong *dagesh* in the middle root letter, but the vowel pattern is *qibbuts* (□) followed by *patach* (□).

Perfect:	Pual	Piel	
	קָטַל	קָטַל	3ms
	קָטַלָּה	קָטַלָּה	3fs
	קָטַלְתָּ	קָטַלְתָּ	2ms

Imperfect:	Pual	Piel	
	יִקְטַל	יִקְטַל	3ms
	תִּקְטַל	תִּקְטַל	3ms
	תִּקְטַלְתָּ	תִּקְטַלְתָּ	2ms

Participle:	Pual	Piel	
	מִקְטַל	מִקְטַל	ms

Hophal

- The hophal is the sixth of seven major verb patterns and makes up only 0.6% of the verbs in Hebrew;² it is the passive of the hiphil.

2. Waltke and O'Connor, *Syntax*, §21.2.3e.

- To change verb pattern is to *change the meaning* of the verb.

Hophal	Hiphil	Root
“be brought down”	“bring down”	יָרַד
“be made king”	“make king”	מָלַךְ
“be told”	“tell”	נָגַד
“be thrown”	“throw”	שָׁלַךְ

- Occasionally, the niph'al serves as the passive of the hiphil.

Niph'al	Hiphil	Root
“be saved”	“save”	יָשַׁע

- The hophal is formed like the hiphil, but the vowel pattern is *qamets-chatuf* (◌ָ) followed by *patach* (◌ַ).

Perfect:	Hophal	Hiphil	
	הִקְטַל	הִקְטִיל	3ms
	הִקְטְלָהּ	הִקְטִילָהּ	3fs
	הִקְטַלְתָּ	הִקְטִילְתָּ	2ms

Imperfect:	Hophal	Hiphil	
	יִקְטַל	יִקְטִיל	3ms
	תִּקְטַל	תִּקְטִיל	3ms
	תִּקְטַל	תִּקְטִיל	2ms

Participle:	Hophal	Hiphil	
	מִקְטָל / מִקְטֹל	מִקְטִיל	ms

The hophal is abbreviated *hoph*.

Vocabulary

doorway, door	פָּתַח (פִּתְחָה)	544	treasure, treasury	אוֹצָר	570
	פָּלַל	188	door	דֶּלֶת (דְּלָת)	605
Hith: pray	הִתְפַּלֵּל				
Qal: pursue	רָדַף	106	palace, temple	הֵיכָל	607
Qal: break	שָׁבַר	115	seat, throne	כִּסֵּא	517
Qal: forget	שָׁכַח	118	tower	מִגְדָּל	637

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on qal *pass. ptc.*, pual, and hophal verbs. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כָּתוּב						
2. הֵלֵל						
3. הִמְלִיךְ						
4. יִכְפֹּר						
5. יִשְׁלַף						
6. נִשְׁלַף						
7. יִהְלֹלוּ						
8. שְׁמוּרִים						
9. כִּפְרָנוּ						
10. הִמְלִכָהּ						
11. מְשַׁלֵּף						
12. מְהַלֵּל						
13. קְבוּרָה						

B. Focus on the meaning of the qal pass. ptc., pual, and hophal verbs. Translate the following.

1. כתוב הוא 2. המלכתי 3. יכפר 4. הללנו 5. ישלכו
6. תמלך 7. השלכתם 8. כפר 9. קבור הוא 10. יהלל

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on temporal clauses. Translate the following, paying attention to the various ways temporal clauses are expressed (see Lesson 27).

	1. ויהי כשלח האיש את הנערים וילכו
1. When the man sent the boys, they went.	2. והיה כשלח האיש את הנערים והלכו
2. When the man sends the boys, they will go.	3. ויהי כי שלח האיש את הנערים וילכו
3. When the man sent the boys, they went.	4. והיה כי ישלח האיש את הנערים והלכו
4. When the man sends the boys, they will go.	5. ויהי בבקר ישלח האיש את הנערים וילכו
5. In the morning, the man sent the boys, and they went.	6. והיה בבקר ושלח האיש את הנערים והלכו
6. In the morning, the man will send the boys, and they will go.	

D. Focus on interrogative clauses. Translate the following (see Lesson 27).

	1. מה אתה עשה
1. What are you doing?	2. מי שלח את הנערים
2. Who sent the boys?	3. השלח את הנערים
3. Did he send the boys?	4. האתה שלחת את הנערים
4. Did you send the boys?	5. מי ילך לנו
5. Who will go for us?	6. מה תאמר אליהם
6. What will she/you (ms) say to them?	

Putting It All Together

E. Translate the following.

	<p>1. וַיְהִי כַזְבַּח הַכֹּהֵן אֶת־הַזְּבָחִים עַל־הַמִּזְבֵּחַ וַתִּכַּפְּרֵנָה חַטָּאוֹתֵינוּ וַיְהַלֵּל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ כִּי טוֹב הוּא וְלְעוֹלָם חַסְדּוֹ</p>
<p>1. When the priest offered the sacrifices on the altar, our sins were atoned for and the LORD our God was praised, for he is good and his loyalty endures forever.</p>	<p>2. וַיָּבִיאוּ אֶת־דָּוִד אֶל־הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה וַיִּמְלֹךְ שָׁם לִפְנֵי כָל־הָעָם וַיִּשְׂמְחוּ מְאֹד וַיִּשְׁלְחוּ אֶל־בָּתֵּיהֶם וַיֵּלֶךְ דָּוִד אֶל־בֵּיתוֹ</p>
<p>2. They brought David to the great city and he was made king there before all the people. Then they were very glad and were sent to their homes. And David went to his house.</p>	<p>3. בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ מְלֹךְ־הָעוֹלָם בְּרֵא־הָאֲדָמָה וְכֹל אֲשֶׁר עָלֶיהָ גְּאֹל־עַמּוֹךָ</p>
<p>3. Blessed are you, O LORD our God, King of eternity, Creator of the land and everything on it, Redeemer of your people.</p>	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

F. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- Psalm 48:1 גְּדוֹל יְהוָה וּמְהֻלָּל מְאֹד בְּעִיר אֱלֹהֵינוּ הֶרֶם־קָדְשׁוֹ 1.
- 1 Chronicles 29:10 וַיְבָרֶךְ דָּוִד^a אֶת־יְהוָה לְעֵינֵי כָל־הַקְּהָל^b וַיֹּאמֶר 2.
- דָּוִד בְּרוּךְ אַתָּה יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל^c אֲבִינוּ
מֵעוֹלָם וְעַד־עוֹלָם:

^a“David”

^b“The assembly”

^c“Israel”

39

THE VERB: THE HITHPAEL

The Meaning of the Hithpael

- The hithpael is the seventh of the seven major verb patterns. The hithpael makes up 1.2% of all verbs in the Hebrew Bible.¹
- A common use of the hithpael is to express the reflexive—that is, action done to oneself.

Hithpael	Piel or Qal	Root
“praise oneself”	“praise”	הלל
“prostrate oneself”	“fall”	נפל
“sanctify oneself”	“sanctify”	קדש

- Some verbs occur only (or mainly) in the hithpael, without a corresponding qal or piel.

“pray”		פלל
“prophesy”		נבא

The hithpael is abbreviated hith.

1. Waltke and O'Connor, *Syntax*, §21.2.3e.

The Form of the Hithpael

- The hithpael is easily recognized by (1) its long prefixes, e.g., הִתְ, הִתְּ, and הִתְּ, and (2) its similarity to the piel—the doubling of the middle root letter and similar vowel patterns.

Imperative	Imperfect	Perfect	
	יִתְקַטֵּל	הִתְקַטֵּל	3ms
	תִּתְקַטֵּל	הִתְקַטְּלָה	3fs
הִתְקַטֵּל	תִּתְקַטֵּל	הִתְקַטְּלֶתָּ	2ms
הִתְקַטְּלִי	תִּתְקַטְּלִי	הִתְקַטְּלֶתְּ	2fs
	אֲתְקַטֵּל	הִתְקַטְּלִיתִי	1cs

	יִתְקַטְּלוּ	הִתְקַטְּלוּ	3cp/mp
	תִּתְקַטְּלֶנָּה		3fp
הִתְקַטְּלוּ	תִּתְקַטְּלוּ	הִתְקַטְּלֶתֶם	2mp
הִתְקַטְּלֶנָּה	תִּתְקַטְּלֶנָּה	הִתְקַטְּלֶתְּנָן	2fp
	נִתְקַטֵּל	הִתְקַטְּלֶנּוּ	1cp

Inf abs	Inf const	Participle	
הִתְקַטֵּל	הִתְקַטֵּל	מִתְקַטֵּל	ms
		מִתְקַטְּלֶת	fs
		מִתְקַטְּלִים	mp
		מִתְקַטְּלוֹת	fp

The Verb הִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה

- The verb הִשְׁתַּחֲוֶה (169×) means “to prostrate oneself” or “to worship.”
- Vocabulary Card #116

- Older dictionaries treat the verb הִשְׁתַּחֲוּהַּ as a hithpael of שָׁחָה. More recent dictionaries treat הִשְׁתַּחֲוּהַּ as a hishtafel of חוּהַּ. The latter is adopted in this grammar.

The hishtafel is abbreviated hish.

- Some of the frequent forms are.

Imperative	Imperfect	Perfect	
	תִּשְׁתַּחֲוּהָ	הִשְׁתַּחֲוִיתָ	2ms
		הִשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ	3cp
הִשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ			2mp

Wci	Inf const	Participle	
	הִשְׁתַּחֲוּוֹת	מִשְׁתַּחֲוִים	mp
וַיִּשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ			3ms
וַיִּשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ			3mp

Vocabulary

Qal: curse	אַרַּר	127	ram	אַיִל (אֵיל)	449
Qal: be gracious	חָנַן	145	lion	אַרִּי	584
Qal: be terrified	חָתַת	150	camel	גָּמֶל	600
Qal: measure	מָדַד	164	lamb	כֶּבֶשׂ (כֶּבֶשׂ)	514
Qal: go/turn around	סָבַב	96	wing, extremity	כַּנָּף	516

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of the *hith.* and *hish.* Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יְתַהַלְלוּ						
2. הִתְקַדְּשִׁיתִי						
3. מִתְנַפֵּל						
4. הִשְׁתַּחֲוִיתָ						
5. נִתְפַּלֵּל						
6. הִתְנַבְּאתָם						
7. וַיִּשְׁתַּחֲוּ						
8. וַיִּשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ						
9. מִתְהַלְּלִים						
10. אֶתְקַדַּשׁ						

B. Focus on the difference in meaning between the *qal* or *piel* and the *hith.* Translate the following.

1. הִלְלִיתִי 2. הִתְהַלְּלִיתִי 3. קִדְּשִׁיתִי 4. הִתְקַדְּשִׁיתִי
 5. נִפְלִיתִי 6. הִתְנַפְּלִיתִי 7. גִּדְּלִיתִי 8. הִתְגַּדְּלִיתִי

Reviewing Previous Lessons

C. Focus on nouns and adjectives from geminate roots. Match the plural form of the right column with the corresponding singular form in the left column.

- | | | |
|------------|-------|------------|
| אָם .a | _____ | דְּמִים .1 |
| לְבָב .b | _____ | עַמִּים .2 |
| חֶק .c | _____ | אֲמוֹת .3 |
| יָם .d | _____ | לְבוֹת .4 |
| פֶּרֶךְ .e | _____ | חַיִּים .5 |

דָּם	.f	_____	לְכַבּוֹת	.6
עַם	.g	_____	הָרִים	.7
הָר	.h	_____	חָקִים	.8
חֵי	.i	_____	יָמִים	.9
לֵב	.j	_____	כַּפּוֹת	.10

D. Focus on the verb from hollow roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. קָם						
2. יָקוּם						
3. יָקִים						
4. הִקִּים						
5. הִקִּימוּתָּ						
6. תִּקְוִי						
7. הִקִּימוּנוּ						
8. קָמְתָם						
9. הִקִּימוּ						
10. מִקִּים						

Putting It All Together

E. Translate the following.

	1.	וַיְהִי בַבֹּקֶר וַיָּבֹאוּ הָאֲנָשִׁים אֶל-הַהֵיכָל אֲשֶׁר בְּעִיר וַיְהִי כְּבוֹאָם וַיִּשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ לְפָנָי הַהֵיכָל וַיִּקְוּמוּ וַיֵּצְאוּ מִן-הָעִיר וְלֹא שָׁבוּ
1. In the morning, the men came to the temple in the city. And when they came, they prostrated themselves in front of the temple. Then they got up, went out from the city, and did not return.	2.	וַיֵּרְדוּ הַגְּבוּרִים אֶל-הַיָּם לְהִלָּחֵם עַל-אִיְבֵיהֶם וְהֵם הִמִּיתוּ אוֹתָם וַיִּתְּהַלְּלוּ לְאֵמֹר גְּדוֹלִים אֲנַחְנוּ מִכָּל-אִיְבֵינוּ כִּי לֹא הִמִּיתוּ אוֹתָנוּ בְּיַדֵּיהֶם

<p>2. The warriors went down to the sea to fight against their enemies. They themselves killed them, then praised themselves by saying, “We are greater than all our enemies, for they did not kill us with their own hands.”</p>	<p>3. וְהָיָה בַיּוֹם הַהוּא וְהִתְפַּלֵּל וְהִתְנַבֵּא הַנָּבִיא הַקָּדוֹשׁ וְשָׁמְעוּ עֲבָדֵי הַמֶּלֶךְ וְדָבְקוּ לְמִצְוֹת וְלַחֲקִים הַכְּתוּבִים בְּסֵפֶר־תּוֹרַת־אֱלֹהִים</p>
<p>3. In that day, the holy prophet will pray and prophesy, and the servants of the king will listen. Then they will cling to the commandments and statutes which are written in the book of the law of God.</p>	

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

F. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

1. הַשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ לַהֵר קָדְשׁוֹ כִּי־קָדוֹשׁ יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ: Psalm 99:9
2. כִּי־אַתָּה יְהוָה צְבָאוֹת אֱלֹהֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל גְּלִיתָהּ^a אֶת־אֲזָן עֲבָדֶיךָ לְאֹמֶר בַּיִת אֲבִנָּהּ־לְךָ^b עַל־כֵּן מָצָא עֲבָדֶיךָ אֶת־לְבָבוֹ לְהִתְפַּלֵּל אֵלֶיךָ 2 Samuel 7:27
3. וַיֹּאסְפוּ אֶת־אֲחֵיהֶם וַיִּתְקַדְּשׁוּ וַיָּבֵאוּ כְּמִצְוֹת־הַמֶּלֶךְ 2 Chronicles 29:15

^aSometimes a word usually spelled with a final *qamets* (ם) is spelled with a final *qamets-hey* (הָ).

^bAn alternate spelling of לְךָ.

40

THE VERB: GEMINATE ROOTS

Characteristics of Geminate Verbs

- The second and third root letters occur in three ways.
 - Normal: within a word and marked by strong *dagesh*, e.g., סְבוֹתָּ.
 - Reduced: at the end of a word and only one letter showing, e.g., יָסַבּ.
 - Dissociated: both letters written with a vowel in between, e.g., סָבַבּ.

Gal

Imperative	Imperfect	Perfect	
	יָסַבּ	סָבַבּ	3ms
	תָּסַבּ	סָבַבְתָּ	3fs
סַב	תָּסַבּ	סְבוֹתָּ	2ms
סַבִּי	תָּסַבִּי	סְבוֹתִי	2fs
	אָסַבּ	סְבוֹתִי	1cs

	יָסַבּוּ	סָבַבּוּ	3cp/mp
	תָּסַבְינָה		3fp
סַבּוּ	תָּסַבּוּ	סְבוֹתֶם	2mp
סַבְינָה	תָּסַבְינָה	סְבוֹתֶינָן	2fp
	נָסַבּ	סְבוֹנוּ	1cp

Inf. abs.	Inf. const.	Participle	
סָבוּב	סָב/סָבֵב	סָבֵב	<i>ms</i>
		סָבְבָה	<i>fs</i>
		סָבְבִים	<i>mp</i>
		סָבְבוֹת	<i>fp</i>

With stative verbs the 3ms and 3fs of the perfect are usually not dissociated, e.g., תָּם “he is perfect,” and תָּמָה “she is perfect.” The imperfect has the stative theme vowel and tsere under the prefix, e.g., יִתָּם “he will be perfect,” and תִּתָּם “she will be perfect.”

Hiphil

Imperative	Imperfect	Perfect	
	יִסֹּב	הִסֹּב	<i>3ms</i>
	תִּסֹּב	הִסֹּבָה	<i>3fs</i>
הִסֹּב	תִּסֹּב	הִסֹּבֹתָ	<i>2ms</i>
הִסֹּבִי	תִּסֹּבִי	הִסֹּבֹתִי	<i>2fs</i>
	אִסֹּב	הִסֹּבֹתִי	<i>1cs</i>

	יִסְבוּ	הִסְבוּ	<i>3cp/mp</i>
	תִּסְבִּינָה		<i>3fp</i>
הִסְבוּ	תִּסְבוּ	הִסְבוֹתֶם	<i>2mp</i>
הִסְבִּינָה	תִּסְבִּינָה	הִסְבוֹתֶינָן	<i>2fp</i>
	נִסֹּב	הִסְבוֹנוּ	<i>1cp</i>

Inf. abs.	Inf. const.	Participle	
הִסֵּב	הִסֵּב	מִסֵּב	<i>ms</i>
		מִסֵּבִים	<i>mp</i>

Niphal

Imperative	Imperfect	Perfect	
	יִסַּב	נָסַב	3ms
	תִּסַּב	נָסַבָּה	3fs
הִסַּב	תִּסַּב	נָסַבְתָּ	2ms
הִסַּבִּי	תִּסַּבִּי	נָסַבְתְּ	2fs
	אִסַּב	נָסַבְתִּי	1cs

	יִסְבוּ	נָסְבוּ	3cp/mp
	תִּסְבִּינָה		3fp
הִסְבוּ	תִּסְבוּ	נָסְבוּתֶם	2mp
הִסְבִּינָה	תִּסְבִּינָה	נָסְבוּתֵינָה	2fp
	נִסַּב	נָסְבוֹנוּ	1cp

Inf. abs.	Inf. const.	Participle	
הִסַּב	הִסַּב	נֹסֵב	ms

Vocabulary

evil, trouble, <i>f</i>	רָעָה	204	man	גִּבּוֹר (גִּבּוֹר)	597
Qal: seize	אָחַז	125	resident alien	גֵּר	602
Qal: be unclean	טָמֵא	81	male	זָכָר	609
Qal: destroy	שָׁחַת	117	foreigner	זָר	610
Qal: be complete	שָׁלַם	121	evil, bad	רָע	204
Piel: repay	שָׁלַם				

Practice

Focusing on New Material

A. Focus on the form of verbs from geminate roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. אָסַב						
2. סָבוּנוּ						
3. סָבוּ						
4. יָמְדוּ						
5. אָרוּר						
6. יָחַן						
7. אָרוּתִי						
8. מְדוּתָם						
9. יִתְחַנֵּן						
10. תָּמַד						

Reading Your Hebrew Bible

B. Translate the following from Deuteronomy 6:4–9.

(4) שָׁמַע יִשְׂרָאֵל יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵינוּ יְהוָה אֶחָד: (5) וְאֶהְיֶה אֵת יְהוָה אֱלֹהֵיךָ
 בְּכָל-לְבָבְךָ וּבְכָל-נַפְשֶׁךָ וּבְכָל-מְאֹדְךָ: (6) וְהָיוּ הַדְּבָרִים הָאֵלֶּה אֲשֶׁר
 אָנֹכִי מְצַוְךָ הַיּוֹם עַל-לְבָבְךָ: (7) וְשָׁנַנְתָּם^b לְבִנְיָךָ וְדִבַּרְתָּ בָם בְּשַׂבְתְּךָ
 בְּבֵיתְךָ וּבְלֶכְתְּךָ בַדֶּרֶךְ וּבְשֹׂכְבְךָ וּבְקוּמְךָ: (8) וְקָשַׁרְתָּם^c לְאוֹת^d עַל-יָדְךָ
 וְהָיוּ לְטֹטְפֹת^e בֵּין עֵינֶיךָ: (9) וְכָתַבְתָּם עַל-מְזוֹזוֹת^f בֵּיתְךָ וּבְשַׁעְרֶיךָ:

^aWhen a *wcp* is in sequence with an *impv*, here the *impv* שָׁמַע, the *wcp* has the force of an *impv*. The initial verbs in verses 6–9 are all in sequence and used in this same way.

^bPiel *vav* consecutive perfect 2ms + 3mp suffix form שָׁנַן, meaning “repeat”; related to שְׁנַיִם “two”

^cQal *wcp* 2ms + 3mp suffix from קָשַׁר, meaning “tie”

^d“As a sign”

^e“Phylacteries”

^f“Doorposts of”

PARADIGMS

Purpose of Paradigm Charts

These paradigms are designed to aid the student in the initial memorization of the Hebrew verbal paradigms and to provide a convenient means for the continual review of the verb forms until mastery is attained.

Each page contains a full paradigm. The left-hand columns list the perfect and imperfect in parallel, followed by the jussive and cohortative. The right-hand column completes the volitive forms with the imperative, followed by the participle. The vav-relative imperfect form is placed to the immediate right of the jussive, because these forms are morphologically related. The infinitives conclude the paradigm.

Scope of the Paradigms

These paradigms include all of the paradigms a student would do well to commit to memory by the end of first-year Hebrew. These paradigms are identical to the paradigms found in the text of the grammar.

The paradigms for all seven major patterns/stems of the regular verb are provided. Two criteria determined the paradigms included for the irregular verbs: (1) only the paradigms of the affected conjugations and (2) only those of relatively high frequency have been included. Not all of the included forms occur in the root that has been employed. Forms that do not occur in any root in a given pattern/stem have not been created; XXXs are used in such slots.

Mastery of these paradigms will enable the student to recognize the majority of verbal forms encountered in the Hebrew Bible.

QAL

REGULAR

Perfect		Imperfect	Imperative	
קָטַל	3ms	יִקְטֹל	ms	קָטַל
קָטְלָהּ	3fs	תִּקְטֹל	fs	קָטְלִי
קָטַלְתָּ	2ms	תִּקְטֹל	mp	קָטְלוּ
קָטַלְתְּ	2fs	תִּקְטְלִי	fp	קָטְלֵנָה
קָטַלְתִּי	1cs	אֶקְטֹל		
קָטַלוּ	3mp	יִקְטְלוּ	Participle	
קָטְלוּ	3fp	תִּקְטְלֵנָה	ms	קָטֵל
קָטַלְתֶּם	2mp	תִּקְטְלוּ	fs	קָטֵלָהּ / קָטֵלָת
קָטַלְתֶּן	2fp	תִּקְטְלֵנָה	mp	קָטְלִים
קָטַלְנִי	1cp	נִקְטֹל	fp	קָטְלוֹת
	Jussive		Vav-relative	
	3ms	יִקְטֹל	3ms	וַיִּקְטֹל
	Cohortative		Infinitives	
	1cs	אֶקְטְלָהּ	Inf const	קָטַל
	1cp	נִקְטְלָהּ	Inf abs	קָטוּל

NIPHAL

Perfect		Imperfect	
נִקְטַל	3ms	יִקְטַל	
נִקְטְלָהּ	3fs	תִּקְטַל	
נִקְטַלְתָּ	2ms	תִּקְטַל	
נִקְטַלְתְּ	2fs	תִּקְטַלִּי	
נִקְטַלְתִּי	1cs	אֶקְטַל	
נִקְטְלוּ	3mp	יִקְטְלוּ	
נִקְטְלוּ	3fp	תִּקְטַלְנָהּ	
נִקְטַלְתֶּם	2mp	תִּקְטְלוּ	
נִקְטַלְתֶּן	2fp	תִּקְטַלְנָהּ	
נִקְטַלְנוּ	1cp	נִקְטַל	
Jussive			
	3ms	יִקְטַל	
Cohortative			
	1cs	אֶקְטַלְהָ	
	1cp	נִקְטַלְהָ	

REGULAR

Imperative	
ms	הִקְטַל
fs	הִקְטַלִּי
mp	הִקְטְלוּ
fp	הִקְטַלְנָהּ
Participle	
ms	נִקְטָל
fs	נִקְטַלְתָּ / נִקְטְלָהּ
mp	נִקְטָלִים
fp	נִקְטַלוֹת
Vav-relative	
3ms	וַיִּקְטַל
Infinitives	
Inf const	הִקְטַל
Inf abs	הִקְטַל / נִקְטַל

PIEL

REGULAR

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
קָטַל	3ms	יִקְטֹל		ms	קָטַל
קָטְלָהּ	3fs	תִּקְטֹל		fs	קָטְלִי
קָטַלְתָּ	2ms	תִּקְטֹל		mp	קָטְלוּ
קָטַלְתְּ	2fs	תִּקְטְלִי		fp	קָטְלֵנָה
קָטַלְתִּי	1cs	אֶקְטֹל			
קָטְלוּ	3mp	יִקְטְלוּ		Participle	
קָטְלוּ	3fp	תִּקְטְלֵנָה		ms	מְקַטֵּל
קָטַלְתֶּם	2mp	תִּקְטְלוּ		fs	מְקַטְלָה / מְקַטְלֵת
קָטַלְתֶּן	2fp	תִּקְטְלֵנָה		mp	מְקַטְלִים
קָטַלְנוּ	1cp	נִקְטֹל		fp	מְקַטְלוֹת
	Jussive			Vav-Relative	
	3ms	יִקְטֹל		3ms	וַיִּקְטֹל
	Cohortative			Infinitives	
	1cs	אֶקְטֹלָהּ		Inf const	קָטַל
	1cp	נִקְטְלָהּ		Inf abs	קָטַל / קָטְלִי

PUAL

REGULAR

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
קָטַל	3ms	יִקְטֹל		ms	XXX
קָטְלָהּ	3fs	תִּקְטֹל		fs	XXX
קָטַלְתָּ	2ms	תִּקְטֹל		mp	XXX
קָטַלְתְּ	2fs	תִּקְטְלִי		fp	XXX
קָטַלְתִּי	1cs	אֶקְטֹל			
קָטְלוּ	3mp	יִקְטְלוּ		Participle	
קָטְלוּ	3fp	תִּקְטְלֶנָּה		ms	מְקַטֵּל
קָטַלְתֶּם	2mp	תִּקְטְלוּ		fs	מְקַטְלָהּ / מְקַטְלָתָהּ
קָטַלְתֶּן	2fp	תִּקְטְלֶנָּה		mp	מְקַטְלִים
קָטַלְנוּ	1cp	נִקְטֹל		fp	מְקַטְלוֹת
	Jussive			Vav-Relative	
	3ms	יִקְטֹל		3ms	וַיִּקְטֹל
	Cohortative			Infinitives	
	1cs	אֶקְטֹלָהּ		Inf const	XXX
	1cp	נִקְטְלָהּ		Inf abs	קָטַל

HIPHIL

REGULAR

Perfect		Imperfect	Imperative	
הִקְטִיל	3ms	יִקְטִיל	ms	הִקְטִיל
הִקְטִילָהּ	3fs	תִּקְטִיל	fs	הִקְטִילִי
הִקְטִילְתָּ	2ms	תִּקְטִיל	mp	הִקְטִילוּ
הִקְטִילְתְּ	2fs	תִּקְטִילִי	fp	הִקְטִילְנָה
הִקְטִילְתִּי	1cs	אִקְטִיל		
הִקְטִילוּ	3mp	יִקְטִיל	Participle	
הִקְטִילוּ	3fp	תִּקְטִילְנָה	ms	מִקְטִיל
הִקְטִילְתֶּם	2mp	תִּקְטִילוּ	fs	מִקְטִילָהּ / מִקְטִילַת
הִקְטִילְתֶּן	2fp	תִּקְטִילְנָה	mp	מִקְטִילִים
הִקְטִילְנוּ	1cp	נִקְטִיל	fp	מִקְטִילוֹת
	Jussive		Vav-Relative	
	3ms	יִקְטֵל	3ms	וַיִּקְטֵל
	Cohortative		Infinitives	
	1cs	אִקְטִילָהּ	Inf const	הִקְטִיל
	1cp	נִקְטִילָהּ	Inf abs	הִקְטֵל

HOPHAL

Perfect		Imperfect	
הִקְטִיל	3ms	יִקְטֹל	
הִקְטִילָהּ	3fs	תִּקְטֹל	
הִקְטִילְתָּ	2ms	תִּקְטֹל	
הִקְטִילְתְּ	2fs	תִּקְטִילִי	
הִקְטִילְתִּי	1cs	אִקְטֹל	
הִקְטִילוּ	3mp	יִקְטֹלוּ	
הִקְטִילוּן	3fp	תִּקְטִילְנָה	
הִקְטִילְתֶּם	2mp	תִּקְטִילוּ	
הִקְטִילְתֶּן	2fp	תִּקְטִילְנָה	
הִקְטִילְנוּ	1cp	נִקְטֹל	
Jussive			
	3ms	יִקְטֹל	
Cohortative			
	1cs	אִקְטִילָהּ	
	1cp	נִקְטִילָהּ	

REGULAR

Imperative	
ms	XXX
fs	XXX
mp	XXX
fp	XXX
Participle	
ms	מִקְטֹל
fs	מִקְטֹלָה / מִקְטֹלֶת
mp	מִקְטֹלִים
fp	מִקְטֹלוֹת
Vav-Relative	
3ms	וַיִּקְטֹל
Infinitives	
Inf const	XXX
Inf abs	הִקְטִיל

HITHPAEL

REGULAR

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
הִתְקַטַּל	3ms	יִתְקַטַּל		ms	הִתְקַטַּל
הִתְקַטְּלָה	3fs	תִּתְקַטַּל		fs	הִתְקַטְּלִי
תִּתְקַטַּלְתְּ	2ms	תִּתְקַטַּל		mp	הִתְקַטְּלוּ
תִּתְקַטְּלִי	2fs	תִּתְקַטְּלִי		fp	הִתְקַטְּלֵנָה
הִתְקַטַּלְתִּי	1cs	אֲתְקַטַּל			
הִתְקַטְּלוּ	3mp	יִתְקַטְּלוּ		Participle	
הִתְקַטְּלוּ	3fp	תִּתְקַטְּלֵנָה		ms	מִתְקַטַּל
הִתְקַטְּלֶתֶם	2mp	תִּתְקַטְּלוּ		fs	מִתְקַטְּלָה / מִתְקַטְּלֶת
הִתְקַטְּלֵתְּ	2fp	תִּתְקַטְּלֵנָה		mp	מִתְקַטְּלִים
הִתְקַטְּלֵנוּ	1cp	נִתְקַטַּל		fp	מִתְקַטְּלוֹת
Jussive			Vav-Relative		
	3ms	יִתְקַטַּל		3ms	וַיִּתְקַטַּל
Cohortative			Infinitives		
	1cs	אֲתְקַטְּלָה		Inf const	הִתְקַטַּל
	1cp	נִתְקַטְּלָה		Inf abs	הִתְקַטַּל

NIPHAL

Perfect		Imperfect	
נִעְמַד	3ms	יִעְמַד	
נִעְמְדָה	3fs	תִּעְמַד	
נִעְמַדְתָּ	2ms	תִּעְמַד	
נִעְמַדְתְּ	2fs	תִּעְמְדִי	
נִעְמַדְתִּי	1cs	אֲעַמַּד	
נִעְמְדוּ	3mp	יִעְמְדוּ	
נִעְמְדוּ	3fp	תִּעְמְדְנָה	
נִעְמַדְתֶּם	2mp	תִּעְמְדוּ	
נִעְמַדְתֶּן	2fp	תִּעְמְדְנָה	
נִעְמַדְנוּ	1cp	נִעְמַד	
Jussive			
	3ms	יִעְמַד	
Cohortative			
	1cs	אֲעַמְדָה	
	1cp	נִעְמְדָה	

I GUTTURAL

Imperative	
ms	הִעְמַד
fs	הִעְמְדִי
mp	הִעְמְדוּ
fp	הִעְמְדְנָה
Participle	
ms	נִעְמַד
fs	נִעְמַדְתָּ / נִעְמְדָה
mp	נִעְמְדִים
fp	נִעְמְדוֹת
Vav-Relative	
3ms	וַיִּעְמַד
Infinitives	
Inf const	הִעְמַד
Inf abs	הִעְמֹד / נִעְמֹד

HIPHIL

Perfect		Imperfect	
הֶעֱמִיד	3ms	יַעֲמִיד	
הֶעֱמִידָה	3fs	תַּעֲמִיד	
הֶעֱמַדְתָּ	2ms	תַּעֲמִיד	
הֶעֱמַדְתְּ	2fs	תַּעֲמִידִי	
הֶעֱמַדְתִּי	1cs	אֶעֱמִיד	
הֶעֱמִידוּ	3mp	יַעֲמִידוּ	
הֶעֱמִידוּ	3fp	תַּעֲמִידְנָה	
הֶעֱמַדְתֶּם	2mp	תַּעֲמִידוּ	
הֶעֱמַדְתֶּן	2fp	תַּעֲמִידְנָה	
הֶעֱמַדְנוּ	1cp	נֶעֱמִיד	
Jussive			
	3ms	יַעֲמַד	
Cohortative			
	1cs	אֶעֱמִידָה	
	1cp	נֶעֱמִידָה	

I GUTTURAL

Imperative	
ms	הֶעֱמַד
fs	הֶעֱמִידִי
mp	הֶעֱמִידוּ
fp	הֶעֱמִידְנָה
Participle	
ms	מַעֲמִיד
fs	מַעֲמִידָה / מַעֲמִידַת
mp	מַעֲמִידִים
fp	מַעֲמִידוֹת
Vav-Relative	
3ms	וַיַּעֲמַד
Infinitives	
Inf const	הֶעֱמִיד
Inf abs	הַעֲמִיד

QAL

II GUTTURAL

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
רָחַץ	3ms	יִרְחֹץ		ms	רָחַץ
רָחַצְתָּ	3fs	תִּרְחֹץ		fs	רָחֲצִי
רָחַצְתָּם	2ms	תִּרְחֹץ		mp	רָחֲצוּ
רָחַצְתֶּם	2fs	תִּרְחֹצִי		fp	רָחֲצֵנָה
רָחַצְתִּי	1cs	אֲרַחֵץ			
				Participle	
רָחֹץ	3mp	יִרְחֹצוּ		ms	רָחֹץ
רָחֹצִי	3fp	תִּרְחֹצְנָה		fs	רָחֹצֵת / רָחֹצָה
רָחֹצְתָם	2mp	תִּרְחֹצוּ		mp	רָחֹצִים
רָחֹצְתֶם	2fp	תִּרְחֹצְנָה		fp	רָחֹצוֹת
רָחֹצְנִי	1cp	נִרְחֹץ			
	Jussive			Vav-Relative	
	3ms	יִרְחֹץ		3ms	וַיִּרְחֹץ
	Cohortative			Infinitives	
	1cs	אֲרַחֵצָה		Inf const	רָחֹץ
	1cp	נִרְחֹצָה		Inf abs	רָחֹץ

PIEL

II GUTTURAL

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
בָּרַךְ	3ms	יְבָרֵךְ		ms	בָּרַךְ
בָּרְכָה	3fs	תְּבָרְכִי		fs	בָּרְכִי
בָּרַכְתָּ	2ms	תְּבָרְכִי		mp	בָּרְכוּ
בָּרַכְתְּ	2fs	תְּבָרְכִי		fp	בָּרְכֶנָּה
בָּרַכְתִּי	1cs	אֲבָרַךְ			
				Participle	
בָּרְכוּ	3mp	יְבָרְכוּ		ms	מְבָרֵךְ
בָּרְכוּ	3fp	תְּבָרְכֶנָּה		fs	מְבָרְכֶת / מְבָרְכָה
בָּרַכְתֶּם	2mp	תְּבָרְכוּ		mp	מְבָרְכִים
בָּרַכְתֶּן	2fp	תְּבָרְכֶנָּה		fp	מְבָרְכוֹת
בָּרַכְנוּ	1cp	נְבָרַךְ			
				Vav-Relative	
	Jussive			3ms	וַיְבָרַךְ
	3ms	יְבָרַךְ			
				Infinitives	
	Cohortative			Inf const	בָּרַךְ
	1cs	אֲבָרְכָה		Inf abs	בָּרַךְ / בָּרוּךְ
	1cp	נְבָרְכָה			

QAL

I NUN

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
נָפַל	3ms	יִפֹּל		ms	נָפַל
נָפְלָה	3fs	תִּפֹּל		fs	נָפְלִי
נָפַלְתָּ	2ms	תִּפֹּל		mp	נָפְלוּ
נָפַלְתְּ	2fs	תִּפְּלִי		fp	נָפְלִינָה
נָפַלְתִּי	1cs	אֶפֶל			
Participle					
נָפְלוּ	3mp	יִפְּלוּ		ms	נָפַל
נָפְלוּ	3fp	תִּפְּלִינָה		fs	נָפְלָה / נָפְלָה
נָפַלְתֶּם	2mp	תִּפְּלוּ		mp	נָפְלִים
נָפַלְתֶּן	2fp	תִּפְּלִינָה		fp	נָפְלוֹת
נָפַלְנוּ	1cp	נָפַל			
Jussive					
	3ms	יִפֹּל		3ms	יִפֹּל
Cohortative					
	1cs	אֶפְּלָה		Inf const	נָפַל
	1cp	נָפְּלָה		Inf abs	נָפּוּל
Vav-Relative					
Infinitives					

NIPHAL

I NUN

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
נִצַּל	3ms	יִנְצַל		ms	הִנְצַל
נִצְּלָה	3fs	תִּנְצַל		fs	הִנְצְּלִי
נִצַּלְתָּ	2ms	תִּנְצַל		mp	הִנְצַלּוּ
נִצַּלְתְּ	2fs	תִּנְצְּלִי		fp	הִנְצַלְּנִי
נִצַּלְתִּי	1cs	אִנְצַל			
נִצַּלּוּ	3mp	יִנְצַלּוּ		Participle	
נִצְּלוּ	3fp	תִּנְצַלְּנָה		ms	נֹצֵל
נִצַּלְתֶּם	2mp	תִּנְצַלּוּ		fs	נֹצֵלָה / נֹצֵלֶת
נִצַּלְתֶּן	2fp	תִּנְצַלְּנָה		mp	נֹצְלִים
נִצַּלְנוּ	1cp	נִנְצַל		fp	נֹצְלוֹת
	Jussive			Vav-Relative	
	3ms	יִנְצַל		3ms	וַיִּנְצַל
	Cohortative			Infinitives	
	1cs	אִנְצַלְהָ		Inf const	הִנְצַל
	1cp	נִנְצַלְהָ		Inf abs	הִנְצַל / הִנְצַלְהָ / נִצַּל

HIPHIL

I NUN

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
הִצִּיל	3ms	יִצִּיל		ms	הִצֵּל
הִצִּילָהּ	3fs	תִּצִּיל		fs	הִצִּילִי
הִצִּלְתָּ	2ms	תִּצִּיל		mp	הִצִּילוּ
הִצִּלְתְּ	2fs	תִּצִּילִי		fp	הִצִּלְנָה
הִצִּלְתִּי	1cs	אִצִּיל			
הִצִּילוּ	3mp	יִצִּילוּ		Participle	
הִצִּילוּ	3fp	תִּצִּלְנָה		ms	מִצִּיל
הִצִּלְתֶּם	2mp	תִּצִּילוּ		fs	מִצִּילָהּ / מִצִּילָת
הִצִּלְתֶּן	2fp	תִּצִּלְנָה		mp	מִצִּילִים
הִצִּלְנוּ	1cp	נִצִּיל		fp	מִצִּילוֹת
	Jussive			Vav-Relative	
	3ms	יִצֵּל		3ms	וַיִּצֵּל
	Cohortative			Infinitives	
	1cs	אִצִּילָהּ		Inf const	הִצִּיל
	1cp	נִצִּילָהּ		Inf abs	הִצֵּל

QAL

I YOD (YOD)

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
יָטַב	3ms	יִיטַב		ms	XXX
יָטַבָּה	3fs	תִּיטַב		fs	XXX
יָטַבְתָּ	2ms	תִּיטַב		mp	XXX
יָטַבְתְּ	2fs	תִּיטַבִּי		fp	XXX
יָטַבְתִּי	1cs	אִיטַב			
Participle					
יָטַבוּ	3mp	יִיטַבוּ		ms	XXX
יָטַבוּ	3fp	תִּיטַבְנָה		fs	XXX
יָטַבְתֶּם	2mp	תִּיטַבוּ		mp	XXX
יָטַבְתֶּן	2fp	תִּיטַבְנָה		fp	XXX
יָטַבְנוּ	1cp	נִיטַב			
Jussive					
	3ms	יִיטַב		3ms	נִיִּטַב
Cohortative					
	1cs	אִיטַבָּה		Inf const	XXX
	1cp	נִיטַבָּה		Inf abs	XXX
Vav-Relative					
Infinitives					

HIPHIL

I YOD (YOD)

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
הִיטִיב	3ms	יִיטִיב		ms	הִיטִיב
הִיטִיבָּה	3fs	תִּיטִיב		fs	הִיטִיבִי
הִיטִיבְּתָ	2ms	תִּיטִיב		mp	הִיטִיבוּ
הִיטִיבְּתֵי	2fs	תִּיטִיבֵי		fp	הִיטִיבְּנָה
הִיטִיבְּתִי	1cs	אִיטִיב			
הִיטִיבוּ	3mp	יִיטִיבוּ		Participle	
הִיטִיבוּ	3fp	תִּיטִיבְּנָה		ms	מִיטִיב
הִיטִיבְּתֵם	2mp	תִּיטִיבוּ		fs	מִיטִיבָה / מִיטִיבָת
הִיטִיבְּתֵינָן	2fp	תִּיטִיבְּנָה		mp	מִיטִיבִים
הִיטִיבְּנִי	1cp	יִיטִיב		fp	מִיטִיבוֹת
	Jussive			Vav-Relative	
	3ms	יִיטִב		3ms	וַיִּיטֵב
	Cohortative			Infinitives	
	1cs	אִיטִיבָה		Inf const	הִיטִיב
	1cp	יִיטִיבָה		Inf abs	הִיטֵב

HIPHIL

I YOD (VAV)

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
הוֹשִׁיב	3ms	יוֹשִׁיב		ms	הוֹשִׁב
הוֹשִׁיבָה	3fs	תוֹשִׁיב		fs	הוֹשִׁיבִי
הוֹשִׁיבְתָּ	2ms	תוֹשִׁיב		mp	הוֹשִׁיבוּ
הוֹשִׁיבְתִּי	2fs	תוֹשִׁיבִי		fp	הוֹשִׁיבְנָה
הוֹשִׁיבְתִּי	1cs	אוֹשִׁיב			
הוֹשִׁיבוּ	3mp	יוֹשִׁיבוּ		Participle	
הוֹשִׁיבוּ	3fp	תוֹשִׁיבְנָה		ms	מוֹשִׁיב
הוֹשִׁיבְתֶּם	2mp	תוֹשִׁיבוּ		fs	מוֹשִׁבֶת / מוֹשִׁיבָה
הוֹשִׁיבְתֵּן	2fp	תוֹשִׁיבְנָה		mp	מוֹשִׁיבִים
הוֹשִׁיבְנִי	1cp	נוֹשִׁיב		fp	מוֹשִׁיבוֹת
	Jussive			Vav-Relative	
	3ms	יוֹשִׁב		3ms	וַיֹּשִׁב
	Cohortative			Infinitives	
	1cs	אוֹשִׁיבָה		Inf const	הוֹשִׁיב
	1cp	נוֹשִׁיבָה		Inf abs	הוֹשִׁב

NIPHAL

I YOD (VAV)

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
נִשַׁב	3ms	יִנְשַׁב		ms	הִנְשַׁב
נִשְׁבָּה	3fs	תִּנְשַׁב		fs	הִנְשַׁבִּי
נִשְׁבַּתְּ	2ms	תִּנְשַׁב		mp	הִנְשַׁבו
נִשְׁבַּתְּ	2fs	תִּנְשַׁבִּי		fp	הִנְשַׁבְנָה
נִשְׁבַּתִּי	1cs	אִנְשַׁב			
נִשְׁבוּ	3mp	יִנְשַׁבוּ		Participle	
נִשְׁבּוּ	3fp	תִּנְשַׁבְנָה		ms	נֹשֵׁב
נִשְׁבַּתְּם	2mp	תִּנְשַׁבוּ		fs	נֹשֵׁבָה / נֹשֵׁבֶת
נִשְׁבַּתְּןָ	2fp	תִּנְשַׁבְנָה		mp	נֹשְׁבִים
נִשְׁבַּנּוּ	1cp	נִנְשַׁב		fp	נֹשְׁבוֹת
	Jussive			Vav-Relative	
	3ms	יִנְשַׁב		3ms	וַיִּנְשַׁב
	Cohortative			Infinitives	
	1cs	אִנְשַׁבָּה		Inf const	הִנְשַׁב
	1cp	נִנְשַׁבָּה		Inf abs	הִנְשַׁב

QAL

III HEY

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
גָּלָה	3ms	יִגְלֶה		ms	גָּלָה
גָּלְתָה	3fs	תִּגְלֶה		fs	גָּלִי
גָּלִיתָ	2ms	תִּגְלֶה		mp	גָּלוּ
גָּלִיתְּ	2fs	תִּגְלִי		fp	גָּלִינָה
גָּלִיתִי	1cs	אֶגְלֶה			
גָּלוּ	3mp	יִגְלוּ		Participle	
גָּלוּ	3fp	תִּגְלִינָה		ms	גָּלָה
גָּלִיתֶם	2mp	תִּגְלוּ		fs	גָּלָה
גָּלִיתֶן	2fp	תִּגְלִינָה		mp	גָּלִים
גָּלִינוּ	1cp	נִגְלֶה		fp	גָּלוֹת
Jussive				Vav-Relative	
3ms		יִגְלֶה		3ms נִיגְלֶה	
Cohortative				Infinitives	
1cs		אֶגְלֶה		Inf const גָּלוֹת	
1cp		נִגְלֶה		Inf abs גָּלָה	

NIPHAL

III HEY

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
נִגְלָה	3ms	יִגְלֶה		ms	הִגְלֵה
נִגְלְתָה	3fs	תִּגְלֶה		fs	הִגְלִי
נִגְלִיתָ	2ms	תִּגְלֶה		mp	הִגְלוּ
נִגְלִיתְּ	2fs	תִּגְלִי		fp	XXX
נִגְלִיתִי	1cs	אִגְלֶה			
נִגְלוּ	3mp	יִגְלוּ		Participle	
נִגְלוּ	3fp	תִּגְלִינָה		ms	נִגְלָה
נִגְלִיתֶם	2mp	תִּגְלוּ		fs	נִגְלָה
נִגְלִיתֶן	2fp	תִּגְלִינָה		mp	נִגְלִית
נִגְלִינוּ	1cp	נִגְלֶה		fp	נִגְלוֹת
	Jussive			Vav-Relative	
	3ms	יִגְלֶה		3ms	וַיִּגְלֶה
	Cohortative			Infinitives	
	1cs	אִגְלֶה		Inf const	הִגְלוֹת
	1cp	נִגְלֶה		Inf abs	הִגְלֵה / נִגְלֵה

PIEL

III HEY

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
גָּלָה	3ms	יִגְלֶה		ms	גָּלָה
גָּלְתָה	3fs	תִּגְלֶה		fs	גָּלִי
גָּלִיתָ	2ms	תִּגְלֶה		mp	גָּלוּ
גָּלִיתְּ	2fs	תִּגְלִי		fp	XXX
גָּלִיתִי	1cs	אֲגַלֶּה			
גָּלוּ	3mp	יִגְלוּ		Participle	
גָּלוּ	3fp	תִּגְלִינָה		ms	מְגַלֵּה
גָּלִיתֶם	2mp	תִּגְלוּ		fs	מְגַלֶּה
גָּלִיתֶן	2fp	תִּגְלִינָה		mp	מְגַלִּים
גָּלִינוּ	1cp	נִגְלֶה		fp	מְגַלוֹת
Jussive				Vav-Relative	
	3ms	יִגַּל		3ms	וַיִּגַּל
Cohortative				Infinitives	
	1cs	אֲגַלֶּה		Inf const	גָּלוֹת
	1cp	נִגְלֶה		Inf abs	גָּלָה / גָּלָה

QAL

III ALEPH

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
מָצָא	3ms	יִמְצָא		ms	מָצָא
מָצְאָה	3fs	תִּמְצָא		fs	מָצְאִי
מָצָאתָ	2ms	תִּמְצָא		mp	מָצְאוּ
מָצָאתְ	2fs	תִּמְצְאִי		fp	מָצְאֵנָה
מָצָאתִי	1cs	אִמְצָא			
				Participle	
מָצְאוּ	3mp	יִמְצְאוּ		ms	מָצָא
מָצְאוּ	3fp	תִּמְצְאֵנָה		fs	מָצָאת
מָצְאתֶם	2mp	תִּמְצְאוּ		mp	מָצְאִים
מָצְאתֶן	2fp	תִּמְצְאֵנָה		fp	מָצְאוֹת
מָצְאוֹנִי	1cp	נִמְצָא			
				Vav-Relative	
	Jussive			3ms	וַיִּמְצָא
	3ms	יִמְצָא			
				Infinitives	
	Cohortative			Inf const	מָצֵא
	1cs	אִמְצְאָה		Inf abs	מָצֹא
	1cp	נִמְצְאָה			

QAL

HOLLOW

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
קָם	3ms	יִקְוֹם	ms	קוֹם	
קָמָה	3fs	תִּקְוֹם	fs	קוּמִי	
קָמְתָּ	2ms	תִּקְוֹם	mp	קוּמוּ	
קָמְתָּ	2fs	תִּקְוֹמִי	fp	קוּמְנָה	
קָמְתִּי	1cs	אִקְוֹם			
קָמוּ	3mp	יִקְוֹמוּ	Participle		
קָמוּ	3fp	תִּקְוֹמְנָה	ms	קָם	
קָמְתֶם	2mp	תִּקְוֹמוּ	fs	קָמָה	
קָמְתֶן	2fp	תִּקְוֹמְנָה	mp	קָמִים	
קָמְנוּ	1cp	נִקְוֹם	fp	קָמוֹת	
	Jussive		Vav-Relative		
	3ms	יִקָּם	3ms	וַיִּקָּם	
	Cohortative		Infinitives		
	1cs	אִקְוֹמָה	Inf const	קוֹם	
	1cp	נִקְוֹמָה	Inf abs	קוֹם	

HIPHIL

Perfect		Imperfect	
הִקִּים	3ms	יִקַּם	
הִקִּימָה	3fs	תִּקַּם	
הִקִּימוּתְּ	2ms	תִּקַּם	
הִקִּימוּתְּ	2fs	תִּקַּמִּי	
הִקִּימוּתִּי	1cs	אִקַּם	
הִקִּימוּ	3mp	יִקַּמוּ	
הִקִּימוּ	3fp	תִּקַּיְמֵנָה	
הִקִּימוּתְּם	2mp	תִּקַּמוּ	
הִקִּימוּתְּן	2fp	תִּקַּיְמֵנָה	
הִקִּימוּנִי	1cp	נִקַּם	
Jussive			
	3ms	יִקַּם	
Cohortative			
	1cs	אִקַּיְמָה	
	1cp	נִקַּיְמָה	

HOLLOW

Imperative	
ms	הִקֵּם
fs	הִקִּימִי
mp	הִקִּימוּ
fp	הִקִּימְנָה
Participle	
ms	מִקַּם
fs	מִקַּמָּה
mp	מִקַּמִּים
fp	מִקַּמוֹת
Vav-Relative	
3ms	וַיִּקַּם
Infinitives	
Inf const	הִקִּים
Inf abs	הִקֵּם

QAL

GEMINATE

Perfect		Imperfect		Imperative	
סָבַב	3ms	יִסַּב		ms	סַב
סָבְבָה	3fs	תִּסַּב		fs	סַבִּי
סָבַבְתָּ	2ms	תִּסַּב		mp	סַבוּ
סָבַבְתְּ	2fs	תִּסַּבִּי		fp	סַבִּינָה
סָבַבְתִּי	1cs	אִסַּב			
				Participle	
סָבְבוּ	3mp	יִסַּבוּ		ms	סַבֵּב
סָבְבוּ	3fp	תִּסַּבִּינָה		fs	סַבֵּבָה
סָבַבְתֶּם	2mp	תִּסַּבוּ		mp	סַבֵּבִים
סָבַבְתֶּן	2fp	תִּסַּבִּינָה		fp	סַבֵּבוֹת
סָבַבְנוּ	1cp	נִסַּב			
		Jussive		Vav-Relative	
		3ms	יִסַּב	3ms	וַיִּסַּב
		Cohortative		Infinitives	
		1cs	אִסַּבְּהָ	Inf const	סַב / סַבֵּב
		1cp	נִסַּבְּהָ	Inf abs	סַבֵּבוּ

HIPHIL

Perfect		Imperfect	
הִסָּב	3ms	יִסָּב	
הִסָּבָה	3fs	תִּסָּב	
הִסְבוֹתָ	2ms	תִּסָּב	
הִסְבוֹת	2fs	תִּסְבִּי	
הִסְבוֹתִי	1cs	אִסָּב	
הִסְבוּ	3mp	יִסְבוּ	
הִסְבוּ	3fp	תִּסְבִּינָה	
הִסְבוֹתֶם	2mp	תִּסְבוּ	
הִסְבוֹתֵינָן	2fp	תִּסְבִּינָה	
הִסְבוֹנוּ	1cp	נִסָּב	
Jussive			
	3ms	יִסָּב	
Cohortative			
	1cs	אִסְבֶּה	
	1cp	נִסְבֶּה	

GEMINATE

Imperative	
ms	הִסָּב
fs	הִסְבִּי
mp	הִסְבוּ
fp	הִסְבִּינָה
Participle	
ms	מִסָּב
fs	מִסָּבָה
mp	מִסְבִּים
fp	מִסְבוֹת
Vav-Relative	
3ms	וַיִּסָּב
Infinitives	
Inf const	הִסָּב
Inf abs	הִסָּב

VOCABULARY

- Words are listed alphabetically.
- Verbs are listed in the form of the Qal perfect third person masculine singular, except in the case of verbs from hollow roots, which are listed according to the Qal infinitive construct.
- The number in parentheses refers to the lesson in which the vocabulary was first introduced.

א

אָב	father, ancestor (2)	אַחֵר	other, another (10)
אָבֵד	Qal perish, be lost; Piel destroy (18)	אַחֲרָיִךְ	behind, after, west (16)
אָבָה	Qal be willing, want (18)	אַחֲרוֹן	behind, latter, west (37)
אָבֶן	stone <i>f</i> (25)	אַחֲרָי	after, behind (26)
אָדוֹן	lord, master (12)	אַחֲרֵית	end, outcome, latter part (34)
אָדָם	man, mankind, Adam (5)	אַחֲרֵית	other, another (10)
אָדָמָה	ground, land (20)	אַחַת	one <i>f</i> (29)
אָהֵב	Qal love (20)	אֵיל	ram (39)
אָהֶל	tent, dwelling (11)	אֵיב	enemy (16)
אֹצֵר	treasure, treasury, storehouse (38)	אֵין	there is not (22)
אוֹר	light <i>f</i> (20)	אִישׁ	man, husband, each (5)
אָז	then (19)	אָכַל	Qal eat; Hiph feed (2)
אָזֶן	ear <i>f</i> (15)	אֶל	toward, unto, to, for the sake of (8)
אָח	brother (2)	אֱלֹהִים	god, gods (3)
אָחָד	one <i>m</i> (29)	אֵלֶּה	these (16)
אָחוֹת	sister (2)	אֱלֹהִים	God, gods (3)
אָחָז	Qal seize (40)	אֶלֶף	one thousand (29)
		אִם	mother <i>f</i> (2)

גָּדַל	Qal be great, wealthy, important; Piel & Hiph cause to grow, magnify; Hith boast (26)	הָלַל	Piel praise; Hith praise oneself (27)
גָּדוֹל	large, great (9)	הֵם	they <i>mp</i> (4)
גּוֹי	nation, people, Gentile (18)	הִמָּה	they <i>mp</i> (4)
גּוֹר	Qal sojourn, stay as a foreigner (34)	הִנֵּה	behold! look! (20)
גֵּיאַ	valley (36)	הִנֵּה	they <i>fp</i> (4)
גָּלָה	Qal uncover, reveal, go away; Piel uncover, reveal; Hiph take into exile (14)	הַר	mountain, hill country (18)
גַּם	also, even (19)	הָרַג	Qal kill (34)
גַּמְלַ	camel (39)		
גַּפְּנֵי	vine <i>f</i> (35)	ז	
גֵּר	resident alien (40)	זָאת	this <i>f</i> (16)
		זָבַח	Qal sacrifice, slaughter (7)
ד		זָבַח	sacrifice (7)
דָּבַק	Qal cling to (23)	זֶה	this <i>m</i> (16)
דָּבַר	Piel speak (27)	זָהָב	gold (12)
דְּבַר	word, matter, thing (3)	זָכַר	Qal remember, mention; Hiph remind (2)
דְּבַשׁ	honey (35)	זָכָר	male (40)
דּוֹר	period, generation, age (21)	זָקֵן	old, elder (10)
דֶּלֶת	door (38)	זָר	foreigner (40)
דָּם	blood (18)	זְרוּעַ	arm, strength <i>f</i> (15)
דֶּרֶךְ	way, road, journey, custom, conduct (5)	זָרַע	seed, offspring (25)
דָּרַשׁ	Qal seek, inquire (7)		
		ח	
ה		חָדָשׁ	new moon, month (13)
הוּא	he (4)	חוֹמָה	wall (21)
הִיא	she (4)	חָזָה	Qal see, see a vision, perceive (14)
הִיָּה	Qal be, happen (18)	חָזַק	Qal be strong, take courage; Hiph seize, grasp (12)
הַיְכָל	palace, temple (38)	חָזַק	firm, strong (10)
הִלְךְ	Qal walk, go, come (5)	חָטָא	Qal offend, sin (13)
		חַטָּאת	sin, sin offering (23)
		חֹטֵה	wheat (37)

חַי	alive, living (9)	יָדַע	Qal know, care about, choose; Hiph make known (7)
חָיָה	Qal be alive, live (18)	יוֹם	day, time, lifetime, today (when definite) (3)
חֵיל	strength, virtue, ability, wealth (30)	יָטַב	Qal be good, pleasing (17)
חָכָם	wise, skillful, shrewd (9)	יַיִן	wine (35)
חֶלֶב	fat (37)	יָכַח	Hiph rebuke (32)
חָלַל	Piel & Hiph pollute, defile, profane, begin (28)	יָכַל	Qal be able, conquer (16)
חֶמֶה	heat, anger (21)	יָלַד	Qal give birth to; Hiph father (17)
חֲמִשׁ	five <i>f</i> (29)	יָם	sea (18)
חֲמִשָּׁה	five <i>m</i> (29)	יָמִין	right, right hand, south <i>f</i> (34)
חָנָה	Qal camp (21)	יָסַף	Qal & Hiph add, continue, do again (25)
חָנַן	Qal be gracious (39)	יָצָא	Qal go out; Hiph bring out (16)
חֶסֶד	loyalty, faithfulness (20)	יָצַק	Qal pour out, dish up, spread (20)
חָפֵץ	Qal want, desire (23)	יָצַר	Qal form, fashion, create (17)
חֻק	decree, law (23)	יָרָא	Qal fear, be afraid (17)
חֶרֶב	sword <i>f</i> (28)	יָרַד	Qal go down; Hiph bring down (16)
חָרָה	Qal be hot, angry (21)	יָרָה	Qal throw, shoot; Hiph teach (33)
חָרַשׁ	Hiph be silent, silence (31)	יָרַשׁ	Qal inherit; Hiph dispossess (17)
חָשַׁב	Qal think (25)	יֵשׁ	there is (22)
חֹשֶׁךְ	darkness (20)	יָשַׁב	Qal sit, dwell, inhabit; Hiph make sit, settle (7)
חָתַת	Qal be terrified (39)	יָשַׁע	Niph be victorious, receive help; Hiph help, save (32)
ט			
טָהוֹר	clean, pure (9)	יָשָׁר	straight, right, upright (9)
טוֹב	good, pleasing (9)	יָתַר	Niph remain; Hiph leave behind (32)
טָמֵא	Qal be unclean (40)	כ	
טָמֵא	unclean, impure (9)	כִּי	like, as, according to (8)
י			
יָבֵשׁ	Qal be dry, dry up, wither; Hiph cause to dry up (17)	כַּאֲשֶׁר	just as, when (26)
יָד	hand <i>f</i> (3)		
יָדָה	Qal & Piel throw, shoot; Hiph praise, confess (33)		

כָּבֵד	Qal be heavy, dull; Niph have honor, glory, respect; Piel make dull, honor (2)
כְּבוֹד	glory, honor (22)
כֶּבֶשׂ	lamb (39)
כֵּן	thus (19)
כֹּהֵן	priest (5)
כוֹן	Niph stand firm; Hiph prepare, make firm (33)
כִּי	because, that, surely (19)
כִּי־אִם	unless, except (19)
כֹּל	all, every, the whole (12)
כָּלָה	Qal cease, end, waste away, be finished; Piel complete, finish (14)
כֵּלִי	article, implement, utensil, vessel (28)
כַּנָּף	wing, extremity (39)
כִּסֵּא	seat, throne (38)
כָּסָה	Piel conceal, cover (28)
כֶּסֶף	money, silver (12)
כָּעַס	Qal be provoked; Hiph provoke (30)
כַּף	palm, sole (33)
כָּפַר	Piel atone (27)
כַּרְם	vineyard (35)
כָּרַת	Qal cut; Hiph cut off (10)
כָּתַב	Qal write (6)
כַּתֵּף	shoulder, shoulder blade, side <i>f</i> (15)

ל

לֵ	to, toward, for (8)
לֹא	no, not (7)
לֵב	heart, mind, will (7)
לִבָּב	heart, mind, will (7)

לָבַשׁ	Qal clothe, dress, wear; Hiph clothe (26)
לָחַם	Niph fight (35)
לֶחֶם	bread, food (10)
לַיְלָה	night (13)
לָכַד	Qal capture, catch (21)
לָכֵן	therefore (19)
לָמַד	Qal learn; Piel teach (32)
לְמַעַן	in order to, for the sake of (19)
לְפָנַי	before (8)
לָקַח	Qal take, seize, acquire (5)
לְשׁוֹן	tongue, language (33)

מ

מְאֹד	very, abundance, strength (22)
מֵאָה	one hundred (29)
מִגְדָּל	tower (38)
מִגָּן	shield (48)
מִגְרָשׁ	pasture land (37)
מָדַד	Qal measure (39)
מָה	what? (26)
מוֹעֵד	meeting, appointed time (28)
מוֹת	Qal die; Hiph put to death (24)
מִזְבֵּחַ	altar (7)
מַחֲנֶה	camp (31)
מִטָּה	staff, tribe (30)
מִי	who? (26)
מִיַּם	water, waters (10)
מָלֵא	Qal be full; Piel fill (22)
מַלְאָךְ	messenger, angel (22)
מִלְחָמָה	battle, war (3)
מָלַךְ	Qal rule, be king; Hiph make king (10)

מֶלֶךְ	king (3)
מַלְכוּת	kingdom (3)
מִן	from (8)
מִנְחָה	gift, tribute, grain offering (26)
מַעֲשֵׂה	work, product (31)
מָצָא	Qal find (13)
מִצְוָה	commandment (23)
מָקוֹם	place (12)
מָשַׁח	Qal anoint (35)
מִשְׁכָּן	tabernacle, dwelling (41)
מִשְׁפָּחָה	clan, family (6)
מִשְׁפָּט	judgment, decision, custom (7)

נ

נִאֵם	declaration, utterance (32)
נָבֵא	Niph & Hith prophesy (36)
נָבַט	Hiph look (31)
נָבִיא	prophet (6)
נֶגֶב	south, Negeb (37)
נָגַד	Hiph tell, make known
נֶגֶד	in front of, opposite (23)
נָגַע	Qal touch, hurt (14)
נָגַשׁ	Qal approach, step forth (14)
נָדַח	Niph be scattered; Hiph scatter (31)
נָהַר	river (36)
נָוַח	Qal rest; Hiph give rest, settle (33)
נוּס	Qal flee (34)
נַחַל	wadi (36)
נַחֲלָה	inheritance, portion (30)
נְחֹשֶׁת	copper, bronze (36)
נָטָה	Qal reach out, extend (26)

נָכָה	Hiph strike (33)
נָסַע	Qal start out, break camp; Hiph take away, remove (14)
נֶעַר	boy (6)
נָפַל	Qal fall; Hith prostrate oneself (12)
נַפְשׁ	soul, self, emotions f (6)
נָצַל	Hiph deliver (31)
נָשָׂא	Qal lift, carry, pardon, forgive (13)
נָתַן	Qal give, present, put (5)

ס

סָבַב	Qal go around, turn around; Niph encircle; Hiph make go around (39)
סָבִיב	around (23)
סוּס	horse (3)
סוּסָה	mare (4)
סוּר	Qal turn aside; Hiph remove (24)
סָפַר	Qal count, measure, register; Piel report, tell (28)
סֵפֶר	book, document (11)

ע

עָבַד	Qal serve, work, be a slave, worship (12)
עֶבֶד	slave, servant (12)
עָבַר	Qal pass through, go across, transgress; Hiph make pass through, make go across, remove (11)
עַד	until, as far as (20)
עֲדָה	congregation (28)
עוֹד	yet, still (28)
עוֹלָה	burnt offering (26)

עולם	forever, antiquity (6)
עון	sin, guilt, punishment (23)
עזב	Qal abandon, leave, forsake (22)
עין	eye, spring <i>m</i> and <i>f</i> (15)
עיר	city, town <i>f</i> (3)
על	on, upon, on account of, unto, against (8)
עלה	Qal go up; Hiph bring up (16)
על-כן	therefore (25)
עם	with (8)
עם	people (7)
עמד	Qal stand; Hiph cause to stand, station (11)
ענה	Qal answer; Niph be humble, afflicted (25)
עץ	tree, wood (25)
עצם	bone (33)
ערב	evening (13)
עשה	Qal make, do (14)
עשר	ten <i>f</i> (29)
עשרה	ten <i>m</i> (29)
עת	time (13)
עתה	now (21)

פ

פה	mouth (15)
פלל	Hith pray (38)
פן	so that not (19)
פנה	Qal turn (34)
פנים	face, presence <i>m</i> and <i>f</i> (15)
פקד	Qal visit, take care of, commission, call to account; Hiph appoint (11)
פר	bull, steer (17)
פרי	fruit (35)

פתח	Qal open (35)
פתח	doorway, door (38)

צ

צאן	flock, sheep, goats <i>f</i> (17)
צבא	army (18)
צדיק	righteous (27)
צדק	righteousness (27)
צוה	Piel command (27)
צפון	north (34)

ק

קבץ	Qal gather (36)
קבר	Qal bury (37)
קדש	Qal be holy; Piel & Hiph sanctify; Hith sanctify one-self (27)
קדוש	holy, sacred (9)
קדש	holiness, sacredness (11)
קטר	Piel & Hiph burn a sacrifice (37)
קול	voice, sound, noise (11)
קום	Qal arise, stand; Hiph set up, establish (24)
קרא	Qal call, read aloud (13)
קרב	Qal approach (22)
קרב	midst (31)

ר

ראה	Qal see, know; Hiph appear, become visible; Hiph show (14)
ראש	head, first, chief (15)
ראשון	first, former, chief (34)
ראשית	beginning (15)

רָבָה	Qal be much, many, numerous, great; Hiph multiply (26)	שָׁבַר	Qal break (38)
רַב	much, great, many (9)	שַׁבַּת	sabbath (30)
רֶגֶל	foot <i>f</i> (15)	שׁוּב	Qal turn, return (intransitive); Hiph return (transitive) (24)
רָדַף	Qal pursue, persecute (38)	שָׁחַת	Qal destroy (40)
רוּחַ	breath, wind, spirit <i>f</i> (18)	שָׁכַב	Qal lie down, have intercourse with (10)
רוּם	Qal be high, exalted, haughty (24)	שָׁכַח	Qal forget (38)
רוּץ	Qal run (24)	שָׁלוֹם	peace (22)
רֹחַב	width, breadth (34)	שָׁלַח	Qal send, reach out, stretch (2)
רַע	evil, bad (40)	שָׁלַךְ	Hiph throw, reject (30)
רֵעַ	friend (32)	שָׁלַם	Qal complete, stay healthy; Piel repay (40)
רָעָה	evil, trouble (40)	שָׁלֹשׁ	three <i>f</i> (29)
רָעָה	Qal pasture, tend (36)	שָׁלֹשָׁה	three <i>m</i> (29)
רַק	only (28)	שֵׁם	name, reputation (7)
רָשָׁע	guilty, wicked, criminal (9)	שָׁם	there (21)
ש			
שָׂדֵה	field (25)	שָׁמַיִם	sky, heaven, heavens (10)
שָׂים	Qal put, place (24)	שָׁמֶן	oil (35)
שִׂמַח	Qal be glad; Piel make glad (28)	שְׁמֹנֶה	eight <i>f</i> (29)
שִׂנְאָה	Qal hate (20)	שְׁמֹנֶה	eight <i>m</i> (29)
שִׂפָּה	lip, language (33)	שָׁמַע	Qal hear, listen to (5)
שָׂר	leader (30)	שָׁמַר	Qal guard, watch, observe (6)
שָׂרַף	Qal burn (37)	שָׁמֶשׁ	sun (36)
ש			
שָׂאֵל	Qal ask (35)	שָׁנָה	year (11)
שָׂאַר	Qal remain; Hiph leave as a remnant (30)	שְׁנַיִם	two <i>m</i> (29)
שָׁבַע	Niph swear an oath; Hiph make swear an oath (30)	שַׁעַר	gate (30)
שָׁבַע	seven <i>f</i> (29)	שָׁפַט	Qal judge, decide, punish (6)
שָׁבַע	seven <i>m</i> (29)	שָׁפַךְ	Qal pour out, shed (20)
		שָׂרַת	Piel serve, minister (37)
		שֵׁשׁ	six <i>f</i> (29)
		שֵׁשָׁה	six <i>m</i> (29)
		שָׁתָה	Qal drink (22)

שְׁתַּיִם two *f* (29)

תַּחַת under (8)

תֵּשַׁע nine *f* (29)

תֵּשַׁעַה nine *m* (29)

ת

תּוֹרָה teaching, law, instruction
(11)

ANSWERS TO PRACTICE DRILLS

Lesson 1

A. Memorize the names and letters of the alphabet so well that you can write them out as fast as you can say and write your ABCs!

B. Make the sound and say the name of the following letters, reading from right to left.

נ ת כ י ם ג מ צ ף א ע פ ל ח ד ←

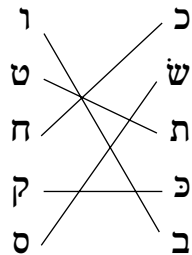
ש ץ ז ב ן ש ט ך פ ק ר ה ס ו ב ←

C. Read the two previous lines again and circle the letters in a special final form.

D. Read the two previous lines again and underline the gutturals + *resh*.

E. Read the two previous lines again and draw a box around the *begadkefats*.

F. Match the letters that sound alike.



Lesson 2

A. Focus on the sounds of the vowels. The following are not Hebrew words, but they sound like English words. Pronounce the Hebrew word, then write the English word that sounds the same.

- | | | | | |
|---------|----------|------------|----------|------------|
| 1. fall | 7. feel | 13. fought | 19. bell | 25. boot |
| 2. fall | 8. feel | 14. fought | 20. bed | 26. boot |
| 3. fall | 9. foam | 15. ball | 21. bead | 27. bought |
| 4. fail | 10. foam | 16. ball | 22. bead | 28. bought |
| 5. fell | 11. food | 17. ball | 23. boat | 29. bet |
| 6. fell | 12. food | 18. bail | 24. boat | 30. beat |

B. Focus on the class of the vowels. Memorize the vertical columns on the chart on p. 8 before doing this exercise.

- Circle the “a” vowels: א י א א א
- Circle the “i” vowels: א א א א א א א
- Circle the “u” vowels: א א א א א א א

C. Focus on the length of the vowels. Memorize the horizontal rows on the chart on p. 8 before doing this exercise.

- Circle the long vowels: א א א א א א א
- Circle the medium vowels: א א א א א א א
- Circle the short vowels: א א א א א א א
- Circle the very short vowels: א א א א א א א

D. Focus on letters with two pronunciations. The following are not Hebrew words, but they sound like English words. Pronounce the Hebrew word, then write the English word that sounds the same.

- | | | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|----------|
| 1. bet | 3. pool | 5. balk | 7. base | 9. pace |
| 2. vet | 4. fool | 6. Bach | 8. vase | 10. face |

E. Focus on letters that look alike. The following are not Hebrew words, but they sound like English words. Pronounce the Hebrew word, then write the English word that sounds the same.

- | | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|-----------|----------|
| 1. case | 4. read | 7. tall | 10. car | 13. paw |
| 2. base | 5. red | 8. veal | 11. loom | 14. pots |
| 3. deed | 6. hall | 9. zeal | 12. loose | 15. zoom |

F. Focus on letters that sound alike. The following are not Hebrew words, but they sound like English words. Pronounce the Hebrew word, then write the English word that sounds the same.

- | | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|--------|----------|
| 1. vase | 3. Bach | 5. tall | 7. car | 9. same |
| 2. vase | 4. Bach | 6. tall | 8. car | 10. same |

G. The following are not Hebrew words, but they sound like English words. Pronounce the Hebrew word, then write the English word that sounds the same.

- | | | | | |
|---------|----------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| 1. game | 7. sane | 13. zoo | 19. see/a | 25. soul |
| 2. rain | 8. hen | 14. you | 20. oats | 26. need |
| 3. ball | 9. egg | 15. nod | 21. vet | 27. near |
| 4. safe | 10. she | 16. bake | 22. lean | 28. roof |
| 5. key | 11. row | 17. cake | 23. aim | 29. gate |
| 6. note | 12. vote | 18. see/a | 24. aim | 30. cots |

Lesson 3

A. Focus on *sheva*. Identify each *sheva* as vocal or silent and give the reason.

- Silent, preceded by short vowel
- Silent, preceded by short vowel
- Silent, preceded by short vowel
- Silent, preceded by short vowel
- Silent, preceded by short vowel
- Vocal, not preceded by short vowel
- Vocal, not preceded by short vowel
- Vocal, not preceded by short vowel
- First is silent, preceded by short vowel; second is vocal, not preceded by short vowel
- Vocal, not preceded by short vowel
- Vocal, not preceded by short vowel
- Silent, preceded by short vowel
- Silent, preceded by short vowel
- Vocal, not preceded by short vowel
- Both are vocal, not preceded by short vowel

B. Focus on *dagesh*. Identify each *dagesh* as weak or strong and give the reason.

- Weak, preceded by consonant
- Strong, preceded by vowel
- Strong, preceded by vowel
- Weak, preceded by consonant
- Weak, preceded by consonant
- Strong, preceded by vowel
- Strong, preceded by vowel
- Weak, preceded by consonant
- Weak, preceded by consonant

B. Focus on number. Read the Following Hebrew words; circle the singular words, underline the plural words, and draw a box around the dual words.

1. אֱלֹהִים (דָּבָר) אֱלֹהִים (מְלָכוֹת) אָבוֹת (בֵּת) בֵּן מְלַחְמוֹת

2. מְזַבְּחוֹת עוֹלָמִים עֵינַיִם (מְשַׁפְּחָת) אֲרָצוֹת (אֲמַת) טוֹבִים

C. Focus on number and gender. Read the following Hebrew words and circle the word that is out of place in terms of number or gender.

1. יוֹם מְלָךְ (מְלָכוֹת) 2. אֱלִים (סוֹסוֹת) טוֹבִים

3. סוֹס דָּבָר (אֱלִים) 4. בֵּת (אָב) אֵם

5. יָדִים מִים (יָמִים) 6. אֲרָץ (מְלָךְ) דָּרָךְ

D. Focus on sheva. Identify each *sheva* as vocal or silent, and give the reason.

1. Vocal, not preceded by short vowel
2. Silent, preceded by short vowel
3. First is silent, preceded by short vowel; second is vocal, not preceded by short vowel
4. Silent, preceded by short vowel
5. Silent, preceded by short vowel

E. Focus on dagesh. Identify each *dagesh* as weak or strong, and give the reason.

1. Strong, preceded by vowel
2. Strong, preceded by vowel
3. Weak, preceded by consonant
4. Strong, preceded by vowel
5. Weak, preceded by consonant

F. Focus on pronunciation. Read the following English words, written in Hebrew.

1. moon
2. garden
3. severe
4. also
5. better

G. Focus on meaning. Circle the word that does not belong in terms of meaning.

1. יוֹם (מְלָךְ מְלָכוֹת)
2. אֵל (אֵם) אֱלֹהִים
3. יָד (אָח אָחוֹת)
4. בֵּת (אָב עֵיר)
5. בֵּן (אֲרָץ בֵּת)
6. אֲבֵל (מְלָךְ מְלַחְמָה)

H. The following is Gen 1:1-3.

1. בְּרֵאשִׁית בָּרָא (אֱלֹהִים) אֶת (הַשָּׁמַיִם) וְאֶת הָאָרֶץ

2. וְהָאָרֶץ הָיְתָה תְּהוֹ וְבָהוּ וְחֹשֶׁךְ עַל פְּנֵי תְּהוֹם

וְרוּחַ אֱלֹהִים מְרַחֶפֶת עַל פְּנֵי הַמַּיִם

3. וַיֹּאמֶר אֱלֹהִים יְהִי אוֹר וַיְהִי אוֹר

Lesson 5

A. Focus on the personal pronoun. Translate the following Hebrew sentences.

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. He is a father. | 5. You are a mother. | 9. They are mares. |
| 2. You are a father. | 6. I am a mother. | 10. You are God/a god. |
| 3. I am a father. | 7. It is a horse. | 11. You are gods. |
| 4. She is a mother. | 8. They are horses. | 12. We are gods. |

B. Focus on the definite article. Translate the following Hebrew words, paying attention to the presence or absence of the definite article.

- | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. a day | 6. a daughter | 11. a sister |
| 2. the day | 7. the king | 12. a city |
| 3. God/gods | 8. a king | 13. the city |
| 4. (the) God | 9. hand | 14. the word |
| 5. the daughter | 10. the hand | 15. a word |

C. Focus on letters that sound alike. Circle the letters that sound alike.

1. (ב) (כ) (ו) .2. (ס) (ש) (ש) .3. (ט) (ת) (ה) .4. (כ) (כ) (ק) .5. (צ) (ח) (כ)

D. Focus on gutturals and resh. Circle the gutturals or *resh*.

1. (ד) (ר) (ך) .2. (ע) (צ) (ט) .3. (ה) (ת) (ב) .4. (מ) (א) (ג) .5. (ל) (ח) (ו)

E. Focus on gender and number. Identify the gender and number of the following.

1. *ms* 2. *fs* 3. *fp* 4. *mp* 5. *fs*

F. Translate the following.

- | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. I am a father. | 5. They are mares. | 9. He sent. |
| 2. I am the father. | 6. He remembered. | 10. You are gods. |
| 3. You are the king. | 7. It is the earth. | 11. He gave. |
| 4. It is the battle. | 8. You are the daughter. | 12. It/he is heavy. |

G. The following is 2 Samuel 7:1-2.

1. וַיְהִי כִּי יָשָׁב הַמֶּלֶךְ בְּבֵיתוֹ
וַיִּהְיֶה הַנִּיחַ לוֹ מִסָּבִיב מִכָּל אִבָּיו
2. וַיֹּאמֶר הַמֶּלֶךְ אֶל נָתָן הַנָּבִיא
רְאֵה נָא אֲנֹכִי יוֹשֵׁב בְּבֵית אֲרָזִים
וְאֶרְוֹן הַאֲלֵהִים יֹשֵׁב בְּתוֹךְ הַיְרִיעָה

Lesson 6

A. Focus on roots. Write the Hebrew root of the following.

1. אדם .2 אכל .3 ארץ .4 דבר .5 דרך
6. מלך .7 מלך .8 שפח .9 לחם .10 שלח

B. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. שָׁלַח	qal	pf	3	m	s	שִׁלַּח
2. לָקַחְהָ	qal	pf	3	f	s	לָקַח
3. הִלְכָהּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	הִלַּךְ
4. זָכַרְתָּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	זָכַר
5. שָׁמַעְנוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	שָׁמַע
6. כָּתַבְתִּי	qal	pf	1	c	s	כָּתַב
7. בָּטַחְתְּךָ	qal	pf	2	f	p	בָּטַח
8. אָכְלוּ	qal	pf	3	c	p	אָכַל
9. קָטַלְתְּ	qal	pf	2	f	s	קָטַל
10. קָטַל	qal	pf	3	m	s	קָטַל

E. The following is Psalm 1:1.

1. אֲשֶׁרִי הָאִישׁ אֲשֶׁר
 לֹא הִלְךְ בְּעֵצַת רְשָׁעִים
 וּבְדֶרֶךְ חַטָּאִים לֹא עָמַד
 וּבְמוֹשָׁב לְצִים לֹא יָשָׁב

Lesson 7

E. Focus on parsing. Parse the following Hebrew verbs.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. נִתְּנָה	qal	pf	3	f	s	נתן
2. כָּתְבוּ	qal	pf	3	c	p	כתב
3. שָׁמְרֶתֶם	qal	pf	2	m	p	שמר
4. שָׁפַטְנוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	שפט
5. אָכַלְתָּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	אכל
6. זָכַרְתִּי	qal	pf	1	c	s	זכר
7. כָּבְדוּ	qal	pf	3	m	s	כבד

F. Focus on the class of the vowels. Review the vertical columns on the chart on p. 8 before doing this exercise.

- Circle the “a” vowels: א אָ אַ אֲ אִ אֵ אֶ אֹ אֻ אֱ
- Circle the “i” vowels: י יָ יַ יֵ יִ יֵ יֶ יֹ יֻ יֱ
- Circle the “u” vowels: ו וָ וַ וֵ וִ וֵ וֶ וֹ וֻ וֱ

G. Focus on the length of the vowels. Review the horizontal rows on the chart on p. 8 before doing this exercise.

- Circle the long vowels: אָ אַ אֵ אִ אֶ אֹ אֻ אֱ
- Circle the medium vowels: אֵ אִ אֶ אֹ אֻ אֱ
- Circle the short vowels: אֵ אִ אֶ אֹ אֻ אֱ
- Circle the very short vowels: אֵ אִ אֶ אֹ אֻ אֱ

I. The following are from Genesis 1:1, 4, 27.

בְּרֵאשִׁית בָּרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת הַשָּׁמַיִם אֶת הָאָרֶץ 1
 וַיִּבְרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת-הָאֹר כִּי-טוֹב 4
 וַיִּבְרָא אֱלֹהִים אֶת-הָאָדָם בְּצַלְמוֹ 27

Lesson 8

A. Focus on the accent. Circle the accented syllable.

1. אָדָם 2. יָשַׁב 3. מָלַךְ 4. מְלָכִים 5. תָּבֵן
6. כָּתְבוּ 7. נָפֵשׁ 8. זָבַח 9. עוֹלָם 10. נָעַר

B. Focus on the syllable. Circle the closed syllables and underline the open syllables.

1. אָדָם 2. מְלָכֹת 3. מָלַךְ 4. מְלָכִים 5. עוֹלָם
6. מְשֻׁפֵּט 7. נָפֵשׁ 8. מְלֻחָמָה 9. יוֹם 10. נָעַר

C. Focus on vowel changes in the plural. Match the plural form of the right column with the corresponding singular form in the left column.

- | | | |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------|
| a. דָּבָר | h. נָעַר | 1. נְעָרִים |
| b. לֵבָב | i. נְבִיא | 2. מְלָכִים |
| c. נְבִיא | j. דָּרָךְ | 3. מְשֻׁפָּטִים |
| d. עוֹלָם | k. מְזַבַּח | 4. דְּבָרִים |
| e. דָּרָךְ | l. אֶרְצוֹת | 5. זְבָחִים |
| f. מָלַךְ | 1. אֶרְצוֹת | 6. לְכַבּוֹת |
| g. נָפֵשׁ | 2. עוֹלָמִים | 7. דְּרָכִים |
| h. נָעַר | 3. נְפֻשׁוֹת | 8. נְבִיאִים |
| i. מְשֻׁפָּט | 4. מְזַבְּחוֹת | 9. אֶרְצוֹת |
| j. זָבַח | 5. אֶרֶץ | 10. עוֹלָמִים |
| k. מְזַבַּח | 6. אֶרֶץ | 11. נְפֻשׁוֹת |
| l. אֶרֶץ | 7. אֶרֶץ | 12. מְזַבְּחוֹת |

D. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כָּבַד	qal	pf	3	m	s	כבד
2. הִלְכָתִי	qal	pf	1	c	s	הלך
3. יִשְׁבֶּתָּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	ישב

4. לְקַחְתֶּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	לקח
5. שָׁמְעוּ	qal	pf	3	c	p	שמע
6. שָׁמְעָה	qal	pf	3	f	s	שמע
7. אָכַלְנוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	אכל

F. The following is 1 Kings 1:11.

וַיֹּאמֶר נָתָן אֶל־בַּת־שֶׁבַע אִם־שָׁלְמָה לַיֹּאמֵר
הֲלוֹא שָׁמְעַתְּ כִּי מָלַךְ אֲדֹנָיְהוּ בֶן־חַגִּית
וְאֲדֹנָיְנוּ דָוִד לֹא־יָדַע

Lesson 9

A. **Focus on prepositions.** Translate the following prepositional phrases.

- | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. to an altar | 8. like the altar | 15. from a city |
| 2. within an altar | 9. to an altar | 16. in a city |
| 3. on an altar | 10. to the altar | 17. to a city |
| 4. before an altar | 11. in the altar | 18. to the city |
| 5. under an altar | 12. in an altar | 19. like a land |
| 6. with an altar | 13. from the altar | 20. like the land |
| 7. like an altar | 14. from an altar | |

B. **Focus on vav conjunction.** Translate the following.

- | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. you and he | 4. heart and soul | 7. son and daughter |
| 2. altar and sacrifice | 5. a city and a house | 8. they and we |
| 3. priest and prophet | 6. a priest and a king | |

D. **Focus on gender.** Read the following Hebrew words; circle the masculine words and underline the feminine words.

1. (סוֹס) סוֹסָה (סוֹסִים) סוֹסוֹת (בְּגָד) אַחוֹת מְלַחְמָה מְשַׁפָּחָה (מְשַׁפֵּט)
2. אִם אַרְצוֹת אֶרֶץ (זָבַח) נָעַר נִפְשׁוֹת נִפְשׁ אִשָּׁה נְשִׁים (בֵּית)

E. **Focus on number.** Read the following Hebrew words; circle the singular words and underline the plural words.

1. (סוֹס) סוֹסָה (סוֹסִים) סוֹסוֹת בְּגָדִים (אַחוֹת) מְלַחְמוֹת אָבוֹת (עוֹלָם)
2. אַתֶּם אִתָּה (אִתְּ) הֵם הִנֵּה (מְלָכוֹת) מְשַׁפְּטִים (כֹּהֵן) יוֹם אַרְצוֹת (שֵׁם)

F. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. זָבַחוּ	qal	pf	3	c	p	זבח
2. שָׁפְטָנוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	שפט
3. הִלַּכְתָּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	הלך
4. כָּבַדְתִּי	qal	pf	1	c	s	כבד
5. זָכְרָהּ	qal	pf	3	f	s	זכר
6. כָּתַבְתֶּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	כתב

H. Translate the following verses from the Hebrew Bible.

Joshua 2:5	I do not know where the men went.	.1
Judges 21:22	We did not take a man.	.2
1 Samuel 4:18	And he judged Israel.	.3
Jeremiah 34:17	You did not hear.	.4

Lesson 10

A. **Focus on attributive adjectives.** Translate the following phrases.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a great king | 5. the straight way | 9. a wicked judgment |
| 2. many boys | 6. the many wars | 10. the holy priests |
| 3. a good family | 7. the clean earth | 11. a pure heart |
| 4. living souls | 8. a wise mother | 12. the good cities |

B. **Focus on predicative adjectives.** Translate the following sentences.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. the altar is unclean | 4. the sacrifices are holy | 7. the word is alive |
| 2. the daughter is wise | 5. the boys are wicked | 8. the house is big |
| 3. the women are many | 6. the days are good | |

C. Focus on the difference between attributive and predicate adjectives. Read the following phrases and sentences and fill in the blanks for use of adjective (*a* for attributive and *p* for predicative) and for gender and number.

Use	Gender	Number		
a	f	s	.1	הָאִשָּׁה הַטּוֹבָה
p	m	s	.2	יְשֵׁר הָאָדָם
a	m	s	.3	הַמְזֻבָּח הַטָּהוֹר
a	f	s	.4	הַבַּת הַטּוֹבָה
p	m	p	.5	טְמֵאִים הָאֱלִים
a	m	p	.6	הָאֱלֹהִים הַחַיִּים
p	m	p	.7	גְּדוֹלִים הַבְּגָדִים
p	f	s	.8	רְשָׁעָה הַמְּלָכוֹת
a	m	s	.9	לֵב חָכָם
a	f	p	.10	הָאֲרָצוֹת הַרְּבוֹת

D. Focus on vowel changes in the plural. Match the plural form of the right column with the corresponding singular form in the left column.

אִשָּׁה .a	d.	בְּגָדִים .1
לֵבָב .b	h.	אֱלִים .2
בֵּין .c	k.	עַמִּים .3
בְּגָד .d	i.	לְבוֹת .4
מְזֻבָּח .e	b.	לְבָבוֹת .5
נְבִיא .f	l.	אֲנָשִׁים .6
עִיר .g	c.	בָּנִים .7
אֵל .h	f.	נְבִיאִים .8
לֵב .i	e.	מְזֻבָּחוֹת .9
אֵם .j	g.	עָרִים .10
עַם .k	j.	אֲמוֹת .11
אִישׁ .l	a.	נָשִׁים .12

B. Focus on the use of the imperfect. Translate the following imperfect forms as future imperfects.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. he will remember | 6. you will seek | 11. he will sacrifice |
| 2. I will reign | 7. they will lie down | 12. we will reign |
| 3. you will guard | 8. they/you will hear | 13. I will trust |
| 4. we will judge | 9. he will cut | 14. they will guard |
| 5. she/you will trust | 10. they will write | 15. she/you will hear |

D. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כָּרַתוּ	qal	pf	3	c	p	כרת
2. שָׁכַבְתִּי	qal	pf	1	c	s	שכב
3. מָלַכְתָּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	מלך
4. זָבַחְנוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	זבח
5. יָדַעְתֶּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	ידע
6. יָשַׁבְתָּ	qal	pf	2	f	s	ישב
7. דָּרְשָׂה	qal	pf	3	f	s	דרש
8. כָּבַד	qal	pf	3	m	s	כבד
9. בָּטַחְתָּן	qal	pf	2	f	p	בטח

E. Focus on the syllable. Underline the closed syllables and circle the open pretonic syllables.

1. גָּדוֹל 2. מְלָכוֹת 3. קְדוּשָׁה 4. מְלָכִים 5. עוֹלָם
 6. חֲכָמִים 7. יְשׁוּרוֹת 8. רְשָׁעָה 9. טוֹבִים 10. נֶעַר

G. Translate the following lines from the Hebrew Bible.

- | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|----|
| Psalm 146:10 | The LORD will reign forever. | .1 |
| Ecclesiastes 3:17 | And he will judge the wicked. | .2 |
| Deuteronomy 17:1 | You will not sacrifice to the LORD. | .3 |

Lesson 12

A. **Focus on the form of the construct.** Circle the words that are in a construct form that differs from the absolute form.

1. סוּס עַם נֶפֶשׁ דְּבַר בֶּן סֵפֶר נְבִיא עִיר תּוֹרַת סוּסַת
 2. קוֹל לֵבב קֹדֶשׁ מְשַׁפֵּט מְלַחֶמֶת יָד בֵּית מְלָכוֹת שֵׁם

B. **Focus on the form of the construct.** Match the construct form of the right-hand column with the corresponding absolute form of the left-hand column.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|----|----|-------------|-----|
| מְשַׁפָּחָה | .a | g. | דְּבַר | .1 |
| שֵׁם | .b | c. | שְׁנַת | .2 |
| שָׁנָה | .c | i. | לֵבב | .3 |
| יָד | .d | f. | נְבִיא | .4 |
| מְשַׁפֵּט | .e | b. | שֵׁם | .5 |
| נְבִיא | .f | a. | מְשַׁפַּחַת | .6 |
| דְּבַר | .g | j. | בֶּן | .7 |
| תּוֹרָה | .h | e. | מְשַׁפֵּט | .8 |
| לֵבב | .i | d. | יָד | .9 |
| בֶּן | .j | h. | תּוֹרַת | .10 |

C. **Focus on the use of the construct.** Translate the following phrases and indicate whether the use is possession (*p*) or adjectival (*a*).

the heart of the prophet	p	1.	לֵבב הַנְּבִיא
the king's law	p	2.	תּוֹרַת הַמֶּלֶךְ
a holy garment	a	3.	בְּגָד־קֹדֶשׁ
the prophet's word	p	4.	דְּבַר הַנְּבִיא
the prophet of the land	p	5.	נְבִיא הָאָרֶץ
the daily sacrifice	a	6.	זְבַח־הַיּוֹם
the boy's hand	p	7.	יָד הַנֶּעַר
the mother's family	p	8.	מְשַׁפַּחַת הָאֵם
the LORD's battle	p	9.	מְלַחֶמֶת־יְהוָה
the man of God	p	10.	אִישׁ הָאֱלֹהִים

Lesson 13

A. Focus on the form of the construct. Circle the words that are in construct form that is different from the absolute form.

1. סוּסִים (עָמִי) נַפְשׁוֹת (דְּבָרִים) בְּנֵי (סַפְרֵי) נְבִיאִים (מִשְׁפָּחוֹת)

2. קוֹלוֹת לְבָבוֹת (דְּרָכֵי) זְקֵנֵי (מִלְחָמוֹת) סוּסוֹת בְּגָדִים מְזַבְחוֹת

B. Focus on the form of the construct. Match the construct form in the right column with the corresponding absolute form in the left column.

- | | | |
|----------------|----|-----------------|
| מָקוֹם .a | f. | דְּבָרֵי .1 |
| מִשְׁפָּחָה .b | h. | מַלְכֵי .2 |
| זָבַח .c | e. | יְדוֹת .3 |
| דֶּרֶךְ .d | a. | מְקוֹמוֹת .4 |
| יָד .e | c. | זְבָחֵי .5 |
| דְּבָר .f | b. | מִשְׁפָּחוֹת .6 |
| מִלְחָמָה .g | i. | עָמִי .7 |
| מִלְךְ .h | d. | דְּרָכֵי .8 |
| עַם .i | g. | מִלְחָמוֹת .9 |

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. גָּאַלְתִּי	qal	pf	1	c	s	גאל
2. יִפְקְדוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	פקד
3. אָמְרוּ	qal	pf	3	c	p	אמר
4. נִשְׁכַּב	qal	impf	1	c	p	שכב
5. מְלַכְנוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	מלך
6. יִדְעֵתֶם	qal	pf	2	m	p	ידע
7. אֲזַבַּח	qal	impf	1	c	s	זבח
8. תִּבְטְחִי	qal	impf	2	f	s	בטח
9. תִּכְתְּבוּ	qal	impf	2	m	p	כתב
10. שְׁמְרָה	qal	pf	3	f	s	שמר

F. Focus on the inseparable prepositions. Circle the words that have an inseparable preposition with the definite article.

1. כְּסוּסִים (כְּסוּסִים) בְּדָבָרִים לְבָנִים בְּסִפְרִים (לְנִבִיא) כְּמִשְׁפָּחָה
 2. בְּקוֹל (לְלֵב) בְּדֶרֶךְ לְזִקְנִים כְּמִלְחָמוֹת (כְּסוּסוֹת) בְּבָגְדִים (לְמִזְבְּחוֹת)

H. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- Numbers 11:16 They are the elders of the people. .1
 Deuteronomy 13:4 You shall not listen to the words of the prophet. .2
 Psalm 18:22 I guarded/kept the ways of the LORD. .3
 Leviticus 16:4 They are holy garments. .4

Lesson 14

A. Focus on weak roots. Before doing this exercise, go back and review the paradigms in Lessons 6 and 11. Underline the verbs below that vary from the standard paradigm and circle the point(s) at which the variance occurs.

1. עִבְרֹתֶם חֻזְקֹתֶם עֲבָדָה גְּאֻלָּה נִשְׂאָה מִצָּא עֲמַדְתֶּם מִצְאָתִי
 2. יַעֲבֹר יְגַאֲלוּ תַעֲמְדוּ תִקְרָא יִכְרָא נַעֲבֹד תִּמְצָא
 3. נִשְׂאוּ אַעֲמֹד גְּאֻלוּ מִצְאָתֶם תַּעֲבְדוּ חֻזְקָה חֻזְקֹתֶם

B. Focus on weak roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. חָטָא	qal	pf	3	m	s	חטא
2. עִבְרֹתֶם	qal	pf	2	m	p	עבר
3. נַעֲמֹד	qal	impf	1	c	p	עמד
4. תִּמְצָא	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	מצא
5. חִטְּאתֶם	qal	pf	2	m	p	חטא
6. יַעֲבְדוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	עבד
7. גְּאֻלָּה	qal	pf	3	f	s	גאל
8. אִמְרֹתֶם	qal	pf	2	m	p	אמר

C. Focus on the construct state. Translate the following construct forms.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. prophet of | 5. word of | 9. ways of | 13. mare of |
| 2. judgment of | 6. law of | 10. sacrifices of | 14. battles of |
| 3. kings of | 7. family of | 11. families of | 15. servants of |
| 4. years of | 8. son of | 12. gold of | 16. souls of |

D. Focus on the form of the construct. Match the construct form of the right column with the corresponding absolute singular form of the left column.

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-----|
| a. סוּסָה | e. תּוֹרַת | .1 |
| b. מְשַׁפָּחָה | j. יְדוֹת | .2 |
| c. יִשָּׂר | d. כְּסָפִי | .3 |
| d. כְּסָף | b. מְשַׁפְּחוֹת | .4 |
| e. תּוֹרָה | g. אֲנָשִׁי | .5 |
| f. מְלַחְמָה | c. יִשְׂרָי | .6 |
| g. אִישׁ | i. עַמִּי | .7 |
| h. זָקָן | f. מְלַחְמֹת | .8 |
| i. עַם | a. סוּסֹת | .9 |
| j. יָד | h. זָקְנֵי | .10 |

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יִזְבַּח	qal	impf	3	m	s	זבח
2. שָׁלַח	qal	pf	3	c	p	שלח
3. נִשְׂאָנוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	נשא
4. יַעֲבֹדוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	עבד
5. הִלַּכְתֶּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	הלך
6. מְלַכְתָּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	מלך
7. נִשְׁפֹּט	qal	impf	1	c	p	שפט
8. אָעָמַד	qal	impf	1	c	s	עמד
9. תִּמְצָא	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	מצא
10. תִּקְטְלֶנָּה	qal	impf	3 / 2	f	p	קטל

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- Ezekiel 44:24 They will stand for judgment. .1
 1 Samuel 28:20 He did not eat . . . all day and all night. .2
 Genesis 1:1 God created the heavens and the earth. .3

Lesson 15**A. Focus on weak roots.** Before doing this exercise, go back and review the paradigms in Lessons 6 and 11. Underline the verbs that vary from the standard paradigm and circle the point(s) at which the variation occurs.

- .1 בָּנָה גָּלִיתִי נִפְלְנוּ עָשׂוּ שָׁלַחְתִּי חִזִּיתֶם נָגַע
 .2 יָפַל יִשְׁפָּטוּ יִבְנֶה תִּגְשׁוּ נָסַע תִּמְלֹכִי תִּכְלִי
 .3 בְּנִתָּה תִּפְלְנָה יִבְנוּ עֲשִׂיתֶם נִסְעָה תִּכְלֶה

B. Focus on weak roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יָפַל	qal	impf	3	m	s	נפל
2. כָּלְתָה	qal	pf	3	f	s	כלה
3. תַּעֲשֶׂה	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	עשה
4. נִגַּשׁ	qal	impf	1	c	p	נגש
5. חִזִּיתֶם	qal	pf	2	m	p	חזה
6. בָּנִינוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	בנה
7. תִּגְעִי	qal	impf	2	f	s	נגע
8. רָאִיתָ	qal	pf	2	m	s	ראה

C. Focus on the construct state. Translate the following construct forms.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. place of | 5. monies of | 9. gold of | 13. hand of |
| 2. mare of | 6. battle of | 10. family of | 14. ways of |
| 3. sacrifices of | 7. word of | 11. families of | 15. judgments of |
| 4. souls of | 8. law of | 12. books of | 16. men of |

D. Focus on the form of the construct. Match the construct form of the right column with the corresponding absolute singular form of the left column.

זָהָב .a	h.	נָבִיא .1
מְשֹׁפֵט .b	d.	דְּבָרִי .2
סוּסָה .c	j.	תּוֹרַת .3
דָּבָר .d	e.	נִפְשׁוֹת .4
נִפְשׁ .e	i.	אֲנָשִׁי .5
רַב .f	b.	מְשֹׁפֵט .6
שָׁנָה .g	f.	רַבִּי .7
נָבִיא .h	c.	סוּסַת .8
אִישׁ .i	a.	זָהָב .9
תּוֹרָה .j	g.	שָׁנַת .10

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יִשְׁלַחוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	שלה
2. עָבְרָנוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	עבר
3. גָּאֲלָהָ	qal	pf	3	f	s	גאל
4. אֶקַח	qal	impf	1	c	s	לקח
5. כָּלִיתִי	qal	pf	1	c	s	כלה
6. תִּמְצָא	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	מצא
7. נִמְלֶךְ	qal	impf	1	c	p	מלך
8. כָּבַד	qal	pf	3	m	s	כבד
9. יִפְלוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	נפל
10. מְצָאָתָּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	מצא

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- Exodus 20:23 Gods of silver . . . you shall not make. .1
 Numbers 4:15 And they shall not touch the holy things. .2
 Leviticus 10:17 You did not eat . . . in the holy place. .3
 Psalm 78:10 They did not keep God's covenant. .4

Lesson 16

A. Focus on words with possessive suffixes. Match the form with the possessive suffix in the right column with the corresponding absolute singular form in the left column.

אָדוֹן .a	f.	קוֹלִי .1
סוּסָה .b	c.	תּוֹרְתֶךָ .2
תּוֹרָה .c	a.	אָדוֹנִינוּ .3
סֵפֶר .d	i.	כְּסָפְכֶם .4
בְּקָר .e	g.	לְבָה .5
קוֹל .f	d.	סִפְרוּ .6
לֵב .g	j.	אֲשֵׁתִי .7
שָׁנָה .h	b.	סוּסְתֶךָ .8
כֶּסֶף .i	e.	בְּקָרְךָ .9
אִשָּׁה .j	h.	שָׁנָתוֹ .10

B. Focus on words with possessive suffixes. Translate the following words with possessive suffixes.

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. his horse | 5. your horse | 9. our king | 13. your gold |
| 2. your horse | 6. my horse | 10. your soul | 14. her house |
| 3. our horse | 7. your horse | 11. their holiness | 15. your garment |
| 4. their horse | 8. her horse | 12. his word | 16. my people |

D. Focus on the personal pronouns. Translate the personal pronouns, then identify the person, gender, and number.

3fp	they	1. הֵנָּה
2ms	you	2. אַתָּה
1cs	I	3. אֲנִי
3fs	she	4. הִיא
1cp	we	5. אֲנַחְנוּ
2mp	you	6. אַתֶּם
3ms	he	7. הוּא
2fs	you	8. אַתְּ
3mp	they	9. הֵם
1cs	I	10. אֲנֹכִי

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הִלְכֶתֶם	qal	pf	2	m	p	הלך
2. אָגַלְהָ	qal	impf	1	c	s	גלה
3. נִמְצָא	qal	impf	1	c	p	מצא
4. עָשִׂיתִי	qal	pf	1	c	s	עשה
5. יַעֲבֹדוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	עבד
6. יִגַּשׁ	qal	impf	3	m	s	נגש
7. חָטְאָה	qal	pf	2	m	s	חטא
8. גָּאֲלָהָ	qal	pf	3	f	s	גאל
9. עָבְרָתָן	qal	pf	2	f	p	עבר
10. תִּשָּׂא	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	נשא

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

2 Samuel 7:20 And you know your servant. .1

Isaiah 42:24 And they did not obey his law. .2

Joshua 24:15 And I and my house, we will serve the LORD. .3

Lesson 17

A. **Focus on attributive demonstrative pronouns.** Translate the following phrases.

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. this mouth | 5. that daughter | 9. this bread |
| 2. this family | 6. those servants | 10. these battles |
| 3. these enemies | 7. this law | 11. those good men |
| 4. that head | 8. that son | 12. that unclean foot |

B. **Focus on predicate demonstrative pronouns.** Translate the following sentences.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. This is the house. | 4. That is the way. | 7. This is the land. |
| 2. This is the woman. | 5. That is the kingdom. | 8. These are the women. |
| 3. These are the words. | 6. Those are the books. | 9. This is the king. |

C. Focus on the difference between the attributive and predicate demonstrative pronouns. Read the following lines, then indicate the use (*a* for attributive or *p* for predicate), gender, and number.

Use	Gender	Number	
a	f	s	.1 האִשָּׁה הַזֹּאת
p	m	s	.2 זֶה הָאָדָם
a	m	s	.3 הַמְזִבְחַ הַזֶּה
a	f	s	.4 הַבַּת הַהִיא
p	c	p	.5 אֱלֹהֵי הָאֱלִים
a	m	p	.6 הַבְּגָדִים הָהֵם
a	m	s	.7 הָרֹאשׁ הַזֶּה
p	f	s	.8 זֹאת הַמְּלָכּוֹת
a	m	s	.9 הָאֵהָל הַהוּא
a	c	p	.10 הָאֲרָצוֹת הָאֵלֶּה

D. Focus on the relative pronoun. Translate the following.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. the king who reigned | 6. the gold that he took |
| 2. the woman who sent | 7. sacrifices that are on an altar |
| 3. the prophets who said | 8. the bread that he ate |
| 4. the silver that is in the house | 9. sons who went out |
| 5. places where he lived | |

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. שָׁמַרְתָּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	שׁמַר
2. בָּנִיתִי	qal	pf	1	c	s	בָּנָה
3. יָפַל	qal	impf	3	m	s	נָפַל
4. תִּעְלֶה	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	עָלָה
5. יִגְעוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	נָגַע
6. כָּלִינוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	כָּלָה
7. חִטַּאתֶם	qal	pf	2	m	p	חָטָא

8.	אָגְלָה	qal	impf	1	c	s	גלה
9.	יִשָּׂא	qal	impf	3	m	s	נשא
10.	גָּאֵלָהּ	qal	pf	3	f	s	גאל

F. Focus on weak verbs. Translate the following.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. The boys cried. | 7. The brother will fall. |
| 2. I will see the enemy. | 8. They (<i>mp</i>) will carry bread. |
| 3. You (<i>ms</i>) read the law. | 9. We will be finished. |
| 4. You (<i>mp</i>) built a house. | 10. You (<i>mp</i>) will make an altar. |
| 5. The people will start out. | 11. You (<i>mp</i>) went out. |
| 6. We will find a father. | 12. I sinned. |

H. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

Judges 4:14 This is the day in which the LORD gave Sisera into your hand. .1

Genesis 15:18 On that day the LORD made a covenant with Abram. .2

Genesis 17:10 This is my covenant that you shall keep. .3

Lesson 18

A. Focus on weak roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יִרְשׁ	qal	impf	3	m	s	ירש
2. יִלֵּד	qal	impf	3	m	s	ילד
3. יֹאכַל	qal	impf	3	m	s	אכל
4. יִבְשׁוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	יבש
5. אֵלֶיךָ	qal	impf	1	c	s	הלך
6. נָתַתִּי	qal	pf	1	c	s	נתן
7. כָּרַתֶּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	כרת
8. נִצָּא	qal	impf	1	c	p	יצא
9. תִּירָא	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	ירא
10. יִתֵּן	qal	impf	3	m	s	נתן

B. Focus on weak roots. Translate the following.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. they will say | 6. I will inherit | 11. you cut |
| 2. she/you will dwell | 7. they will go out | 12. she/you will eat |
| 3. we will know | 8. you will fear | 13. you gave |
| 4. I gave | 9. you will wither | 14. I will say |
| 5. he will fear | 10. I will bear | 15. she/you will walk |

C. Focus on possessive suffixes. Translate the following and indicate the person, gender, and number of the suffix.

Person	Gender	Number		
1	c	s	1.	my king
3	m	s	2.	his king
3	f	s	3.	her king
1	c	p	4.	our king
3	m	p	5.	their king
2	m	s	6.	your king
2	m	p	7.	your king
2	f	s	8.	your king
2	f	p	9.	your king
3	f	p	10.	their king

D. Focus on possessive suffixes. Translate the following.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. his judgment | 5. our book | 9. our gold | 13. my eye |
| 2. my God | 6. their family | 10. your house | 14. your morning |
| 3. her word | 7. his heart | 11. her soul | 15. our city |
| 4. your law | 8. his people | 12. their time | |

F. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|----|
| Psalms 26:5 | And with wicked men I will not dwell. | .1 |
| Deuteronomy 22:16 | I gave my daughter to this man. | .2 |
| Psalms 56:5 | In God I trust; I will not fear. | .3 |
| Isaiah 52:6 | My people will know my name. | .4 |

Lesson 19

A. Focus on words with possessive suffixes. Match the form with the possessive suffix of the right hand column with the corresponding absolute singular form of the left hand column.

- | | | |
|--------------|----|------------------|
| סֵפֶר .a | c. | קוֹלוֹתֵינוּ .1 |
| עִיר .b | f. | תּוֹרוֹתֶיךָ .2 |
| קוֹל .c | g. | אֲדוֹנַי .3 |
| מִשְׁפָּט .d | i. | כֶּסֶפֶיכֶם .4 |
| שָׁנָה .e | h. | לְבוֹתֵיהֶם .5 |
| תּוֹרָה .f | a. | סִפְרֵיהָ .6 |
| אֲדוֹן .g | j. | דְּבָרָיו .7 |
| לֵב .h | d. | מִשְׁפָּטֶיךָ .8 |
| כֶּסֶף .i | b. | עֲרִיכָן .9 |
| דְּבַר .j | e. | שְׁנוֹתֶיךָ .10 |

B. Focus on words with possessive suffixes. Translate the following words with possessive suffixes.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. his horses | 5. your horses | 9. your servants | 13. your judgments |
| 2. your horses | 6. my horses | 10. their souls | 14. your fathers |
| 3. our horses | 7. your horses | 11. our gold(s) | 15. my places |
| 4. their horses | 8. her horses | 12. his words | 16. his hands |

D. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. גָּאֵלוּ	qal	pf	3	c	p	גאל
2. תִּעְמַד	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	עמד
3. אָשָׂא	qal	impf	1	c	s	נשא
4. בְּכִיתָם	qal	pf	2	m	p	בכה
5. יוֹכֵל	qal	impf	3	m	s	יכל
6. נֹאמַר	qal	impf	1	c	p	אמר
7. תַּעֲשׂוּ	qal	impf	2	m	p	עשה

8.	כָּבַד	qal	pf	3	m	s	כבד
9.	יָכַלְתָּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	יכל
10.	תָּשַׁבִּי	qal	impf	2	f	s	ישב

E. Focus on weak roots. Translate the following.

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. I created | 6. she/you will eat | 11. you did not give |
| 2. they will touch | 7. he will not go up | 12. we will be able |
| 3. you did not make | 8. she/you will lift | 13. he will weep |
| 4. we will know | 9. they will say | 14. we will not fear |
| 5. we built | 10. I will not bear | 15. he created |

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- | | | |
|---------------|---|----|
| 1 Kings 8:48 | And the house that I built for your name. | .1 |
| Psalms 18:39 | They will fall under my feet. | .2 |
| Genesis 32:31 | I saw God face to face. | .3 |

Lesson 20

A. Focus on the forms of the *inf const.* Write the root of each *inf const.*

שמע	שָׁמַע	.2	קטל	קָטַל	.1
ישב	יָשַׁב	.4	עמד	עָמַד	.3
ילד	יָלַד	.6	גלה	גָּלוּת	.5
ידע	יָדַע	.8	שלח	שָׁלַח	.7
בכה	בָּכַח	.10	בנה	בָּנָה	.9
הלך	הֵלַךְ	.12	ירד	יָרַד	.11
יצא	יָצַח	.14	נתן	נָתַח	.13

B. Focus on the use of the *inf const.* Translate the following phrases.

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. to write | 7. when he went down | 12. to make it |
| 2. to remember | 8. when he knew | 13. to give |
| 3. to sacrifice | 9. when he built | 14. to go |
| 4. to reign | 10. when he revealed | 15. when he went out |
| 5. to dwell | 11. to see him | 16. when he took |
| 6. to give birth | | |

C. Focus on the use of the *inf abs.* Translate the following phrases.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. she/you will certainly guard | 7. she/you will certainly build |
| 2. she/you will certainly send | 8. she/you will certainly weep |
| 3. she/you will certainly remember | 9. she/you will certainly finish |
| 4. she/you will certainly go | 10. she/you will certainly give |
| 5. she/you will certainly dwell | 11. she/you will certainly go out |
| 6. she/you will certainly know | 12. she/you will certainly go up |

D. Focus on the use of adjectives. Translate the following phrases and sentences and fill in the blanks for use of adjective (*a* for attributive and *p* for predicative) and for gender and number.

Use	Gender	Number	
a	f	s	.1 האִשָּׁה הַטּוֹבָה
p	m	s	.2 יָשָׁר הָאָדָם
a	m	s	.3 הַמְזַבַּח הַטָּהוֹר
a	f	s	.4 הַבַּת הַטּוֹבָה
p	m	p	.5 טְמָאִים הָאֱלִים
a	m	p	.6 הָאֱלֹהִים הַחַיִּים
p	m	p	.7 גְּדוֹלִים הַבְּגָדִים
p	f	s	.8 רְשָׁעָה הַמְלָפוֹת
a	m	s	.9 לֵב חָכָם
a	f	p	.10 הָאֲרָצוֹת הַרְבוֹת

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. קָטַל	qal	inf const				קטל
2. אָבַדְתִּי	qal	pf	1	c	s	אבד
3. אֶכְתֵּב	qal	impf	1	c	s	כתב
4. יָרַד	qal	impf	3	m	s	ירד
5. שָׁבַת	qal	inf const				ישב
6. נִרְאָה	qal	impf	1	c	p	ראה

B. Focus on the use of the active participle. Translate the following (present progressive is fine, since there is no context) and indicate the use (*a* for attributive, *p* for predicate, or *s* for substantive).

Use	
a	1. the king who is sitting
p	2. The king is sitting.
s	3. the inhabitants of the city
p	4. We are eating.
p	5. We are about to eat.
p	6. The slaves are building.
a	7. the slaves who are building
p	8. The mother is crying.
p	9. The mother is going out.
s	10. the judge of wicked men

C. Focus on possessive suffixes. Translate the following nouns, paying attention to the number of the noun and the person, gender, and number of the suffix.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. my light | 7. their (<i>mp</i>) families | 12. his books |
| 2. your (<i>ms</i>) G/god | 8. my word | 13. our kings |
| 3. your (<i>ms</i>) arms | 9. my words | 14. our king |
| 4. her voice | 10. your (<i>mp</i>) sacrifices | 15. your (<i>fs</i>) eye |
| 5. her voices | 11. his book | 16. your (<i>fs</i>) eyes |
| 6. their (<i>mp</i>) family | | |

D. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. עֲבַדְתָּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	עבד
2. אֲמַצָּא	qal	impf	1	c	s	מצא
3. יִתֵּן	qal	impf	3	m	s	נתן
4. גָּלִינוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	גלה
5. שֹׁפֵט	qal	inf const				שפט
6. שֹׁמְרִים	qal	ptc		m	p	שמר

7.	בְּנוֹת	qal	inf const				בנה
8.	בְּנוֹת	qal	ptc		f	p	בנה
9.	יִרְדּוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	ירד
10.	שָׁבַת	qal	inf const				ישב

F. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- Joshua 23:14 Today I am about to go the way of the whole earth. .1
 1 Kings 18:9 You are giving your servant into the hand of Ahab. .2
 Psalm 145:20 The LORD guards all who love him. .3

Lesson 22

A. Focus on prepositions with pronoun suffixes. Translate the following prepositional phrases.

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. to him | 8. with/in you | 14. to us | 20. to you |
| 2. with/in you | 9. to/for you | 15. before them | 21. with us |
| 3. with her | 10. to him | 16. under us | 22. before us |
| 4. within me | 11. on you | 17. on you | 23. to/for me |
| 5. to/for you | 12. before me | 18. to you | 24. to me |
| 6. with them | 13. under her | 19. before them | 25. with/in us |
| 7. within us | | | |

C. Focus on the construct state. Translate the following phrases.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. the word of the prophet | 7. the souls of the peoples |
| 2. the words of the prophet | 8. the day of the LORD |
| 3. the host/army of heaven | 9. the days of the year |
| 4. the law of the land | 10. the Lord of all the earth |
| 5. the king's family | 11. the beginning of his way |
| 6. the sacrifices of God | 12. the covenant of our God |

D. Focus on adjectives and the construct state. Translate the following phrases, paying attention to which noun is modified by the adjective.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. the great day of the LORD | 7. the pure law of the LORD |
| 2. the great army of heaven | 8. the old covenant of our God |
| 3. the good beginning of his way | 9. the clean souls of the people |
| 4. the sacrifices of the unclean priest | 10. the words of the great prophet |
| 5. the word of the wicked prophets | 11. the great Lord of all the earth |
| 6. the good days of the year | 12. the family of the great king |

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כְּתַבְתֶּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	כתב
2. יִרְד	qal	impf	1	c	p	ירד
3. עֲשׂוֹת	qal	inf const				עשה
4. בְּנִים	qal	ptc		m	p	בנה
5. מְצָאֲנוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	מצא
6. אֲתָן	qal	impf	1	c	s	נתן
7. שָׁבֵת	qal	inf const				ישב
8. כָּתַב	qal	inf const				כתב
9. לְכוּד	qal	inf abs				לכד
10. יַעֲלוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	עלה

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- Deuteronomy 1:30 the LORD your God who goes before you .1
 Joshua 22:31 Today we know that the LORD is in our midst. .2
 Genesis 41:38 a man within whom is the Spirit of God .3

Lesson 23

A. **Focus on “there is/was (not).”** Translate the following, paying attention to the difference between past/present and positive/negative.

- There was a prophet in the land.
- There was not a prophet in the land.
- There is not a prophet in the land.
- There is a prophet in the land.
- There is peace in the kingdom.
- There is not a warrior there.
- There was not a warrior there.
- There is not a sacrifice on the altar.
- There is a warrior on the way.

B. **Focus on “have/had (not).”** Translate the following, paying attention to the difference between past/present and positive/negative.

- The man had cattle.
- The man did not have cattle.
- The man does not have cattle.
- The man has cattle.
- You (*ms*) have servants.
- We do not have peace.
- You (*mp*) did not have honor.
- The daughter does not have a brother.
- The city has a wall.

Lesson 24

A. Focus on the form of the volitives. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. אֲשַׁפֵּטָה	qal	coh	1	c	s	שפט
2. זָבַחוּ	qal	impv	2	m	p	זבח
3. יִבֶּן	qal	jus	3	m	s	בנה
4. יֵשֶׁב	qal	impv	2	m	s	ישב
5. יֵלֶךְ	qal	impv	2	m	s	הלך
6. נִתְּנָה	qal	coh	1	c	p	נתן
7. בָּכָה	qal	impv	2	m	s	בכה
8. אֲדַעָה	qal	coh	1	c	s	ידע
9. קָחוּ	qal	impv	2	m	p	לקח
10. כְּתִבִי	qal	impv	2	f	s	כתב

B. Focus on the use of the volitives. Translate the following.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Visit! (<i>ms</i>) | 5. Send! (<i>mp</i>) | 9. Go out! (<i>mp</i>) |
| 2. Let us cut! | 6. Cling! (<i>fs</i>) | 10. Go! (<i>mp</i>) |
| 3. Let him build! | 7. Don't let me go down! | 11. Let her do/make! |
| 4. Don't let him go up! | 8. Build! (<i>mp</i>) | 12. Don't let her cry! |

D. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. מָלַכְתָּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	מלך
2. יִבְטְחוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	בטח
3. שְׁלַחִי	qal	impv	2	f	s	שלח
4. זָבַחוּם	qal	ptc		m	p	זבח
5. אָבוֹד	qal	inf abs				אבד
6. לְקַחְתֶּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	לקח
7. תִּשְׁמְעוּ	qal	impf	2	m	p	שמע
8. שְׁמַרְתִּי	qal	ptc		f	s	שמר
9. נִפְלֵתִי	qal	pf	1	c	s	נפל
10. תִּפְקֹד	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	פקד

F. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

Psalm 62:9 Trust in him at all times . . . pour out your heart before him. .1

Deuteronomy 4:1 And now Israel, listen to the statutes and judgments, .2
so that you may live.

Isaiah 2:5 Come, so that we may walk in the light of the LORD. .3

Lesson 25**A. Focus on the forms of qal Hollow verbs.** Memorize the forms of the qal Hollow verbs before parsing the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. קָם	qal	pf / ptc	3	m / m	s / s	קום
2. שָׁמַנּוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	שים
3. בָּאתָ	qal	pf	2	m	s	בוא
4. שָׁבוּ	qal	pf	3	c	p	שוב
5. תָּרוּץ	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	רוץ
6. אָבִין	qal	impf	1	c	s	בין
7. תָּבוֹאוּ	qal	impf	2	m	p	בוא
8. רָמַם	qal	ptc		m	p	רום
9. שִׁמּוּ	qal	impv	2	m	p	שים
10. בָּאוּת	qal	ptc		f	p	בוא
11. מוֹת	qal	inf abs				מות
12. יְבוֹשׁוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	בוש
13. נְסוּרָה	qal	coh	1	c	p	סור
14. יָשַׁם	qal	jus	3	m	s	שים
15. יָקַם	qal	jus	3	m	s	קום
16. רָצַם	qal	ptc		m	p	רוץ
17. מָתוּ	qal	pf	3	c	p	מות

18.	בוֹשֵׁי	qal	impv	2	f	s	בוֹשׁ
19.	מִתָּהָה	qal	pf	2	m	s	מִוֵּת
20.	תְּרוֹמוֹ	qal	impf	2	m	p	רוֹם

B. Focus on the use of the *pf* and *impf*. Translate the following verb forms.

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. He heard. | 5. They stood. | 8. We built. |
| 2. He is heavy. | 6. You (<i>mp</i>) saw. | 9. You (<i>fs</i>) will take. |
| 3. He will trust. | 7. We will do/make. | 10. They (<i>mp</i>) will go up. |
| 4. I will judge. | | |

C. Focus on the forms of the *pf* and *impf*. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יֵאָבֵה	qal	impf	3	m	s	אָבֵה
2. אִמַּר	qal	impf	1	c	s	אָמַר
3. יִרְדּוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	יָרַד
4. מִצָּאתִי	qal	pf	1	c	s	מָצָא
5. עָלִיתֶם	qal	pf	2	m	p	עָלָה
6. אֲשַׁב	qal	impf	1	c	s	יָשַׁב
7. נָתַתָּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	נָתַן
8. נִקַּח	qal	impf	1	c	p	לָקַח
9. תִּלְכּוּ	qal	impf	2	m	p	הִלַּךְ
10. תִּשְׂאִי	qal	impf	2	f	s	נָשָׂא

E. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

Isaiah 6:3

This one called to this one and said, .1

“Holy, holy, holy is the LORD of Hosts,
the whole earth is full of his glory.”

Deuteronomy 12:1

These are the statutes and the judgments that you .2
will be careful to do in the land that the LORD the God
of your fathers has given you to possess (it) all the days
that you are alive on the land.

Lesson 26

A. Focus on the form of the vav-relative imperfect (*wci*). Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. וַיִּבְטַח	qal	wci	3	m	s	בטח
2. וְאֶבְטַח	qal	wci	1	c	s	בטח
3. וַיִּנָּקֵם	qal	wci	1	c	p	קום
4. וַתִּבֶּן	qal	wci	3 / 2	f / m	s	בנה
5. וַתַּעַל	qal	wci	3 / 2	f / m	s	עלה
6. וַיִּתֵּן	qal	wci	3	m	s	נתן
7. וַתִּשָּׂם	qal	wci	3 / 2	f / m	s	שים
8. וַיִּבֶךְ	qal	wci	3	m	s	בכה
9. וַיַּעַשׂ	qal	wci	3	m	s	עשה
10. וַתִּפֹּל	qal	wci	3 / 2	f / m	s	נפל

B. Focus on the use of the vav-relative perfect and the vav-relative imperfect.

Translate the following forms.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. They (<i>mp</i>) sacrificed. | 6. You (<i>ms</i>) will arise. | 11. You (<i>mp</i>) will give. |
| 2. They will sacrifice. | 7. He said. | 12. They (<i>mp</i>) went up. |
| 3. He will go up. | 8. We wept. | 13. We will know. |
| 4. He went up. | 9. They (<i>mp</i>) ran. | 14. He lifted. |
| 5. She/you arose. | 10. I stood. | 15. He fell. |

D. Focus on the form of the infinitive construct. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כָּתַב	qal	inf const				כתב
2. בֵּין	qal	inf const				בין
3. נָתַן	qal	inf const				נתן
4. בָּכַח	qal	inf const				בכה
5. יָרַד	qal	inf const				ירד
6. קָחַח	qal	inf const				לקח

7.	לָקַח	qal	inf const				הלך
8.	עָשָׂה	qal	inf const				עשה
9.	שָׁב	qal	inf const				שוב
10.	בָּא	qal	inf const				בוא

E. Focus on the use of the infinitive construct in temporal clauses. Translate the following.

1. When the man sent the boy,
2. When he sent the boy,
3. When he sent him,
4. When our enemy arose against us,
5. When you lay down and arose,
6. When the priests went up,
7. When he went out and came in,
8. When the woman bore her son,
9. When you (*mp*) built an altar,

G. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

Joshua 24:19 Joshua said to the people, "You will not be able .1
to serve the LORD, for he is a holy God."

Joshua 24:24-25 The people said to Joshua, "We will serve the LORD .2
our God and we will obey him." And Joshua made
a covenant for the people on that day and gave it to them
as a statute and judgment in Shechem.

Lesson 27

A. Focus on temporal clauses. Translate the following clauses.

1. When the man wrote a book
2. When the man writes a book
3. After he wrote a book
4. When he wrote a book
5. When he wrote a book
6. Before he wrote a book
7. On that day (in the future)
8. In that year (in the past)
9. When the LORD judges the nations
10. When the LORD judged his people

C. Focus on interrogative clauses. Translate the following clauses.

1. Who heard the words?
2. Did he hear the words?
3. What did he hear?
4. Will she/you listen to me?
5. Are you the king of the city?
6. Who is the king of the city?
7. What did he say to you?
8. Will he offer sacrifices?
9. What are you doing?
10. Who is walking with us?

D. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. שָׁכַבְתִּי	qal	pf	1	c	s	שׁכב
2. אָפַקְדָּ	qal	impf	1	c	s	פִּקַּד
3. מָלַכְתָּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	מִלַּךְ
4. זָכַרְתֶּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	זָכַר
5. נִכְתַּב	qal	impf	1	c	p	כָּתַב
6. יִדְרְשׁוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	דָּרַשׁ
7. תִּדְבְּקוּ	qal	impf	2	m	p	דָּבַק
8. אָכְלוּ	qal	pf	3	c	p	אָכַל
9. אָסַפְנוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	אָסַף
10. תִּמְצְאִי	qal	impf	2	f	s	מָצָא

E. Focus on nouns with pronoun suffixes. Translate the following words.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. your (<i>ms</i>) peace | 6. their (<i>mp</i>) word | 11. his sacrifice |
| 2. your (<i>mp</i>) peace | 7. their (<i>mp</i>) words | 12. his sacrifices |
| 3. his peace | 8. your (<i>ms</i>) words | 13. their (<i>mp</i>) sacrifices |
| 4. my peace | 9. my words | 14. our sacrifices |
| 5. our peace | 10. her words | 15. your (<i>fp</i>) sacrifices |

G. Translate the following from Josh 1:1–2.

(1) After the death of Moses servant of the LORD, the LORD said to Joshua son of Nun, servant of Moses, (2) “Moses my servant is dead. Arise, cross this Jordan, you and this whole people, to the land that I am giving to them, to the sons of Israel.”

Lesson 28

A. Focus on the form of the piel. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. דִּבְרָתִי	piel	pf	1	c	s	דבר
2. יִכְפֹּר	piel	impf	3	m	s	כפר
3. מְקַדֵּשׁ	piel	ptc		m	s	קדש
4. הִלְלוּ	piel	impv	2	m	p	הלל
5. תִּבְקְשִׁי	piel	impf	2	f	s	בקש
6. דִּבְרָתָם	piel	pf	2	m	p	דבר
7. הִלְלוּ	piel	pf	3	c	p	הלל
8. נִקְדַּשׁ	piel	impf	1	c	p	קדש
9. בִּקֵּשׁ	piel	impv / inf const	2	m	s	בקש
10. מְדַבְּרִים	piel	ptc		m	p	דבר
11. אֶהְלֵלָה	piel	coh	1	c	s	הלל
12. כִּפֹּר	piel	inf abs				כפר
13. תִּבְקְשִׁי	piel	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	בקש
14. קִדְשָׁתְךָ	piel	pf	2	m	s	קדש
15. תִּדְבְּרוּ	piel	impf	2	m	p	דבר

B. Focus on strong verbs in the qal and piel. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יִמְלֹךְ	qal	impf	3	m	s	מלך
2. יִדְבֹּר	piel	impf	3	m	s	דבר
3. הִלְכָתְךָ	qal	pf	2	m	s	הלך
4. הִלְכָתְךָ	piel	pf	2	m	s	הלך
5. שִׁפְטוּ	qal	impv	2	m	p	שפט
6. דִּבְרוּ	piel	impv	2	m	p	דבר
7. מְקַדֵּשׁ	piel	ptc		m	s	קדש

8. שָׁמַר	qal	ptc		m	s	שָׁמַר
9. תִּכְפְּרוּ	piel	impf	2	m	p	כָּפַר
10. בִּקְשָׁתֶם	piel	pf	2	m	p	בָּקַשׁ

C. Focus on III Hey verbs in the qal. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. בָּכִינוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	בָּכָה
2. יִבְנֶה	qal	impf	3	m	s	בָּנָה
3. עָלִים	qal	ptc		m	p	עָלָה
4. רְאוּת	qal	inf const				רָאָה
5. יִגְלוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	גָּלָה
6. עָשׂוּ	qal	pf	3	c	p	עָשָׂה
7. בְּנֶה	qal	impv	2	m	s	בָּנָה
8. בָּכוּ	qal	impv	2	m	p	בָּכָה
9. כָּלוּת	qal	inf const				כָּלָה
10. נְטִיתֶם	qal	pf	2	m	p	נָטָה

E. Translate the following from 1 Samuel 11.

(4) The messengers came to Gibeah of Saul and spoke the words in the ears of the people. Then all the people lifted their voices and wept. (5) Just then, Saul came behind the herd from the field, and Saul said, "What's wrong with the people, that they are weeping?" So they reported to him the words of the men of Jabesh.

(6) Then the Spirit of God rushed on Saul when he heard these words, and he was very angry.

Lesson 29

A. Focus on the form of the piel from weak roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. כָּסָה	piel	pf	3	m	s	כסה
2. בָּרַךְ	piel	pf	3	m	s	ברך
3. יָגֵלֶה	piel	impf	3	m	s	גלה
4. אָבַרַךְ	piel	impf	1	c	s	ברך
5. מְכַסִּים	piel	ptc		m	p	כסה
6. מְבַרְכּוֹת	piel	ptc		f	p	ברך
7. גָּלִינוּ	piel	pf	1	c	p	גלה
8. בִּרְכָנוּ	piel	pf	1	c	p	ברך
9. בָּרַךְ	piel	impv / inf const/abs	2	m	s	ברך
10. כִּסּוֹת	piel	inf const				כסה

B. Focus on the piel from strong and weak roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. שִׁמְחָתֶם	piel	pf	2	m	p	שמח
2. יְהַלְלוּ	piel	impf	3	m	p	הלל
3. יִכְסּוּ	piel	impf	3	m	p	כסה
4. צִוֶּה	piel	pf	2	m	s	צוה
5. מְבַקֶּשֶׁת	piel	ptc		f	s	בקש
6. מְגַלֶּה	piel	ptc		f	s	גלה
7. קִדְּשׁוּ	piel	impv	2	m	p	קדש
8. בִּרְכוּ	piel	impv	2	m	p	ברך
9. צִוֶּה	piel	inf const				צוה
10. תִּבְרַךְ	piel	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	ברך

C. Focus on the difference in meaning when a verb occurs in both the qal and the piel. Translate the following verb forms. If you encounter a root you have not yet learned in the qal or piel, consult the vocabulary at the back of the grammar for the meaning.

- | | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. They are glad. | 5. He is holy. | 8. We magnified. |
| 2. They made X glad. | 6. He sanctified X. | 9. You are finished. |
| 3. I counted. | 7. We are great. | 10. You finished. |
| 4. I told/reported. | | |

D. Focus on the construct state. Translate the following.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. the law of the LORD | 7. the warrior's glory |
| 2. the holy congregation | 8. the battle of the year |
| 3. the land's peace | 9. holy land |
| 4. the king's judgment | 10. the God of heaven |
| 5. the man's servants | 11. the people's righteousness |
| 6. the city's wall | 12. the prophet's word |

E. Focus on verbs in the qal and the piel. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. מָלֵא	piel	pf	3	m	s	מלא
2. זָקַן	qal	pf	3	m	s	זקן
3. הִלְלֵנוּ	piel	impv	2	m	p	הלל
4. יִשְׂמַח	qal	impf	3	m	s	שמח
5. תִּסְפְּרוּ	piel	impf	2	m	p	ספר
6. כִּסּוֹת	piel	inf const				כסה
7. בָּנוֹת	qal	ptc		f	p	בנה
8. מְצַוִּים	piel	ptc		m	p	צוה
9. דִּבְרַתְּם	piel	pf	2	m	p	דבר
10. גָּלִיתִי	qal	pf	1	c	s	גלה

G. Translate the following from Joshua 22:2–3

(2) He said to them, “You have kept everything that Moses servant of the LORD commanded you. And you yourselves have obeyed me in regard to everything that I commanded you. (3) You did not abandon your brothers.”

Lesson 30

A. Focus on cardinal numbers one through ten. Translate the following.

- | | | |
|----------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. one king | 5. three kings | 9. five kings |
| 2. one mother | 6. three mothers | 10. ten kings |
| 3. two kings | 7. nine mothers | 11. six mothers |
| 4. two mothers | 8. seven kings | 12. four mothers |

B. Focus on ordinal numbers one through ten. Translate the following.

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. the first king | 4. the third mother | 7. the seventh king |
| 2. the first mother | 5. the fourth mother | 8. the ninth mother |
| 3. the third king | 6. the eighth king | 9. the sixth king |

C. Focus on higher cardinal numbers. Decipher the following.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|-----------|
| 1. 30 | 3. 54 | 5. 300 | 7. 330 | 9. 3,000 |
| 2. 33 | 4. 96 | 6. 303 | 8. 333 | 10. 3,333 |

D. Focus on the qal and piel of strong roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. שָׁלַחַתְּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	שלח
2. דִּבַּרְתָּ	piel	pf	2	m	s	דבר
3. נִכְתַּב	qal	impf	1	c	p	כתב
4. נִסְפַּר	piel	impf	1	c	p	ספר
5. מָלְכוּ	qal	pf	3	c	p	מלך
6. אָהַלְלָה	piel	impf	1	c	s	הלל
7. קִדְּשׁוּ	piel	impv	2	m	p	קדש
8. קִדְּשׁוּ	piel	pf	3	c	p	קדש
9. מְשַׁמְּחִים	piel	ptc		m	p	שמח
10. בִּקְשָׁתֶם	piel	pf	2	m	p	בקש

G. Translate the following from 2 Samuel 5:4–5.

(4) David was 30 years old when he became king. He reigned forty years. (5) He reigned over Judah in Hebron seven years and six months, and he reigned over all Israel and Judah in Jerusalem thirty-three years.

Lesson 31

A. Focus on the form of the hiphil. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הִכְעִיסוּ	hiph	pf	3	c	p	כעס
2. הִשְׁלִיכוּ	hiph	impv	2	m	p	שלך
3. הִשְׁאִיר	hiph	inf const				שאר
4. אֶשְׁבִּיעַ	hiph	impf	1	c	s	שבע
5. מְכַעְסִים	hiph	ptc		m	p	כעס
6. הִשְׁלַכְתֶּם	hiph	pf	2	m	p	שלך
7. תִּשְׁבַּעוּ	hiph	impf	2	m	p	שבע
8. וַתִּכְעַס	hiph	wci	3 / 2	f / m	s	כעס
9. מִשְׁאֲרַת	hiph	ptc		f	s	שאר
10. הִשְׁלַכְתִּי	hiph	pf	1	c	s	שלך

B. Focus on the difference in meaning when a verb occurs in both the qal and the hiphil. Translate the following verb forms. If you encounter a root that you have not yet learned in the qal or hiphil, consult the vocabulary at the back of the grammar for the meaning.

- | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. He is provoked. | 5. You are holy. | 8. We reminded. |
| 2. He provoked. | 6. You sanctified. | 9. You are great. |
| 3. I remained. | 7. We remembered. | 10. You magnified. |
| 4. I left X. | | |

C. Focus on the form of verbs in the qal from I Guttural roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. חִזְקֶתֶם	qal	pf	2	m	p	חזק
2. עֲזַבְתֶּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	עזב
3. יִחַזֵּק	qal	impf	3	m	s	חזק
4. אֶעֱמַד	qal	impf	1	c	s	עמד
5. עֲמַד	qal	impv / inf const	2	m	s	עמד
6. חִשְׁבְתֶם	qal	pf	2	m	p	חשב

D. Focus on qal verbs from I Nun roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יָתַן	qal	impf	3	m	s	נתן
2. אָפַל	qal	impf	1	c	s	נפל
3. אָפְלָה	qal	coh	1	c	s	נפל
4. נָסַע	qal	impf	1	c	p	נסע
5. תָּגַשׁ	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	נגש
6. יָשָׂא	qal	impf	3	m	s	נשא
7. יָטָה	qal	impf	3	m	s	נטה
8. נָתַתֶּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	נתן

F. Translate the following from the Hebrew Bible.

- 1 Kings 12:20 When all Israel heard that Jeroboam had returned, .1
they sent and called him to the assembly. Then they made
him king over all Israel
- Joshua 3:6 Joshua said to the priests, "Lift the ark of the covenant .2
and cross in front of the people." Then they lifted the ark
of the covenant and walked in front of the people.

Lesson 32**A. Focus on the the form of the hiphil from I Guttural and I Nun roots.** Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הָאֲמִינוּ	hiph	pf	3	c	p	אמן
2. אָבִיט	hiph	impf	1	c	s	נבט
3. תָּגִידוּ	hiph	impf	2	m	p	נגד
4. הִגִּידוּ	hiph	impv	2	m	p	נגד
5. הִגִּידוּ	hiph	pf	3	c	p	נגד
6. נִחְרִישׁ	hiph	impf	1	c	p	חרש

7.	הָאָמִין	hiph	inf const				אמן
8.	הָאָמִין	hiph	pf	3	m	s	אמן
9.	הִחְרַשׁ	hiph	impv / inf abs	2	m	s	חרש
10.	יִצֵּל	hiph	jus	3	m	s	נצל
11.	וַיִּצֵּל	hiph	wci	3	m	s	נצל
12.	הִבְטָחָם	hiph	pf	2	m	p	נבט
13.	מֵאָמִין	hiph	ptc		m	s	אמן
14.	יִחְרַשׁ	hiph	jus	3	m	s	חרש
15.	מִבִּיטִים	hiph	ptc		m	p	נבט

B. Focus on the form of all verbs learned to this point. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. מְצַאָּתָּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	מצא
2. גְּלוֹת	piel	inf const				גלה
3. יֵאָמִינוּ	hiph	impf	3	m	p	אמן
4. מְבַרֵּךְ	piel	ptc		m	s	ברך
5. יִתֵּן	qal	impf	3	m	s	נתן
6. בִּנְהָ	qal	ptc		m	s	בנה
7. דַּבֵּר	piel	impv / inf const	2	m	s	דבר
8. יִרַד	qal	impf	3	m	s	ירד
9. קִמְתָּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	קום
10. גְּלוֹת	qal	inf const				גלה

C. Focus on qal verbs from I Yod roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יֵשֵׁב	qal	impf	3	m	s	ישב
2. יִיבֹשׁ	qal	impf	3	m	s	יבש

3.	יִלְדוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	ילד
4.	נִרְאָה	qal	impf	1	c	p	ירא
5.	יִיטֵב	qal	impf	3	m	s	יטב
6.	אֵדַע	qal	impf	1	c	s	ידע
7.	תִּצְאִי	qal	impf	2	f	s	יצא
8.	תִּרְשֵׁי	qal	impf	2	f	s	ירש

E. Translate the following from 2 Chronicles 9:5–6. The first verb is *3fs* and refers to the Queen of Sheba.

She said to the king, “The word that I heard in my land about your words and your wisdom is true. But I did not believe their words until I came and my eyes saw.”

Lesson 33

A. Focus on the form of the hiphil from I Yod roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הֵיטִיב	hiph	pf / inf const	3	m	s	יטב
2. הוֹשִׁיב	hiph	pf / inf const	3	m	s	ישב
3. יוֹשִׁיב	hiph	impf	3	m	s	ישב
4. יִיטִיב	hiph	impf	3	m	s	יטב
5. מוֹלִידִים	hiph	ptc		m	p	ילד
6. הוֹרְדָתָם	hiph	pf	2	m	p	ירד
7. תִּיטִיבוּ	hiph	impf	2	m	p	יטב
8. וְנוֹשֵׁב	hiph	wci	1	c	p	ישב
9. הוֹשִׁעַ	hiph	impv / inf abs	2	m	s	ישע
10. הוֹשִׁיבִי	hiph	impv	2	f	s	ישב

B. Focus on the difference in meaning when a verb occurs in both the qal and the hiphil. Translate the following verb forms. If you encounter a root that you have not yet learned in the qal or hiphil, consult the vocabulary at the back of the grammar for the meaning.

- | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. He went out. | 6. He brought X down. | 11. She bore. |
| 2. He brought X out. | 7. He inherited. | 12. He fathered. |
| 3. He is dry. | 8. He dispossessed X. | 13. You brought X out. |
| 4. He dried X up. | 9. He knew. | 14. You brought X down. |
| 5. He went down. | 10. He made known. | 15. You informed. |

C. Focus on the form of qal and piel verbs from III Hey roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. גָּלָה	qal	pf	3	m	s	גלה
2. גָּלָה	piel	pf	3	m	s	גלה
3. יִכְסֶה	qal	impf	3	m	s	כסה
4. יִכְסֶה	piel	impf	3	m	s	כסה
5. גָּלוּת	piel	inf const				גלה
6. גָּלוּת	qal	inf const				גלה
7. כָּסִיתָ	piel	pf	2	m	s	כסה
8. כָּסִיתָ	qal	pf	2	m	s	כסה
9. יִגְלוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	גלה
10. יִגְלוּ	piel	impf	3	m	p	גלה

D. Focus on the form of qal verbs from Hollow roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. קָם	qal	pf ptc	3	m m	s s	קום
2. יִקוּם	qal	impf	3	m	s	קום
3. קוּם	qal	impv / inf const	2	m	s	קום
4. קָמְתָם	qal	pf	2	m	p	קום
5. תִּקְמוּ	qal	jus	3 / 2	f / m	s	קום

6.	וַתִּקַּם	qal	wci	3 / 2	f / m	s	קוּם
7.	קָמְתָּ	qal	pf	2	f	s	קוּם
8.	תִּקְוֹמוּ	qal	impf	2	m	p	קוּם
9.	קוּמוּ	qal	impv	2	m	p	קוּם
10.	אֶקְוֶמָהּ	qal	coh	1	c	s	קוּם

F. Translate the following from Judges 7:4, 5, 7.

(4) The LORD said to Gideon, “The people are still too numerous. Bring them down to the water . . . (5) He brought the people down to the water. (7) The LORD said to Gideon, “With three hundred men I will save you.”

Lesson 34

A. Focus on the form of the hiphil from III Hey and Hollow roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הִגְלִיתָ	hiph	pf	2	m	s	גלה
2. הִקְיִמוֹתָ	hiph	pf	2	m	s	קוּם
3. הִכִּינוּ	hiph	pf	3	c	p	כוּן
4. יְנַיְחוּ	hiph	impf	3	m	p	נוּחַ
5. יִגְלֶה	hiph	impf	3	m	s	גלה
6. הִגְלוֹת	hiph	inf const				גלה
7. מְקִים	hiph	ptc		m	s	קוּם
8. מְגִלִים	hiph	ptc		m	p	גלה
9. הִכִּין	hiph	inf const				כוּן
10. הִגְלֶה	hiph	impv / inf abs	2	m	s	גלה

B. Focus on the form of the hiphil from roots that are doubly weak. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. הָפָה	hiph	pf	3	m	s	נכה
2. הוֹדָה	hiph	pf	3	m	s	ידה
3. יִפֶּה	hiph	impf	3	m	s	נכה
4. יוֹדֶה	hiph	impf	3	m	s	ידה
5. מוֹדָה	hiph	ptc		m	s	ידה
6. מִפֶּה	hiph	ptc		m	s	נכה
7. הַפּוֹת	hiph	inf const				נכה
8. הוֹדוֹת	hiph	inf const				ידה
9. הוֹדֶה	hiph	impv / inf abs	2	m	s	ידה
10. הַפֶּה	hiph	impv / inf abs	2	m	s	נכה

C. Focus on the pronoun suffixes on nouns. Translate the following.

- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. his horse | 4. our horse | 7. your horse | 9. your horses |
| 2. her horse | 5. their horse | 8. your horse | 10. their horse |
| 3. her horses | 6. your horse | | |

D. Focus on the pronoun suffixes on prepositions. Translate the following.

- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. with you | 4. with him | 7. with you | 9. with me |
| 2. with us | 5. with you | 8. with you | 10. with them |
| 3. with her | 6. with them | | |

E. Focus on the form of all verbs learned to this point. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יוֹרִיד	hiph	impf	3	m	s	ירד
2. יִכְסֶה	piel	impf	3	m	s	כסה
3. בָּאָה	qal	pf	2	m	s	בוא
4. שִׁלַּח	qal	ptc		m	s	שלח

5.	דְּבַרְתִּי	piel	pf	1	c	s	דבר
6.	יִתְּנוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	נתן
7.	תִּלְדוּ	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	ילד
8.	קָחַת	qal	inf const				לקח

G. Translate the following from Psalm 136:1–3, 26.

Give thanks to the LORD, for he is good;

for his faithfulness endures forever.

Give thanks to the God of Gods,

for his faithfulness endures forever.

Give thanks to the lord of Lords,

for his faithfulness endures forever

Give thanks to the God of heaven,

for his faithfulness endures forever.

Lesson 35

A. Focus on כָּל with the pronoun suffixes. Translate the following.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. the kings, all of them | 6. the whole city, all of it |
| 2. the kings, all of you | 7. every one will go |
| 3. all of the kings, all of them | 8. everyone heard |
| 4. every king, every one of them | 9. everyone will see |
| 5. the city, all of it | |

B. Focus on verbs with pronoun suffixes. Identify the person, gender, and number of the suffix.

- | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|
| 1. 2ms | 4. 3ms | 7. 3fs | 10. 3mp | 13. 2fs |
| 2. 1cp | 5. 2mp | 8. 3ms | 11. 1cs | 14. 1cp |
| 3. 3mp | 6. 1cs | 9. 3ms | 12. 3fs | 15. 3ms |

C. Focus on verbs with pronoun suffixes. Translate the following.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. He guarded you. | 9. We sought him. |
| 2. They will guard us. | 10. I inherited them. |
| 3. She/you will send them. | 11. You found me. |
| 4. You remembered him. | 12. You found her. |
| 5. He gave you. | 13. She will serve you. |
| 6. You will make me king. | 14. He will judge us. |
| 7. He will lift her. | 15. He will deliver him. |
| 8. We will seek him. | |

E. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. שְׁלַחְתָּ	qal	pf	2	m	s	ש־ל־ח
2. דִּבַּרְתָּ	piel	pf	2	m	s	ד־ב־ר
3. הִשְׁלַכְתָּ	hiph	pf	2	m	s	ש־ל־ךְ
4. יִכְתֹּב	qal	impf	3	m	s	כ־ת־ב
5. יִמְלִיךְ	hiph	impf	3	m	s	מ־ל־ךְ
6. יִמְלֵא	piel	impf	3	m	s	מ־ל־א
7. נִבְקֶשׁ	piel	impf	1	c	p	ב־ק־שׁ
8. הִשְׁאִיֶּרָה	hiph	pf	3	f	s	ש־א־רָה

G. Translate the following from Genesis 2:2–3

(2) On the seventh day, God finished the work that he did, and on the seventh day he rested from all his work that he did. (3) So God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because on it he rested from all his work of creating that God did.

Lesson 36

A. Focus on the form of the niph'al. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. נִקְטַל	niph	pf	3	m	s	ק־ט־ל
2. נִקְטָל	niph	ptc		m	s	ק־ט־ל
3. נִלְחַמְתֶּם	niph	pf	2	m	p	ל־ח־ם
4. יִכְתֹּב	niph	impf	3	m	s	כ־ת־ב
5. נִשְׁמַר	niph	impf	1	c	p	ש־מ־ר
6. הִשְׁמְרוּ	niph	impv	2	m	p	ש־מ־ר
7. תִּקְטְלִי	niph	impf	2	f	s	ק־ט־ל
8. נִקְטָלָת	niph	ptc		f	s	ק־ט־ל
9. נִשְׁמְרוּ	niph	pf	3	c	p	ש־מ־ר
10. הִקְטַל	niph	inf abs				ק־ט־ל

B. Focus on the difference in meaning when a verb occurs in both the qal and the niphil. Translate the following verb forms.

- | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. He anointed. | 5. He wrote. | 8. He was sought. |
| 2. He was anointed. | 6. It was written. | 9. He remembered. |
| 3. He redeemed. | 7. He sought. | 10. He was remembered. |
| 4. He was redeemed. | | |

C. Focus on qal and hiphil verbs from I Guttural and I Nun roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. עֲמַדְתָּם	qal	pf	2	m	p	עמד
2. יַעֲמֵד	qal	impf	3	m	s	עמד
3. יַעֲמִיד	hiph	impf	3	m	s	עמד
4. הֶעֱמִיד	hiph	pf	3	m	s	עמד
5. הֶעֱמִידוּ	hiph	impv	2	m	p	עמד
6. מֵעֲמִידִים	hiph	ptc		m	p	עמד
7. יִפֹּל	qal	impf	3	m	s	נפל
8. יִפְלוּ	qal	impf	3	m	p	נפל
9. תִּפֹּל	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	נפל

D. Focus on the difference between attributive and predicate adjectives. Read the following phrases and sentences, and fill in the blanks for use of adjective (*a* for attributive and *p* for predicative) and for gender and number.

Use	Gender	Number	
a	f	s	.1 הָאִשָּׁה הַטּוֹבָה
p	m	s	.2 קְדוֹשׁ הַכֹּהֵן
a	m	s	.3 הַזָּבֵחַ הַטָּמֵא
p	f	s	.4 טוֹבָה הָאֶרֶץ
p	m	p	.5 גְּדוֹלִים הַגְּבוּרִים
a	m	p	.6 הָאֱלֹהִים הַחַיִּים
a	f	p	.7 הַמְשֻׁפָּחוֹת הַרְּבוּת

p	f	s	.8	רְשָׁעָה הַמְּלָכוֹת
a	m	s	.9	לֵב חָכָם
a	f	p	.10	הַנְּשִׂים הַטּוֹבוֹת

F. Translate the following from Zechariah 13:1-2.

(1) “And in that day a spring will be opened for the house of David and for the inhabitants of Jerusalem for sin. . . .” (2) “And in that day,” declares the LORD of hosts, “I will cut off the names of the idols from the land, and they will be remembered no longer. And I will also remove the prophets and the spirit of uncleanness from the land.”

Lesson 37

A. Focus on the form of the niphāl from weak roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יֵאָמֵן	niph	impf	3	m	s	אָמַן
2. נִדְחֵתִי	niph	pf	1	c	s	נָדַח
3. יוֹלְדוּ	niph	impf	3	m	p	יָלַד
4. יִבְנֶה	niph	impf	3	m	s	בָּנָה
5. נִבְנֶה	niph	pf	3	m	s	בָּנָה
6. יֵעָנֶה	niph	impf	3	m	s	עָנָה
7. נוֹדְעֵנוּ	niph	pf	1	c	p	יָדַע
8. הִתְתַּרְוּ	niph	impv	2	m	p	יָתַר
9. נִאֲסַפְתֶּם	niph	pf	2	m	p	אָסַף
10. הִרְאוֹת	niph	inf const				רָאָה
11. נִצָּל	niph	ptc		m	s	נָצַל
12. נִעֲנִיתִי	niph	pf	2	m	s	עָנָה
13. הִתְהַרְגִי	niph	impv	2	f	s	הָרַג
14. תִּתְנַדְעוּ	niph	impf	2	m	p	יָדַע
15. נִבְאוּ	niph	pf	3	c	p	נָבָא

B. Focus on the meaning of niph'al verbs from weak roots. Translate the following.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. They were gathered. | 5. We were born. | 8. We were known. |
| 2. They were driven out. | 6. He appeared. | 9. He prophesied. |
| 3. They will be left. | 7. It was firm. | 10. He will appear. |
| 4. It was built. | | |

C. Focus on the difference between attributive and predicate participles. Read the following phrases and sentences, and fill in the blanks for use of participle (*a* for attributive and *p* for predicative) and for gender and number.

Use	Gender	Number	
a	m	s	1. הָאִישׁ הַיֹּשֵׁב
p	m	s	2. הַכֹּהֵן יֹשֵׁב
a	m	s	3. הַנֹּעַר הַמְדַבֵּר
p	m	s	4. הַנְּבִיא מְדַבֵּר
p	m	p	5. יְצֵאִים הַגְּבוּרִים
a	m	p	6. הַגְּבוּרִים הַיֹּרְדִים
a	f	p	7. הַנְּשִׂים הַמוֹדְעוֹת
p	f	p	8. הַנְּשִׂים בְּאוֹת
a	m	p	9. הָעַמִּים הַנֹּאֲסָפִים
p	m	s	10. נִדְחַ הָעָם

E. Translate the following from 1 Kings 18:36.

(36) At the time of offering the grain offering, Elijah the prophet approached and said, "O LORD, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, let it be known today that you are God in Israel, that I am your servant, and that in keeping with your word I have done all these things."

Lesson 39

A. Focus on the form of the hith and hish. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. יתְהַלְלוּ	hith	impf	3	m	p	הלל
2. הִתְקַדְשִׁיתִי	hith	pf	1	c	s	קדש
3. מִתְנַפֵּל	hith	ptc		m	s	נפל
4. הִשְׁתַּחֲוִיתָ	hish	pf	2	m	s	חזה
5. נִתְפַּלֵּל	hith	impf	1	c	p	פלל
6. הִתְנַבְּאתֶם	hith	pf	2	m	p	נבא
7. וַיִּשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ	hish	wci	3	m	s	חזה
8. וַיִּשְׁתַּחֲוּוּ	hish	wci	3	m	p	חזה
9. מִתְהַלְלִים	hith	ptc		m	p	הלל
10. אֶתְקַדֵּשׁ	hith	impf	1	c	s	קדש

B. Focus on the difference in meaning between the qal or piel and the hith. Translate the following.

Translate the following.

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. I praised. | 4. I sanctified myself. | 7. I magnified. |
| 2. I boasted. | 5. I fell. | 8. I boasted. |
| 3. I sanctified. | 6. I prostrated myself. | |

C. Focus on nouns and adjectives from geminate roots. Match the plural form of the right column with the corresponding singular form in the left column.

- | | | |
|----------|----|--------------|
| אֵם .a | f. | דְּמִים .1 |
| לְבָב .b | g. | עַמִּים .2 |
| חֹק .c | a. | אֲמוֹת .3 |
| יָם .d | j. | לְבוֹת .4 |
| כֶּף .e | i. | חַיִּים .5 |
| דָּם .f | b. | לְבָבוֹת .6 |
| עַם .g | h. | הָרִים .7 |
| הַר .h | c. | חֻקִּים .8 |
| חַי .i | d. | יָמִים .9 |
| לֵב .j | e. | כַּפּוֹת .10 |

Lesson 40

A. Focus on the form of verbs from geminate roots. Parse the following.

Verb	Pattern	Conj.	Person	Gender	Number	Root
1. אָסַב	qal	impf	1	c	s	סבב
2. סָבוּנוּ	qal	pf	1	c	p	סבב
3. סָבוּ	qal	impv	2	m	p	סבב
4. יִמְדוּ	niph	impf	3	m	p	מדד
5. אָרוּר	qal	inf abs				ארר
6. יִחַן	qal	impf	3	m	s	חנן
7. אָרוּתִי	qal	pf	1	c	s	ארר
8. מְדוּתָם	qal	pf	2	m	p	מדד
9. יִתְחַנֵּן	hith	impf	3	m	s	חנן
10. תִּמְדַּד	qal	impf	3 / 2	f / m	s	מדד

B. Translate the following from Deuteronomy 6:4–9.

(4) Hear, O Israel. The LORD our God, the LORD is one. (5) Love the LORD your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your strength. (6) These words that I am commanding you today are to be on your hearts. (7) Repeat them to your children: speak of them when you sit down in your house, when you walk along the road, when you lie down, and when you rise. (8) Tie them as a sign on your hand, and they are to be phylacteries between your eyes. (9) Write them on the door posts of your house and on your gates.

INDEX OF TOPICS

- absolute 68–69
 - plural 75
- absolute *see* infinitive absolute
- adjectives 56
 - attributive 57, 96
 - comparative 58
 - geminate 57
 - gender agreement 58
 - gender and number 56
 - predicate 58
 - substantive 58
 - vav* conjunction with 59
- agreement
 - attributive adjectives 57
 - number adjectives 188–189
 - subject and verb 36, 58
- alphabet 1–3
 - final form of letters 1–4
 - guttural letters 5
 - letters with two pronunciations 4
 - names of letters 1
 - similar-sounding letters 5
- anger, idiom for 131
- animals 105
- article *see* definite article
- assimilation of ׀ 50–51, 98

- begadkefat* letters 4, 14–15

- cardinal numbers 188–189
- chatef-patach* 7–8, 45, 50, 52, 56, 81–82, 121, 171, 201
- chatef-qamets* 8, 45, 50, 52
- chatef-segol* 8, 45, 50, 52, 81–82, 149, 201, 232
- clauses
 - main 169
 - temporal 169
- cohortative 148
 - hiphil* 196
 - hollow verbs 157
 - niphal* 227
 - weak verbs 149
- comparative adjectives 58
- compensatory lengthening 25, 51, 83, 109, 162, 182, 232
- conjunctions
 - coordinating 51–52, 59
 - definition 51
 - subordinating 51
 - see also vav*-relative
- consonants 9
 - doubling of 14
- construct 68–69
 - feminine plural form 75
 - masculine plural form 75
 - meaning of 69
 - participles 130
 - singular form 69–70
- construct chain 76
 - adjectives and 76
 - definiteness 96
 - definition 76

- dagesh
 - distinguishing weak vs. strong 15
 - strong 14, 88, 98, 171, 182, 184, 233, 238, 249
 - gemination 57
 - piel* 175
 - weak 4–5, 14–15, 83, 89
- defective spelling 128–129, 144, 184, 193
- definite article 25, 50, 68
 - with demonstrative pronouns 102
 - with gutturals, *resh* 25
 - prefixed 25
- definiteness 96
 - construct state and 68
 - suffixes and 96
- diphthong 207
 - contraction of 98, 207–208
 - definition 70
- direct object 36, 96
 - definite 36
 - indefinite 36
 - pronominal suffixes on verbs 220
- direct object marker 36–37, 96, 138, 203
 - confusion with preposition ׀ 203
 - form of 37
 - omitted in poetic texts 113
 - pronouns and 220–221
 - suffixes and 138
- directive *hey* 104
- dual *see* nouns: dual

- existence, being 142, 190

- gemination 57, 97
- gender *see* nouns: gender
- gutturals 5, 45, 56, 83, 182, 201, 232
 - and “a”-class vowels 45
 - in action verbs 63

- gutturals (*cont.*)
 and sheva 45
- immediate future 190
- imperative 148–149
 hollow verbs 157
 negation of 152
- imperfect 64
 future 64
 present progressive 64
 stative 64
 use of 64
- indefinite article, lacking in Hebrew 25
- infinitive absolute 30, 120, 123
 hollow verbs 158
 uses 123
- infinitive construct 30, 120, 156
 expressing purpose 122
 meaning 120
 negation of 122
 prepositions and 122, 169
 suffixes on 120
 temporal meaning 122
 uses 121–123
- infinitives 120
- interrogative particle 171
- jussive 148, 151
 hollow verbs 157
 negation 152
- lengthening, compensatory *see* compensatory
 lengthening
- letters *see* alphabet, Hebrew; *begadkefat* letters
- mappiq* 96
- maqef* 37, 49
 marker of construct state 68
 with ׀ 50
- Masoretes 7
- Masoretic Text 7
- Modern Hebrew 4
- negative sentences 37
- niphal*, basic meaning of 30
- nouns 18–20
 body, parts of 19
 collective 168, 213
 definite 50
 dual 19–20
 feminine 18
 plural 20, 115
 plural construct 75
 singular 18
 singular construct 71
 suffixes 96
 geminate 57
 gender of 18–20
- nouns (*cont.*)
 irregular 19
 irregular plural form 20
 masculine 18
 plural 114
 plural construct 75
 singular 18
 singular construct 69
 masculine plural form 19
 number of 19
 plural 19, 114–115
 segolates 44–45, 97
 singular 19
 possessive suffixes 95
 as subject 36
 suffixes on 44, 114–115
 unmarked 19
 vowel changes in 44
- numbers 189
 cardinal 188
 ordinal 188–189
- ordinal numbers 188–189
- paradigm
 ׀ with pronoun suffixes 144
 adjectives 56
 cohortative 148–149
 direct object marker with suffixes 138
 geminate verbs 249–251
hiphil 195–197, 207–208, 214–216
 hollow verbs 156–157
hophal 239
 הַשְׁתַּחֲוֹתָהּ 245
 imperative 149–150
 jussive 151
niphal 226–228
 numbers 188
 of verbs 31
 passive participle 237
piel 175–177, 182–183
 prepositions with pronoun suffixes 135–136
pual 238
qal imperfect 63
- participles 30, 128
 active 128
 attributive 130
 form 128
 hollow verbs 158
 meaning 129
 passive 128, 237
 use 237
 predicate 130
 pronoun direct object 221
 substantive 130
 suffixes 130
 tense 129
 use 130

- particle, interrogative 171
 passive participles *see* participles: passive
 personal names 68
 personal pronouns *see* pronouns: personal
 points, pointing *see* vowels
 possession 95, 142–143
 construct state and 69
 possessive pronouns *see* pronouns: possessive
 prefixes, on root word 29
 prepositions 49–51
 independent 49
 infinitive construct and 169
 inseparable 49
 pronoun suffixes on 135
 resumptive pronouns and 138
 pronouns
 demonstrative 102
 adjectives and 103
 attributive 102
 personal pronouns and 102
 predicate 103
 use 102
 direct objects on verbs 220
 interrogative 170
 personal 24
 as subject 24, 36
 forms of 24
 usage 24
 possessive 95
 relative 103
 gender and number of 103
 meaning 103
 syntax of 104
 resumptive 138
- qal* 30
 basic meaning of 30
 imperfect 63
 perfect 31–32
 form of 32
 use of 32
 quotations, introduction of 174
- reduplication 57
 reflexive
 hithpael 243
 niphal 225
 resumptive pronouns 138
 roots
 geminate 57, 97
 adjectives 57
 nouns 97
 meaning and 29
 strong 81
 verb 29
 weak 81, 121, 129, 182
 nomenclature 81
 of words 29
- segol* 149
 segolate nouns 44–45
 “a”-class 97
 “i”-class 97
 plurals 45
 “u”-class 97
 sentences
 negative 37
 subject of 36
sheva 13, 43, 50, 97
 distinguishing vocal vs. silent 14
 in open proretonic syllables 43
 reduction to 43, 75
 silent 13
 vocal 13, 149–150
 with inseparable prepositions 50
 silent \aleph 91
 silent *sheva* *see sheva*: silent
sof passuq 168
 spelling, defective *see* defective spelling
 stative perfect 33, 64
 strong dagesh *see* dagesh: strong
 subject 36
 subject-predicate agreement 25
 suffixes 95
 definiteness of nouns 96
 direct object marker and 138
 possessive 95
 pronoun
 prepositions and 135
 with η 190
 with κ 220
 on root word 29
 on segolate nouns 97
 “surprise” (η) 189
 syllables 13, 42
 accent and 13, 42, 63
 closed 13, 42–43
 open 13, 42
 open accented 43
 pretonic 42
 proretonic 42, 97
 rules 42
 tonic 42
- temporal clauses 169
 tense 129
 Tetragrammaton 27–28
 “there is” 142
 “there is not” 142
 “there was” 142
 “there was not” 142
 time 169
 clauses and 169–170
 words for 170
 “to have” 142
 “to not have” 143

- vav* conjunction 51
 form of 51
 use of 52
vav-relative 162
 temporal succession 163–164
 use of 163
 with imperfect 162–163, 169
 with perfect 163–164, 169
 verb
 patterns and meaning 30
 verb patterns and meaning 30
 verbal complement 122
 verbs 31
 action 32, 63, 157
 biconsonantal 156
 conjugation 29, 33
 doubly weak 91, 215
 finite 30
 geminate 249
 hiphil 194–197, 201–202, 207–209, 214–216
 meaning 194
 hithpael 243
 form 244
 meaning 243
 reflexive 243
 hollow 123, 156–158, 162, 215–216
 hophal 238–239
 meaning 239
 I *alef* 109
 I guttural 81, 109, 201, 232
 form 82
 I *nun* 88, 121, 202, 232
 form 88
 I *vav* 208
 I *yod* 108–109, 207–208, 233
 II guttural 81, 182
 III *alef* 81
 form 82–83
 III guttural 81
 III *hey* 89, 123, 151, 157, 162, 182–184, 214, 233
 form 89–90
 infinitives 120
 jussive 163
 niphal 225–228
 form 226
 meaning 225
 passive 225
 reflexive 225
 non-finite 30, 128
- verbs (*cont.*)
 overview 29
 paradigm of 29
 parsing of 29, 31
 passive 225
 piel 175
 meaning 175
 weak roots 182
 pual 237
 meaning 237
 root 29
 stative 32–33, 63–64, 157, 250
 suffixes
 pronoun direct object 220–221
 volitives 148
 weak 81, 149, 151
 see also conjugation names, etc.
 vestigial *vav* 233
 vocal *sheva* *see sheva*: vocal
 volitives 148
 cohortative 148
 imperative 148
 indirect 152
 jussive 148
 negation of 151
 vowel reduction 43–44, 63, 75, 97, 149
 vowels 7–9, 42
 changes in nouns 44, 97
 chart of class and length 8
 classes 8
 length 8
 long 42
 medium 42
 names 7
 placement 9
 “points” 7
 sheva 13
 signs 7
 sounds 7
 theme
 in I *yod* verbs 109
 qal imperfect 63
 theme, in *qal* perfect 32
 unpredictable changes 45
 writing 7, 9
- waw*-conversive *see vav*-relative
 word order 24, 37
 emphasis and 37

INDEX OF HEBREW TERMS*

<p>אֵין 142–144 pronoun suffixes 144</p> <p>אֵל 151</p> <p>אֵל 49</p> <p>אֲשֶׁר 103–104</p> <p>אֵת 138 as marker of definite direct object 36–37 form of 36</p> <p>בְּהִמָּה 105</p> <p>בֵּין 124</p> <p>בְּלִתי 122</p> <p>בְּקָר 105</p> <p>הֵ 171</p> <p>הִיָּה 142–143</p> <p>הִיָּה לְ 143</p> <p>הִלָּךְ 109, 121</p> <p>הִנֵּה 189–190</p> <p>הַשְׁתַּחֲוָה 244</p> <p>יְהוּה 27–28</p> <p>יָכַל 115</p>	<p>כֵּ 137 suffixes and 137</p> <p>כֹּל 77, 220</p> <p>כָּמוֹ 137</p> <p>יֵשׁ 142</p> <p>לֹא 143</p> <p>לְפָנַי 91</p> <p>לִקְחָה 89</p> <p>מִן 50, 136 suffixes and 136 with definite nouns 50 with indefinite nouns 50</p> <p>נָכַה 215</p> <p>נִתֵּן 109, 121</p> <p>עַל 49 suffixes and 220</p> <p>פְּנִים 91</p> <p>צֹאן 105</p> <p>צוּה 184</p>
--	--

* Only Hebrew terms/words that are discussed as such in the text are included in this index.

“Dr. Mark Futato lays a solid foundation for students for a lifetime of adventure in reading and studying the Hebrew Bible. This user-friendly introduction to Biblical Hebrew distinguishes itself by its extreme simplicity and practicality in presenting the grammar and vocabulary of the Bible, repeatedly reinforced by exercises drawn directly from the text of the Bible.” — Bruce K. Waltke, co-author, *Introduction to Biblical Hebrew Syntax*

“This is an eminently teacher- and student-friendly introductory grammar, using an interesting variety of teaching techniques very effectively. It is clear and simple to use and understand, not cluttered with jargon or explanations. Nevertheless, the explanations are linguistically well informed and up to date. I expect that I shall use it in the future in place of the grammar that has served me well for the past 21 years of teaching. It is a superb achievement.” — David M. Howard Jr., Bethel Theological Seminary (St. Paul)

“I have used Mark Futato’s grammar in pre-publication form for the last four years. It is an excellent grammar—simple, straightforward, and self-explanatory. As a teacher of Hebrew, I have found it to be the best tool available to introduce students to the language. Many of our students have learned Hebrew well, and quite a few of them have gone on to study the language further. I believe that this grammar has played an important role in that regard; students are not intimidated by Hebrew when they learn from this grammar.” — John D. Currid, Reformed Theological Seminary (Jackson)



Eisenbrauns
POB 275
Winona Lake, IN 46590
www.eisenbrauns.com

ISBN 1-57506-022-1



9 781575 060224